

K I T U B A

BASIC COURSE



This work was compiled and published with the support of the Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, United States of America.

L.B. SWIFT

E.W.A. ZOLA

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE

WASHINGTON, D.C.

1963

D E P A R T M E N T O F S T A T E

FOREIGN SERVICE INSTITUTE
BASIC COURSE SERIES
Edited by
CARLETON T. HODGE

P R E F A C E

Kituba, also known as Kikongo ya Leta and Munukutuba, is a vehicular or trade language spoken along the lower reaches of the Congo and its tributaries. There are no full-scale grammars or dictionaries in this seldom-studied language, and only a very few scholarly sketches of it are available. The present brief introduction to the essentials of this language is designed for study with Kituba-speaking instructors under professional supervision. Gifted students may be able to make some progress using the text and accompanying tapes alone.

The text is one of a series of short Basic Courses in selected African Languages being prepared by the Foreign Service Institute under an agreement with the United States Office of Education, Department of Health, Education and Welfare, under the National Defense Education Act.

The linguist in charge of developing the Kituba text has been Lloyd B. Swift, Acting Head of the Department of Near East and African Languages, assisted by Mr. Emile W. A. Zola. The text was prepared and class tested as part of the Special African Language Program of which Earl W. Stevick is coordinator. The tapes were recorded in the laboratory of the Foreign Service Institute under the direction of Gabriel Cordova.



Howard E. Sollenberger, Dean
School of Language and Area Studies
Foreign Service Institute
Department of State

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PREFACE	iii
INTRODUCTION	x
PRIMER	1-225
Unit 1 Dialogue: Looking for Work	1
Drill 1.1 - Variation Drills	4
Drill 1.2 - Vocabulary Supplement	6
Grammar Notes and Drills	7-21
Note 1.1 - Singular and Plural Noun Classes (Reference Note)	7
Note 1.2 - Verbs (Reference Note)	12
Note 1.3 - Word Accent	13
Note 1.4 - The Intonation of 'Yes and No'	
Questions	15
Note 1.5 - Long and Short Forms of Certain Words	15
Note 1.6 - The Pronunciation of Nasal Compounds	16
Drill 1.3 - Pronunciation Drill on Nasal Compounds	17
Note 1.7 - Certain Subtle Distinctions Between Initial /n/'s (Reference Note)	21
Unit 2 Dialogue: Greetings and Salutations	22
Drill 2.1 - Variation Drills	24
Drill 2.2 - Vocabulary Supplement	29
Drill 2.3 - Substitution Drills Incorporating Supplemental Vocabulary	30
Grammar Notes and Drills	31-39
Note 2.1 /ke/ + /na/ + /ku-/ + Verb: Present Action	31
Note 2.2 - The Use of the /ku-/ Prefix on Verbal forms: The Infinitive (Reference Note)	32
Note 2.3 /ke/ + Verb: Potential or Future Action	32
Note 2.4 - The Simple Form of the Verb (without auxiliary)	33
Note 2.5 - Vowel Changes at Word Boundaries (Reference Note)	33
Note 2.6 - The Conjunction /ná/ 'and'	34
Drill 2.4 - Grammar Drills /ke/ + /na/ + Verb	35
Drill 2.5 - Grammar Drills /ke/ + Verb	36
Unit 3 Dialogue: Introducing Oneself	40
Drill 3.1 - Vocabulary Supplement	41
Drill 3.2 - Variation Drills	43

BASIC COURSE

Grammar Notes and Drills	48-60
Note 3.1 - /na/ and /ya/ as Relative Particles	48
Drill 3.3 - Grammar Drills on /ya/ and /na/	51
Unit 4 Dialogue: Family	61
Drill 4.1 - Vocabulary Supplement	63
Grammar Notes and Drills	65-76
Note 4.1 - /me/ + Verb: Immediate Past	65
Drill 4.2 - Grammar Drills /me/ + Verb	66
Note 4.2 - The Concept of Possession: /ke/ + /na/ + Noun	68
Drill 4.3 - Grammar Drills /ke/ + /na/ + Noun	69
Note 4.3 - The Negative /ve/	71
Drill 4.4 - Grammar Drills - The Negative	72
Note 4.4 - The \emptyset -BA Noun Class	72
Drill 4.5 - Grammar Drills - The \emptyset -BA Noun Class	73
Note 4.5 - The Verb /kuvwanda/ 'to be'	75
Note 4.6 - Various Uses of /mosi/ (Reference Note)	75
Unit 5 Dialogue: Buying and Selling	77
Drill 5.1 - Vocabulary Supplement	80
Grammar Notes and Drills	81-96
Note 5.1 The Verb Extension /.il-/.in-/ 'to, for, on behalf of'	81
Note 5.2 - Shift of /l/ to /d/ before /i/	82
Drill 5.2 - Grammar Drill - Verb Extension /.il-/.in-/	83
Note 5.3 - The MU-BA and N-BA Noun Classes	84
Note 5.4 - The DI-MA Noun Class	85
Drill 5.3 - Grammar Drills Illustrating the MU-BA, N-BA and DI-MA Noun Classes	85
Note 5.5 - Other Noun Classes	93
Drill 5.4 - Drills with Mixed Noun Classes	94
Unit 6 Dialogue: A Call	97
Drill 6.1 - Vocabulary Supplement	99
Drill 6.2 - Variation Drills	100
Grammar Notes and Drills	109-126
Note 6.1 - The Polite Imperative with /nge/	109
Drill 6.3 - The Polite Imperative	110
Note 6.2 - The Impersonal Expression /ikele/	111
Drill 6.4 - /ikele/	111
Note 6.3 - The Verbal Extension /.ak-/ 'Past' and 'Habitual'	112
Note 6.4 - Summary of 'Past' Forms of Kituba Verbs (Reference Note)	113

Drill 6.5 - Grammar Drills on Verbal Extension /.ak-/ 'Past'	114
Drill 6.6 - Grammar Drills with Verbal Extension /.ak-/ after /ke/ - 'Habitual'	121
Drill 6.7 - Grammar Drills - /me/ + Verb + /.ak-/ 'Intermediate Past'	126
Unit 7 Dialogue: Asking Directions	127
Drill 7.1 - Supplementary Vocabulary	129
Drill 7.2 - Variation Drills	133
Grammar Notes and Drills	145-157
Note 7.1 - Some Uses of the Simple Form of the Verb	145
Drill 7.3 - Grammar Drill on Use of the Simple Form of the Verb in the Second Clause	148
Note 7.2 - Adjectival Phrase with /ya/ + Infinitive (I)	149
Drill 7.4 - Grammar Drill on Adjectival Phrase with /ya/ + Verb	150
Drill 7.5 - Review Drills	152
Unit 8 Dialogue: Help in the Home	158
Drill 8.1 - Supplementary Vocabulary	163
Drill 8.2 - Variation Drills on Pattern Sentences	164
Grammar Notes and Drills	174-185
Note 8.1 - Some Verb Extensions	174
1. 'Reflexive' Prefix /ki-/ with and without extension /.il-/ .in-/	174
2. The 'Applicative' extension, /.il-/ .in-/ used to express 'instrument' etc.	175
Note 8.2 /kuzola/ kuzona/ as an auxiliary verb	177
Drill 8.3 Grammar Drills on Verbal Extensions	178
Unit 9 Dialogue: A Week's Activity	186
Grammar Notes and Drills	193-214
Note 9.1 - /vwandaka/ + Verb	193
Drill 9.1 - Grammar Drills: /vwandaka/ + Verb	
Note 9.2 - /ya/ + Verb - Adjectival use of the verb (II)	197
Drill 9.2 - Grammar Drill /-ya/ + Verb	198
Note 9.3 - The Days of the Week - Ordinal Numerals	202
Drill 9.3 - Grammar Drill - Ordinal Numerals	203
Note 9.4 - Some Further Verbal Extensions	204
Drill 9.4 - Grammar Drills on Verbal Extensions	208
Drill 9.5 - Controlled Dialogue Drill	211

BASIC COURSE

Unit 10 Dialogue: A Fable	215
Grammar Notes and Drills	220-225
Note 10.1 - The Extension /.am-/ 'Passive'	220
Drill 10.1 - Grammar Drill on the Extension /.am-/	221
Note 10.2 - The Extension /.an-/ 'Reciprocal', /.asan-/ 'continuous reciprocal'	222
Drill 10.2 - Grammar Drill on /.an-/ and /.asan-/	223
 GROUP A: VISITING FRIENDS AND RELATIVES (Home, Family and Work)	 226-287
Unit 11 Dialogue: A Family	226
Note 11.1 Kinship Terminology	229
Supplementary Vocabulary	229
Narrative	232
Unit 12 Dialogue: A Wedding Invitation	233
Note 12.1 - Indirect Discourse following /ke/ 'that'	239
Narrative	241
Unit 13 Dialogue: A Visit to a Congolese Home	242
Narrative	247
Unit 14 Dialogue: Talk About the House	248
Narrative	255
Unit 15 Dialogue: To Buy or to Rent	257
Narrative	262
Unit 16 Dialogue: In the Kitchen	264
Narrative	268
Unit 17 Dialogue: Dinner is Served	270
Narrative	274
Unit 18 Dialogue: Table Talk	276
Narrative	281
Unit 19 Dialogue: The End of the Evening	282
Narrative	286
 GROUP B: MONEY, COUNTING AND BARGAINING	 288-313
Unit 20 Dialogue: Buying Clothes	288
Narrative	293

KITUBA

Unit 21 Dialogue: Getting Some Curios	295
Narrative	303
Unit 22 Dialogue: Talking Shop	305
Narrative	312
GROUP C: GETTING ABOUT: DIRECTIONS, GEOGRAPHY AND CAR TROUBLES	314-347
Unit 23 Dialogue: Directions in Town	314
Narrative	319
Unit 24 Dialogue: On the Train	321
Narrative	329
Unit 25 Dialogue: Getting Set for a Car Trip	331
Narrative	338
Unit 26 Dialogue: Advice for the Road	340
Narrative	346
GROUP D: HOME MANAGEMENT AND CHILD CARE	348-391
Unit 27 Dialogue: Looking for Servants	348
Narrative	355
Unit 28 Dialogue: An Interview	357
Narrative	363
Unit 29 Dialogue: All in the Day's Work	365
Narrative	371
Unit 30 Dialogue: Child Care	373
Narrative	381
Unit 31 Dialogue: Cooking Instruction	383
Narrative	390
GROUP E: LEARNING MORE OF THE LANGUAGE	392-417
Unit 32 Dialogue: An Informal Language Lesson	392
Narrative	397
Unit 33 Dialogue: A Health Lesson from the Radio	399
Narrative	405

BASIC COURSE

Unit 34	Dialogue: Some French Borrowings	407
	Narrative	412
Unit 35	Dialogue: Some Health Rules	413
	Narrative	417

INTRODUCTION

GENERAL INTRODUCTION

I. The Kituba Language¹

The Kituba language appears to have arisen out of a need for intercommunication between up-river Congolese tribes speaking dialects of Lingala etc. and lower-river tribes speaking primarily dialects of Kikongo. This process began before the advent of Europeans in the inland areas but was apparently a response to trading needs stimulated by the arrival of European traders on the coast. Thus at the time of its original development Kituba was a pidgin language, an alteration of (primarily) Kikongo to meet the needs of inter-group communication. Later it began to become creolized as some people came to use it in the home as their primary language. The number of people to whom it is the 'native' language is probably still very small and the great majority of those who use this language (and there are perhaps 1,500,000 of these) also speak another, often several others.

The name of the language presents a problem. There are two main, mutually intelligible dialects. That of the eastern or Kwango-Kwilu region is called Kituba in some sections, Kikongo in others, the latter name reflecting the absence of speakers of real tribal Kikongo in that area. In the western areas of Congo (Leopoldville) the language is most often called Kikongo ya Leta, or Government Kikongo. In Congo (Brazzaville) it is called Munukutuba. In this course, although it represents essentially the western dialect, we have chosen to follow Fehderau in selecting the shorter, more convenient and generally acceptable name.

Kituba has been associated with the Belgian colonial administration, since it proved useful to Europeans who found it easier to use than Kikongo or other tribal languages. For this reason there is some residual feeling that the use of Kituba is an indication of opposition to the nationalist aspiration of, especially, the Bakongo people. However, it provides a means of communicating

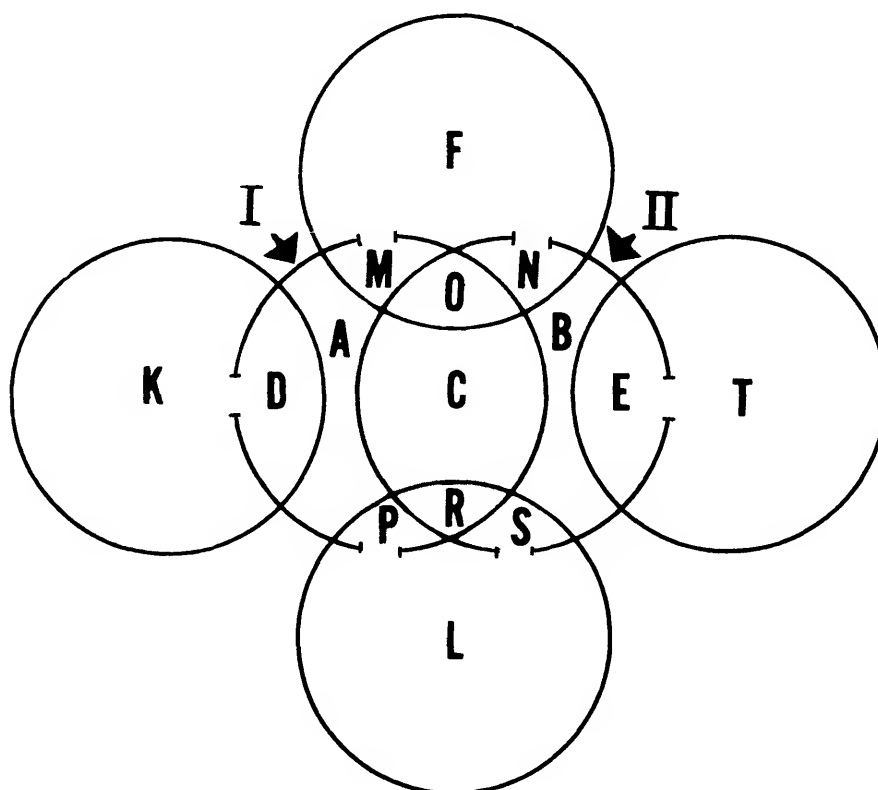
1

The writer is indebted to: Fehderau, Harold W. Descriptive Grammar of the Kituba Language, A Dialectal Survey, Leopoldville, 1962 (mimeo) for much of this information and for many helpful insights the application of which is evident throughout the course.

with a large number of people, speakers of various Kikongo dialects and a variety of other languages, and in certain areas where the tribal linguistic picture is very complicated, it shows signs of increasing use.

II. Patterns of Usage among Speakers of Kituba:¹

Schematic Diagram of the Major Kituba Language Usage Components



¹

This section is adapted with permission from Harold W. Fehderau's introduction to his critique of the preliminary edition of the Primer portion of this course. The writer is indebted to Fehderau for that critique and especially for permission to publish this valuable analysis of the usage situation in the Kituba speaking community. The fact that Fehderau has extensive field experience in the Kituba speaking area and sound linguistic training, makes it likely that his conclusions, whether based on statistically reliable samplings or on less extensive field records, are to be trusted.

A. Fehderau's investigation found two main dialect regions: western (Circle I) and eastern (Circle II). The speech of these two regions has a large common core of usage (C). However, each region has Kituba usages particular to speakers of that region: (A) which distinguishes the western dialect, and (B) which distinguishes the eastern dialect. (AC) could be called the common core Kituba of the western region; (BC) the common core Kituba of the eastern region.

B. However, many eastern-dialect speakers (II) use forms that do not fall into the (BC) area. (E) represents those forms (mainly vocabulary) which are drawn from local tribal languages (T). The circle is broken here between (E) and (T) to indicate the great freedom with which some speakers draw from tribal languages. Those who speak Kituba occasionally or have learned it as a second language late in life are more likely to draw freely on such tribal forms.

Historically, language items (especially vocabulary) can and do change status: an item from (T) can become a member of (B) and even of (C).

C. The same is true of Kituba in contact with Lingala (L) and French (F). There is a small common core of items in Kituba and Lingala (R), but individual speakers who know Lingala also draw on other forms in daily use: (P) and (S).

D. Contact with French (F) follows this pattern even to a greater degree. There is a common core (O) of items in Kituba that are borrowed from French and have become part of the language. Other items borrowed from French are western dialect common core items (M) or eastern dialect items (N). But there is a wide opening to French (F) from all areas since almost any form can be borrowed from French quite freely (within certain grammatical limits of Kituba).

E. Then, finally, paralleling the eastern tribal language usage, in the western region, many speakers make free use of Kikongo tribal language forms (K), from one dialect of Kikongo or another. Western speakers of Kituba (I) have a common core of Kikongo-like items (D) in their Kituba which do not occur in the eastern region(II). But other western speakers of Kituba draw more or less heavily on additional Kikongo forms, hence the free opening to Kikongo (K) from (D). Those who borrow freely from (K) are usually those who have only casual contacts with Kituba or have learned it late in life as a second language.

III. The Language of this Course

In terms of Fehderau's analysis above, this course represents the Kituba of the circle (I) which includes areas ACD plus MO and PR. The Congolese author of the course speaks also a dialect of Kikongo in some home contexts, Lingala in many contexts outside the home and French in most formal or academic contexts as well as with other Africans with whom he shares no common african language. He thus borrows rather freely from (L) and (F) and rather less freely from (K). The writers have compared his speech with that of a few representative speakers on tapes from Radio Leopoldville and Radio Brazzaville and find that the language here represented does not differ in any major respect from the language of those tapes,¹ perhaps most closely paralleling the Brazzaville ones.²

IV. Outline of These Materials

This course consists of a 'primer' in the language and a five subject-oriented group of lessons. The primer is intended to introduce the major grammatical structures of the language, to develop in the student an adequate pronunciation, and to present a certain amount of useful vocabulary for a variety of situations. The primer is prerequisite to the rest of the course, and the student is expected to go through it in order, as each unit presupposes the vocabulary and the grammar of the earlier ones.

The subject-oriented lesson groups all presuppose the vocabulary and grammar of the entire primer, and each group is intended to be studied from the beginning - the vocabulary within a given group begin cumulative. However, no subject-oriented lesson group depends in any way on any other group so that the student is free to pursue his study of these lesson groups in any order after he has finished the primer.

This arrangement is intended to provide maximum flexibility. The class with only a few hours of time to devote to classroom drill with an instructor may find it possible to cover the primer only. Students with more time will wish to select such of the

1

But seems to include a somewhat heavier Lingala vocabulary element than is evident on either set of tapes.

2

This may be due to the fact that the few tapes available to us included highly informal field interviews from Brazzaville but only more formal studio recordings from Leopoldville.

subjects fields covered in the later lessons as are of most interest to them. Students in intensive courses with at least 300 hours of class and laboratory will be able to cover the entire content of the course. An additional element of flexibility is provided in that the primer may be used as an introduction to be followed by more specialized subject-oriented lessons which are not included in this course but which may be constructed by an instructor or a linguist to meet the specialized needs of particular students.

INTRODUCTION FOR THE USER

I. The Alphabet Used and the Phonemic System of Kituba

The alphabet used in these lessons is that commonly used for writing Kituba and consists of the letters:

a b d e f g i k l m n o p s t u v w y z

Note that there are no signs which are not familiar in the English alphabet and that c h j q r x are omitted. All of these latter letters may occur in words from French or other foreign languages borrowed into Kituba.

The phonemes (significant sound units) of Kituba are adequately represented by the above alphabet. They are:

<u>Consonants:</u>	<u>Labial</u>	<u>Dental-Alveolar- Palatal</u>	<u>Velar</u>
Stops: Voiceless	p	t	k
Voiced	b	d	g
Fricatives: Voiceless:	f	s	
Voiced	v	z	
Nasals:	m	n	
Liquid:		l	
Glides:	w	y	
<u>Vowels</u>	<u>Front</u>	<u>Central</u>	<u>Back</u>
High:	i		u
Low:	e	a	o

In addition the following complex consonants occur and pattern in the language like single consonants:

mp mb nt nd nk ng mf mv ns nz nl

In such 'nasal compounds' the nasal element is 'homorganic' (formed at the same place in the mouth) with the following sound: [m] before labials, [n] before dentals or palatals, and [ŋ] (like the ng of English sing) before velar stops (written /n/).

Compounds of consonant plus glides (/y/ or /w/) are also common. All combinations of consonant plus glide are theoretically possible but some are more common than others due to the fact that such compounds commonly arise out of changes which occur during the combining of roots with various affixes.

In addition to the segmental phonemes listed above, Kituba employs stress and pitch differences. While not normally considered a tone language, Kituba does have a number of pairs of words the sole distinction between the members of which is a matter of stress and pitch.

For convenience, in these materials, we have chosen to accept one pattern as in some sense normal for Kituba and to mark variations from the pattern on each word where such variations occur the first time the word is cited. After citation of the word with these variations marked, the word occurs subsequently in standard orthography without such marks. An example of this:

kusolula 'to find' which is phonetically approximately:
[kusōlúla] where the macron [-] represents accent - here principally an additional component of length of the vowel - and the accent ['] represents pitch rise.

and kusŏlula 'to converse' which is phonetically approximately [kusolula] with no appreciable variation in stress or pitch among syllables.

As illustrated in this example the symbol [˘] over the root syllable of a form indicates that the pattern of accent on the root syllable and pitch rise on the next to the last syllable - a pattern which we accept as normal for Kituba - does not occur or is replaced by a pattern of relative evenness of both accent (which is mainly length in Kituba) and pitch.

Words which have the stress-pitch pattern here associated with the symbol [˘] are words which have cognate forms in Lingala in which language such cognates occur with a consistently low tone pattern. Thus it would appear that in these forms Kituba has words in which a feature of tone (pitch) is phonemic. The grammatical function of such tonal differences is zero and the number of pairs of words on which this feature operates is relatively low, so that it would not appear desirable for pedagogic purposes to mark all occurrences of pitch phonemes as one does for a language in which tone carries a much greater functional load.

A number of words of foreign origin - chiefly French - occur in Kituba with stress and a rise in pitch on other than the next to the last syllable. Such pitch rises have been marked in these materials with an acute [´] as in the examples:

pósite	'post'	penzá	'very, extremely'
kamió	'truck'		

In addition to these matters, Kituba employs intonational (pitch) differences over longer stretches than the word to signal such matters as interrogation. These will be explained in notes in the body of the course where drill on these distinctions is considered appropriate.

II. Pronunciation Pointers

The stops are generally unaspirated (lacking a puff of air such as is characteristic of initial voiceless stops in English - like the /t/ of tip) but in nasal compounds under certain circumstances a certain amount of aspiration is heard (see Note 1.6). The /t/ and /d/ are dental in articulation rather than alveolar as in English. That is, they are made by placing the tongue on the gum ridge behind the upper teeth but with the tongue tip touching the back of the teeth.

The fricatives /f/ and /v/ are much as in English. /s/ and /z/, however, vary considerably in pronunciation with different speakers and in different environments. After /n/ both are very far forward (dental articulation). Between vowels some speakers have /s/, some /z/ and some have sounds approximating the sh of she or the z of azure. Sounds approximating English /s/ and /z/ are common. Before /i/, /s/ and /z/ occur with an affricated

BASIC COURSE

pronunciation appproximating [ts] and [dz] respectively as in the words /insi/ 'country, land; under' which is phonetically [intsi], and /nzinzi/ 'fly' which is phonetically [ndzindzi].

There is no significant distinction in Kituba between [l]-like sounds and [r]-like sounds - all are written with the letter l except that the letter r occurs in some borrowed words.

Since speakers of Kituba are likely to be speakers also of some other language(s), there is more variation in pronunciation caused by interference of other language habits than is usually the case with monolingual speakers of a language. The student should imitate the pronunciation of his instructor regardless of the transcription in these units. For this reason also this course has fewer phonological drills than most courses published by the Foreign Service Institute.

If all the French sounds or approximations of French sounds which occur in French loan-words in the pronunciation of Kituba speakers who also know some French were to be included, the above list would be much complicated. As the student starting Kituba is assumed to know French, a detailed treatment of these sounds is not needed. However, as French sounds often are modified in Kituba the following table (adopted from Fehderau, Descriptive Grammar of the Kituba Language) may be helpful:

<u>French Sound:</u>	<u>Commonly Spelled in French</u>	<u>Becomes in Kituba:</u>
ʃ	ch	s
ʒ	j or g	z
r	r	l
ü	u	i
œ	eu	e
õ	on	o
ã	an	a

III. Structure and Use of the Materials

Each unit in the primer consists of a short dialogue, variation drills, a vocabulary supplement, grammar notes, and grammar drills. In units after the primer the dialogue is supplemented with a short narrative, notes are rare, and there are no drills. These materials are intended for use as follows:

Dialogues

The dialogues are short conversational pieces which the student should memorize until he can recite them to the complete satisfaction of the instructor - taking the roles and acting out the situations represented with near-native pronunciation, fluency and accuracy.

Vocabulary Supplements

Additional vocabulary is presented in drills, commonly simple substitution drills (see Types of Drill) below. The new words are given as items to be substituted in a certain slot in pattern sentences, generally selected from the dialogue of the unit being studied. Where appropriate the student should memorize these as alternate sentences for use in the dialogue and should be able to substitute the new vocabulary in his recitation of the dialogue upon the request of the instructor. The sentences incorporating new vocabulary will not always, of course, be appropriate to the situation of the dialogue. In such cases the instructor will furnish short 'minimal dialogues' within the vocabulary and grammatical competence of the students (such things as an appropriate question to which the sentence incorporating the new word might be a suitable response) to provide practice in the new items.

Grammar Notes

These are presented as explanations of points of grammar illustrated by one or more of the utterances already memorized as part of a dialogue, or as part of the Vocabulary Supplement. Occasionally sentences from the drills of earlier units may be used as illustrations of grammar points but drills generally do not contain grammatical points not already explained.

The notes are intended to be read by the student and to serve as a basis for whatever additional explanation of the grammar may prove necessary. If a trained linguist is available his

assistance should be sought. Lengthy discussion of the content of the notes by untrained instructors is discouraged, but the instructor can often help the student to understand the notes by providing additional examples of the same grammatical structures.

Drills

As indicated above drills are generally in two groups in any unit: a) variation drills on pattern sentences, which provide opportunities for the student to develop flexibility in the use of patterns already memorized, and b) grammar drills, which are intended to provide practice for the student in the operation of the patterns explained in the immediately preceding grammar notes. Drills in either group may be of any of the various types explained below under IV Types of Drill.

At various places in the course translations are provided. These are regularly provided in dialogues and in the drills of vocabulary supplements, occasionally in other drills.

In translations of sentences the enclosure of a word or phrase in parentheses, (), indicates that the equivalent of this word or phrase occurs in Kituba but that this item is not helpful to a smooth English translation. Square brackets, [], indicate that the word or phrase so enclosed is needed for a smooth English translation but has not direct equivalent in the Kituba. A smoother translation can thus commonly be obtained by reading the items in brackets and omitting those in parentheses. Where it is felt desirable to provide a supplementary more literal translation in addition, the supplementary translation is enclosed in parentheses and single quotation marks, (' '). A sentence illustrating these conventions is:

Inki ntangu kalaka ke kwenda	When ('what time') will
na inzo n'andi?	[the] clerk go (to his)
	home ('house')?

Thus the smoothest English translation is 'When will the clerk go home?' while that closest to the Kituba original is 'What time will clerk go to his house?'

IV Types of Drill

Drills in this course are of a considerable variety. By far the largest number are substitution drills of one of the several sub-types outlined below. All drills are designed for

oral presentation to students whose books are closed, but the format adopted is intended also to provide maximum convenience to the student practicing the drill outside of class or with the tape. Below is an outline of the types of drills and the way in which each is intended to be used:

A Substitution Drills

1. **Simple Substitution Drills:** These are patterns provided with a list of words or phrases all of which fit into a single slot in the pattern to produce acceptable Kituba sentences. The instructor first presents each sentence in its entirety for student repetition and comprehension. He then presents the pattern followed by the individual substitution items for the student to make the substitution in the pattern.
2. **Multiple Substitution Drills:** These are patterns provided with two or more lists of words or phrases for substitution freely in two or more slots. These drills are so constructed that any combination of the items in the several slots will produce an intelligible sentence. Of course, this type of drill is subject to the restriction that many of the sentences, while intelligible, may not prove to be maximally useful in actual situations. For this reason the instructor is advised not to go through all the drill patterns which are possible with the items presented, but rather to choose items for substitution which make the more likely sentences.

In effect, simple and multiple substitution drills as presented in these units are not really drills as they appear on the printed page, but rather provide a set of material with which the instructor can construct a drill resembling one or more of the further types of substitution drills outlined below.

How this may be done can be illustrated by the following drill from Unit 1:

Mu	ke na	kusosa	kisalu.
Nge		kuzola	magazini.
			ntangu.
			kalaka.

In practice this drill might be done as follows:

After each of the sixteen sentences possible with this number of items in three substitution slots has been repeated by the students for practice, the following random substitution drill is possible with this material:

Teacher: Mu ke na kusosa kisalu.
Student(s): Mu ke na kusosa kisalu.
Teacher: kuzola
Student(s): Mu ke na kuzola kisalu.
Teacher: magazini
Student(s): Mu ke na kuzola magazini.
Teacher: nge
Student(s): Nge ke na kuzola magazini?¹
Teacher: ntangu
Student(s): Nge ke na kuzola ntangu?
Teacher: kusosa
Student(s): Nge ke na kusosa ntangu?
Teacher: kalaka
Student(s): Nge ke na kusosa kalaka?²
Teacher: mu
Student(s): Mu ke na kusosa kalaka.
etc.

1

In drills in this course it is adopted as a convention that substitution of a second person pronoun in subject position requires a question intonation. This convention is followed consistently throughout the drills. The reason for the convention is that statements with second person subjects, while possible, are less frequent or likely than questions. The reverse also applies - namely that questions lacking a question word which have first person subjects are unlikely and do not occur in drills.

2

In this sentence the student is subjected to a decision concerning the slot into which /kalaka/ is to be substituted - it could be either /Kalaka ke na kusosa ntangu./ or the sentence given above. If such confusions are likely, the drill should be done as a progressive substitution drill rather than as a random one. (see the discussion below)

3. **Progressive Substitution Drills:** These consist of a pattern followed by a cue followed by the pattern as modified by the substitution of the cue followed by another cue, etc. If the drill is 'progressive' the items are intended to be substituted into the slots in order. Thus the first item may be substituted into the first slot, the second into the second slot and so forth, until all slots being used for substitution in the drill have undergone substitution, after which the pattern is again repeated. Progressive Substitution drill lends itself to the practice of patterns in which it is not clear from the grammar of the pattern sentence which slot a particular form is intended to be substituted into. Thus, in the English sentence John hit Bill., if the substitution word 'Mary' is supplied by the instructor for substitution, the student has no way to know whether this name is to be substituted for the subject or the object in the sentence, unless a pattern has been established of substituting first in the subject slot, then in the object slot, and so on.

4. **Random Substitution Drills:** These appear on the printed page and are operated like the progressive substitution drills described above except that the substitutions are not made in the several slots in any patterned order. This type of drill is possible when the grammar of the sentence makes clear which slot each substitution is intended to fill. Thus in the English sentence He hit Mary, if the substitution item is 'she' the substitution must clearly be made in one slot, while 'her' could only be substituted in another slot. If the substitution item 'you' were presented, however, this pattern could not be operated as a random substitution drill since 'you' may equally be put into two slots.

5. **Substitution-Modification Drills:** Either of the types of substitution drill outlined in (3) and (4) above may involve also a change of the form of the item presented for substitution. Thus the singular may be presented as the cue for substitution into a pattern where only the corresponding plural form is appropriate. This then involves a modification of the form of the word presented before the substitution can be made. In these materials drills requiring such changes in the forms of words are called substitution-modification drills in the early units. Later it is assumed that the student has become accustomed to having cues presented in 'citation form' (for example the infinitive form of verbs) and the word modification is dropped from the title of the drills.

6. Substitution-Correlation Drills: These are drills of either of the types outlined in (3) and (4) above in which the substitution of an item in one slot of the pattern requires a change at some point in the pattern. Thus, if the English sentence He gave her a book yesterday is the pattern and the word three is given as cue, the word book must be changed to books. In the same pattern, if the word tomorrow is presented as the cue, the form of gave must be changed to will give or is going to give.

B Transformation Drills

These are drills in which one form of a sentence is presented and the student is requested to produce a sentence which is related to the pattern sentence in an easily generalizable way. For example, a positive pattern may be presented and the student requested to respond with the negative; or a statement is given and the student asked to produce the corresponding question, or vice versa. Relatively few of these are printed in the course but large numbers of the drills which are, can be operated also with appropriate transformations. A few drills as printed combine substitution and transformation.

C Minimal Conversation Drills

These are drills in which a sentence is presented to which the student is expected to produce the appropriate response. The commonest type of minimal conversation drills are those involving the asking of a question to which the student is expected to provide the appropriate (or an appropriate) answer. In many units no drills of this type appear, it being supposed that the instructor can readily supply these as needed.

D Controlled Conversation Drills

These are drills in which the student is provided with a set of English directions outlining for him what his part of the conversation is supposed to contain and perhaps sketching also the nature of the responses which he can anticipate from the instructor or another student who is carrying the other part of the conversation. In a parallel column to these directions, the entire conversation is provided for the instructor (or the other student) to see. The student is expected to look only at the column of English directions and to produce the appropriate sentences to carry on his part of the conversation.

E. Free Conversation Drills

It is expected that the instructor will throughout the course engage the students in short periods of free conversation within the framework of the vocabulary and grammar which have been taught. At the beginning such free conversations will be restricted to greetings and minimal question-answer conversations in which the instructor will elicit as responses patterns which have already been memorized by the student. This part of the course depends very largely on the ingenuity of the instructor in eliciting from his students responses which are within their capability at any particular point and, of course, these drills cannot be printed as part of the material nor tape recorded for student practice. As the students progress, free conversational drill will become an ever increasing part of their experience with the language. The instructor needs, however, to curb his natural enthusiasm for this kind of exercise and to make sure that free conversation does not become for the student a laborious process of puzzling out sentences which do not resemble any which have been presented to him in other drills. In other words, the instructor needs to restrict free conversation rigorously to the patterns already thoroughly learned by the students and only as the student's inventory of patterns so thoroughly learned grows larger can the amount of time devoted to free conversation be increased.

A Note on the Format of Substitution Drills

Substitution Drills of the progressive or random type (and occasionally also Simple Substitution Drills which require correlation of other forms in the sentence) are printed in these materials with the cues in one column to the left and the pattern in a matching column to the right. The item in each column for which the cue is to be substituted is underlined. This format lends itself to the use of a 3 x 5 or 4 x 6 index card in which a notch of appropriate size has been cut from the upper left corner. When such a notched card is laid on the page and slid downward each pattern sentence appears above the card and the cue to be substituted in the sentence appears simultaneously in the space notched out of the card. This enables the instructor in class or the student in the laboratory or in his study to see at a glance each pattern in order, together with the cue to be substituted into the underlined slot in the pattern. After the substitution has been made and recited, merely sliding the card down another line exposes the correct response for comparison with the student's response.

This correct response in turn becomes the pattern for the next substitution.

It will be noted that the great majority of the substitution drills have identical first and last sentences. The purpose of this arrangement is that the drill may be continued circularly as long as necessary without interruption.

Substitution and Transformation drills which are printed in their entirety in these materials are recorded in full on the accompanying tapes. Substitution drills in the Supplementary Vocabulary sections are also recorded in full. Simple and Multiple Substitution Drills in other parts of the units are not recorded, the number of sentences and the order of substitution of the items in the various slots being subject to considerable variation. Minimal and controlled conversation drills are also not recorded, since a variety of responses is acceptable here.

DIALOGUE: LOOKING FOR WORK

-A-

m.bote¹

good, well

na¹with, at, in, for, to
(general preposition)

n.ge

you (singular)

Mbote na nge!

Good morning! / Greetings!

('Good to you!!')

-B-

ke / kele (ku-kal-a)

am, is, are

Mbote. Nge ke mbote?

Fine! Are you well?

-A-

mu / munu

I, me

melesi

Fr: merci; thanks

Mu ke mbote, melesi.

I'm fine, thanks.

-B-

inki?

what?, which?

ku-zol-a/ku-zon-a

to want, to like, to love

Inki nge zola?

What do you want?

-A-

ku-sos-a

to look for

ku-sal-a

to work, to do

ki-sal-u (bi-)

work, job

Mu ke na kusosa kisalu.

I'm in the process of looking for
1 work.

-B-

ku-zab-a

to know

Inki kisalu nge zaba?

What work do you know?

-A-

kalaka (ba-)²

Fr: clerc; clerk

ya

of (relative particle)

magazini (ba-)

Fr: magasin; shop, store

Mu ke kalak a magazini.³
a y

I'm a store clerk.

-B-

ina/ yina

that, which

mingi

much, very, quite, many

Ina ke mbote mingi.

That's very fine.

-A-

n.tangu

sun, watch, clock, time

inki ntangu?

when?

ku-bănd-a

to begin, start

Inki ntangu mu ke banda?

When am I to start?

-B-

kw-iz-a

to come

m.bazi/m.basi

tomorrow

suka (ba-)

morning

Kwiza mbazi na suka.

Come [back] tomorrow (in) mor-
ning.

-A-

ku-bik-a

to cease, quit, leave,
abandon, let

ku-bik.al-a

to remain, stay, live,
reside

Melesi mingi. Bikala mbote.

Thanks very much. Goodbye.

(to person remaining)

-B-

kw-end-a

to go

Kwenda mbote.

Goodbye. (to person going)

1

Individual words and phrases presented in the dialogues of these units before the sentences where they are used are known as "build-ups". Items indented beyond other forms in build-ups are particles not commonly pronounced alone.

2

French words, including proper names, often appear in writing with their normal French spellings or a partial modification thereof. When the pronunciation approximates the standard French pronunciation such spellings are here retained. Often accent marks of the standard French spelling are omitted in written Kituba. In build-ups of the dialogues, the following conventions are employed in the right hand column:

- a) If the word in Kituba is borrowed from French but is severely

altered in its pronunciation the abbreviation, Fr:, appears in the right hand column followed by the French word and then the English translation:

Madí

Fr: Marie; Mary

b) If the word is used in Kituba with little change from the French pronunciation, the abbreviation (Fr.) is used in the right hand column followed immediately by the English translation:

juste

(Fr.); exact(ly)

Similarly Port. indicates Portuguese, etc.

3

Portions of sentences in the dialogues which are written below the line are normally present in the spelling but not pronounced.

Drill 1.1 VARIATION DRILLS ON PATTERN SENTENCES

a) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Inki	nge	zola?
	kalaka	zaba?
		kele?

b) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Mu	ke na	kusosa	kisalu.
Nge		kuzola	magazini.
			ntangu.
			kalaka.

c) Random Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Mu zola <u>kisalu</u> yina.	
kalaka	Mu <u>zola</u> kalaka yina.	
kuzaba	<u>Mu</u> zaba kalaka yina.	
nge	Nge zaba <u>kalaka</u> yina?	
magazini	Nge zaba <u>magazini</u> yina?	
ntangu	<u>Nge</u> zaba ntangu yina?	Do you know that watch.
mu	Mu <u>zaba</u> ntangu yina.	
kuzola	Mu zola <u>ntangu</u> yina.	
kisalu	Mu zola kisalu yina.	

d) Random Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Inki ntangu mu ke <u>banda</u> ?	What time am I to start?
kwenda	Inki <u>ntangu</u> mu ke kwenda?	What time am I to go?
suka	Inki suka mu ke <u>kwenda</u> ?	What morning am I to go?
kusala	Inki suka <u>mu</u> ke sala?	What morning am I to work?
nge	Inki <u>suka</u> nge ke sala?	
kisalu	Inki kisalu nge ke <u>sala</u> ?	What work are you to do?
kuzola	Inki kisalu nge ke <u>zola</u> ?	What work will you want?
kubanda	Inki <u>kisalu</u> nge ke banda?	What work will you start?
suka	Inki suka <u>nge</u> ke banda?	
mu	Inki suka mu ke <u>banda</u> ?	

Inki suka mu ke banda?¹

kwiza Inki suka mu ke kwiza?

ntangu Inki ntangu mu ke kwiza?

kubanda Inki ntangu mu ke banda?

Drill 1.2 VOCABULARY SUPPLEMENT

a) Simple Substitution Drill

Mu ke na kusosa	kisalu. <u>mukanda.</u> <u>dinkondo.</u> <u>nzila.</u> <u>lukaya.</u> <u>mwelo.</u> <u>mbele.</u> <u>muntu.</u> <u>mwana.</u> <u>nkento.</u> <u>zandu.</u>	I'm looking for [a] job. [a] book/letter. [a] banana. [a] path. [a] leaf. [a] door. [a] knife. [a] person (somebody) [a] child. [a] woman. [a] market.
-----------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

1

In substitution drills which continue from one page to the next in these materials, the final pattern from the previous page is repeated on the following page. This repetition is not reflected in the recordings.

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Beto ke na kusosa	bisalu.	We're looking for jobs.
	mikanda.	books.
	mankondo.	bananas.
	banzila.	paths.
	makaya.	leaves.
	mielo. /myelo/	doors.
	bambele.	knives.
	bantu.	people.
	bana.	children.
	bakento.	women.
	bazandu.	markets.

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 1.1 Singular and Plural : Noun Classes (Reference Note)¹

Compare:

mu-n.tu	person	ba-n.tu	people
mw-ana	child	b(a)-ana	children
n-kento	woman	ba-kento	women
n.zila	way	ba-n.zila	ways

¹ A 'reference note' is one which explains a matter the understanding of which is necessary background for further progress, but which it is not desirable to drill in depth at once.

mu-kanda	book	mi-kanda	books
mw-elo	door	mi-elo	doors
ki-salu	job	bi-salu	jobs
di-n.kondo	banana	ma-n.kondo	bananas
lu-kaya	leaf	ma-kaya	leaves
suku	room	ma-suku	rooms

From these examples it is clear that there are several classes of nouns in Kituba (as in all Bantu languages) distinguishable on the basis of the shapes of their singular and plural forms. A comparison of these examples shows singular forms with prefixes /mu-/, /mw-/, /n-/, /ki-/, /di-/, /lu-/, and / \emptyset / (no prefix). Plural forms occur with prefixes /ba-/, /mi-/, /bi-/, and /ma-/. But there is no regular correspondence between one singular and one plural form. Thus nouns with singular prefix /mu-/ may have plural prefix /ba-/ or plural prefix /mi-/. This means that to designate a class we must cite both the singular and the plural prefix. If we take into consideration the fact that /mw-/ occurs before vowels and /mu-/ before consonants and so consider both as forms of a prefix for which we may adopt the formula: MU-, we have the following noun classes illustrated by the examples above:

CLASS

MU-	BA-	muntu	bantu
N-	BA-	nkento	bakento

Ø-	BA-	nzila	banzila
MU-	MI-	mukanda	mikanda
KI-	BI-	kisalu	bisalu
D -	MA-	dinkondo	mankondo
LU-	MA-	lukaya	makaya
Ø-	MA-	suku	masuku

In build-ups of dialogues and elsewhere, whenever a new noun is introduced, the singular form will be cited with a hyphen between the singular prefix (if any) and the root and the plural prefix will be given in parentheses. If the word does not normally occur in the singular, only the plural form is given. If it does not normally occur in the plural, an empty parenthesis will indicate the fact. If the root commences with a nasal compound the nasal of which is not a singular prefix, a dot between the nasal and the following letter indicates that the item is alphabetized under the following consonant. e.g.: /n.zila/ (plural /ba-n.zila/) which appears in the glossary under z. In accordance with these conventions these forms appear in the build-ups in the dialogue of Unit 1:

kalaka	(ba-)	singular: kalaka	plural: bakalaka
magazini	(ba-)	magazini	bamagazini
n.tangu	(ba-)	ntangu	bantangu
ki-salu	(bi-)	kisalu	bisalu

All but the last belong to the \emptyset - BA- class. In the list at the head of this note words of other classes are introduced with appropriate hyphens and dots. In build-ups these words would appear:

mu-n.tu (ba-)

mu-kanda (mi-)

etc.

All of the prefixes of these noun classes have more than one shape, determined by their phonemic environments. We have noted that MU- is /mu-/ before consonants and /mw-/ before vowels. In general, the rules for change of shape of noun prefixes are as follows:

1. Before consonants all prefixes have a 'basic' shape:

/mu-/, /ba-/, /ki/, /bi-/ etc.

2. Before vowels the following changes occur:

- a. If the vowel of the prefix and the initial vowel of the root are the same, the two are shortened to one vowel:

ba-	-ana	bana	children
-----	------	------	----------

di-	-inu	dinu	tooth
-----	------	------	-------

- b. If the vowel of the prefix is /u/ or /i/ the prefix occurs before vowel-initial roots with the semi-vowel /w/ or /y/ respectively:

mu-	-ana	mwana	child ¹
mi-	-elo	myelo	doors (spelled mielo)

c. If the vowel of the prefix is /a/ the following statements apply:

1. /a/ + /i/ + nasal compound = /ai/

ba- -inzo bainzo houses

ba- -inti bainti trees

2. /a/ + /i/ + a single consonant = /e/:

ma- -inu menu/meno²

Vowel initial roots are relatively few except for those having /i/ plus a nasal compound. French words starting with vowels do not regularly produce any change in the prefix:

ba- -enemi baenemi enemies

The student is not expected to develop immediate automatic control of the singular and plural forms of all the nouns presented in this unit. The common classes will be taken up and drilled in subsequent units.

1

This change is regularly reflected in standard spelling.

2

This variation of final vowel is due to remnants of 'vowel harmony' which is not very common.

Note 1.2 Verbs (Reference Note)

Verbs are introduced in these materials in their 'infinitive' form with the prefix /ku-/ unless they do not occur in such form. Thus in the dialogue of Unit 1 the verbs /kuzola/ 'want, like', /kusosa/ 'look for', /kusala/ 'work', /kuzaba/ 'know', /kubanda/ 'begin', /kwiza/ 'come' and /kwenda/ 'go' are introduced.

Since /ku-/ is a prefix and may be omitted in other forms of the verb and since the /-a/ at the end can be replaced by other vowels in derived noun forms (e.g. /ku-sal-a/ 'to work' but /ki-sal-u/ 'job'), these two affixes are separated from the verb stem by hyphens in build-ups.

Actually the root (e.g. the sal of /ku-sal-a/) is not a verb unless or until the /-a/ is added. Thus /Sala!/ 'Work!' is a verbal form, but the same root occurs in the noun /ki-sal-u/ 'job'. While there are a large number of nouns which clearly do not share roots with verbal forms, a large number of nouns do, as in this example. We call those roots, which are shared among 'families' of related verbs and nouns, verbs as a matter of convenience and to distinguish them from those words which do not have similar shared roots, which we call nouns.

In these materials the terms root, extension, and stem are used in the following senses:

root is that indivisible element remaining when all affixes are removed. Examples of roots:

ku-sal-a, ki-sal-u, mu-n.tu, n.tang-u etc.

extension is a non-final affix to a root or stem. Extensions normally add concepts such as passive, reflexive, causative etc. to the dictionary meaning of the root or stem to which they are attached. An example of an extension is:

ku-bik.al-a added to root bik.

stem is that form which consists of root plus extensions to which final suffixes (and initial prefixes) are attached.

Note 1.3 Word Accent

Kituba words consist basically of a root, with or without a variety of affixes. Roots may have various forms (in the formulae below C stands for consonant or consonant cluster, V for vowel). All roots end in consonants:

Form:	Examples:
C	ku-w-a 'to hear', ku-nw-a 'to drink' ku-dy-a 'to eat', (spelled kudia)
VC	kw-end-a 'to go', kw-iz-a 'to come'
CVC	ku-sal-a 'to work', ku-bānd-a 'to begin', ku-ndim-a 'to permit'

The CVC root is by far the most common.

Roots which contain a vowel usually have that vowel longer than other vowels in the word. The next to the last syllable in the word (regardless of the length) is characterized by the 'word accent' - a noticeable rise in pitch. In most simple words in Kituba the root vowel is also the vowel of the next to the last syllable and thus length and pitch rise coincide. However, many Kituba words have derivational extensions added to the root to make extended stems. In such words the long syllable and the accented syllable do not coincide:

ku-sōs-a 'to look for'

ku-sōs.íí 'to look for (someone)'

The interplay of the long vowels of roots with the pitch accent of the next to last syllable in the word accounts for the characteristic rhythm of Kituba.

Certain words, of which /ku-bānd-a/ is the only example in Unit 1, do not have the length and accent of the root syllable described above but are characterized by relatively even pitch and length throughout (which sounds, by contrast with other Kituba words, like an accent on the final syllable). Such words are borrowings from Lingala, where they occur with low tones throughout. They will be marked in build-ups in these materials by a breve /˘/ over the root syllable: /ku-bānd-a/.

Some words, commonly of French origin, have the pitch-accent on a syllable other than the next to last. Such accents will be marked by an acute over the accented syllable: /avió/ 'airplane', /penzá/ 'very'.

Note 1.4 The Intonation of 'yes or no' Questions

Questions which do not contain a question word (such as /inki/ 'what?') are characterized by a maintenance of higher pitch through the sentence until the final accented syllable is reached. Following or (when the accent is on the final syllable) coinciding with this final accented syllable in the sentence there is a sharp dropoff in pitch. This contrasts with a more gradual fall in pitch throughout the sentence in statements and in questions with question words. In these materials this distinctive question intonation will be indicated only by a question mark (?) at the end of a sentence lacking a question word.

Note 1.5 Long and Short Forms of Certain Words

In the build-ups of Unit 1 occur the forms: /mu/ and /munu/, /ke/ and /kele/ as alternative forms of the 'same' words. In general the practice of speakers of Kituba in the use of these forms is as follows:

The short form occurs when the word occurs early in the phrase or sentence, the longer form is more likely to occur in phrase-final or sentence final position:

Mu ke kalak_a ya magazini. but Inki nge kele?

Mu ke na kusosa kisalu. but Nge ke na kusosa munu?

('Are you looking for me?')

This would seem, therefore, to be a matter of phrase and sentence rhythm where the very short syllables /mu/ and /ke/ are less common at the end of a phrase or sentence. In phrases where it follows /ya/ or /na/, as will be demonstrated in subsequent units, the form /munu/ is almost universal.

Note 1.6 The Pronunciation of Nasal Compounds

The nasal compounds /mp/, /mb/, /nt/, /nd/, /nk/, and /ng/ vary in their pronunciation at different places in a word.

Compounds which occur initially in a word or phrase have the stop element prominent and the nasal element slighted, so much so that they are often pronounced (and spelled) with no nasal element at all:

ntangu is pronounced ⁿtangu or tangu

nkento is pronounced ⁿkento or kento

mpe is pronounced ^mpe or pe

Compounds of which the stop element is voiceless, when they occur after a vowel have a fairly equal pronunciation of both elements with the stop somewhat aspirated:

nkento is pronounced ⁿkent'o ; bant'u

Those of which the stop element is voiced occur after a vowel with the stop element very much reduced:

ntangu is pronounced ⁿtan^ŋu [ⁿtan^ŋu]

Compounds with fricatives or the liquid (/mf/, /mv/, /ns/, /nz/, /nl/) occur with both elements fairly equal.

Drill 1.3 Pronunciation Drill on Nasal Compounds

The words in the following drills are presented at this time for pronunciation practice rather than as vocabulary to be learned. All are words which will occur again elsewhere in the course.

Initially

After a vowel

/mp/

mpatu	plantation	dimpa	bread
mpembe	white, fair	mampa	bread(s)
mpe	also	mpimpa	night, darkness
Mputu	Europe		
mpangi	sibling		
mpimpa	night, darkness		

/mb/

mbote	good, well	mpembe	white, fair
mbazi	tomorrow	nkumbu	name, noun
mbuta muntu	elder, sir	kitambala	kerchief, head scarf
mbisi	meat, animal	kuzimbala	to get lost
mbongo	money	mambu	matters
		kusumba	to buy
		kilambi	cook
		mukombi	sweeper
		sambanu	six

/nt/

ntangu	sun, time	nkento	woman
ntama	far, long ago	muntu	person
ntalu	price, value	intu	head
		kintuntu	flower

/nd/

ndambu	side	kubānda	to start
ndeke	bird	kwenda	to go
ndinga	language, tongue	mukanda	book, letter
ndombe	black, Negro	dinkondo	banana
ndumba	maiden	zandu	market
		yandi	he, she

		Uganda	Uganda
		kuvwanda	to sit down
		kulanda	to follow
		bandunda	vegetables
		inda	long, tall, size
		kulenda	to be able
		mundele	white person
/nk/			
nkento	woman	inki	what?
nkumbu	name, noun	dinkondo	banana
nkuni	wood		
nkufi	short		
/ng/			
nge	you (sing.)	ntangu	sun, time
ngolo	hard, strong	mingi	much, many
		Kongó	Congo
		mpangi	sibling
		nsinga	rope
		kutunga	to build, to make
		kutanga	to read
		mbongo	money

		m̥anga	mango
		kukangila	to wrap for
		nlongi	teacher
		Bakongo	members of Kongo tribe
/mf/			
mfuka	debt	bamfuluta	guava (fruit)
mfumu	chief	bamfumu	chiefs
mfulu	bed		
mfinda	forest, wood		
/mv/			
mvula	rain, year	kiamvu	bridge
mvutu	answer, response		
mvimba	entire, all		
/ns/			
nsusu	chicken	kansi	but
nsinga	rope	insi	country; under
nsengo	hoe	Falansé	French
/nz/			
nzila	way, means	inzo	house
nzinzi	fly	nzinzi	fly
		banzuzi	younger twin

/nl/

nlongi teacher

nlembo finger, toe, thumb

nlemvo grace, pardon

Note 1.7 Certain Subtle Distinctions between Initial /n/'s

(Reference Note)

Certain words, of which /nkento/ 'female' is the only example in this unit, can occur in either the N-BA noun class, which usually signifies something human, or in another class (originally an I-ZI Class but which has completely lost any distinction in Kituba from the Ø-BA Class) where the words in question may refer to animals or to other non-human referents. When /nkento/ has human reference the pronunciation has the 'normal' unaspirated /k/ and the /n/ is often reduced almost to the point of not being heard. When /nkento/ has animal reference, however, the pronunciation is, in the speech of the Congolese collaborator on this course, [ŋk'ento] with the /k/ aspirated. It is probable that such a phonemic distinction is restricted to speakers of Kituba who have a strongly Kikongo linguistic background and, since the forms for which this distinction operates are very few in the corpus of this course, no attempt is made here to indicate it in the orthography employed.

DIALOGUE: GREETINGS AND SALUTATIONS

-A-

Zozefu

Joseph (proper name)

Mbote Zozefu.

Greetings Joseph.

-B-

Madí

Fr: Marie; Mary (proper
name)

Mbote Madi. Nge ke mbote?

Greetings, Mary. How are you?

-A-

e

yes, OK

kasi /kansi

but

maladi

Fr: malade; sick, ill

fioti/fyoti/¹

small, little, a little

E! Kasi mwan_a na munu ke
maladi fioti.

OK. But my child is a bit sick.

-B-

ku-nat-a

to carry; to take; to
bring

yandi

he, she; him, her

dokotolo

Fr: docteur: physician

Nat_a yandi na dokotolo.

Take him/her to the doctor.

-A-

kuna

there, that place

Mu ke na kwenda kuna.

I'm going there [now].

-B-

ku-pes-a

to give

bakala (ba-)

male, man, husband

-o

(suffix - exclamatory)

Pesa bakal_a n^a nge mbote-o!

Give your husband [my] regards.

-A-

pes.ak-a²

give

m.pe /pe

also, too, and

E, melesi mingi. Pesaka pe
nkento n_a nge mbote.

(Yes) thanks very much. And also
greet your wife.

-B-

E, melesi. Kwenda mbote-o!

(Yes) thanks. Goodbye!

1

Items which occur in build-ups between slant lines: /fyoti/ represent a 'pronunciation spelling' of the item rather than a variety to normal Kituba spelling.

2

The symbol . is used in build-ups and notes to separate roots from extensions.

Drill 2.1 VARIATION DRILLS ON PATTERN SENTENCES

a) Multiple Substitution Drill - Note: In substitution drills in which items are presented in lists for substitution (without writing out each sentence in the pattern) elisions and contractions which occur in speech cannot be represented consistently. We give here a 'full' form and the student will learn the contracted form during oral presentation of the drill (See Note 2.4)

Kasi	mwana	(na) munu ke	maladi
	bakala	na nge	mbote
	nkento	na yandi	
	kalaka		
	dokotolo		

unrecorded

b) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Nata	mwana	na	Zozefu.
Pesa	nkento		dokotolo.
	yandi		kalaka.
	kisalu		
	melesi		

Take the child to Joseph.

c) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePatternMu ke na kwenda na dokotolo.I'm going to the
doctor.

magazini

Mu ke na kwenda na magazini.

yandi

Yandi ke na kwenda na magazini.

kwiza

Yandi ke na kwiza na magazini.

kuna

Yandi ke na kwiza kuna.

Madi

Madi ke na kwiza kuna.

kwenda

Madi ke na kwenda kuna.

na magazini

Madi ke na kwenda na magazini.

mu

Mu ke na kwenda na magazini.

dokotolo

Mu ke na kwenda na dokotolo.

d) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Nge	ke	na	kusosa	kalaka?
Bakala			kunata	yandi?
Dokotolo				Madi?
Zozefu				mwana?

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePatternEnglishYandi ke na kubanda kisalu.

He's starting work.

Zozefu

Zozefu ke na kubanda kisalu.

kuzola

Zozefu ke na kuzola kisalu.Joseph is looking
for work.

Zozefu ke na kuzola kisalu.

dokotolo Zozefu ke na kuzola dokotolo.

mu Mu ke na kuzola dokotolo.

zaba Mu zaba dokotolo. I know [a]doctor.

nkento Mu zaba nkento.

dokotolo Dokotolo zaba nkento.

ke na kusosa Dokotolo ke na kusosa nkento.

kisalu Dokotolo ke na kusosa kisalu.

yandi Yandi ke na kusosa kisalu.

kubanda Yandi ke na kubanda kisalu.

f) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Nata	yandi	na dokotolo.
	mwan _a n _a munu	na zandu.
	nkento n _a nge	kuna.
	mukanda	na magazini.
	ntangu	

Take him to the doctor.

g) Minimal Conversation Drill (Respond to the cues with an affirmative reply if the cue is a question and with /Ina ke mbote mingi./ if it is a statement. The instructor will present the cues in the printed order first, then in random order):

Cue

Response

Yandi ke kalak_a y_a magazini.

Ina ke mbote mingi.

Yandi ke kalak_a y_a magazini?

E, yandi ke kalak_a y_a magazini.

Zozefu ke mbote?	E, yandi ke mbote.
Zozefu ke mbote.	Ina ke mbote mingi.
Kalaka ke na kusosa kisalu.	Ina ke mbote mingi.
Kalaka ke na kusosa kisalu?	E, yandi ke na kusosa kisalu.
Mu ke banda kisalu mbazi?	E, nge ke banda kisalu mbazi.
Mu ke banda kisalu mbazi.	Ina ke mbote mingi.
Dokotolo zaba mwan _a n _a munu?	E, yandi zaba yandi.
Dokotolo zaba mwan _a n _a munu.	Ina ke mbote mingi.
Madi zola mwana.	Ina ke mbote mingi.
Madi zola mwana?	E, yandi zola mwana.
Yandi ke kwiza na magazini.	Ina ke mbote mingi.
Yandi ke kwiza na magazini?	E, yandi ke kwiza kuna.
Nkento n _a nge ke na kwenda kuna.	Ina ke mbote mingi.
Nkento n _a nge ke na kwenda kuna?	E, yandi ke na kwenda kuna.

h) Progressive Substitution Transformation Drill. (Substitute according to the cue given, then change the resultant statement to an affirmative yes-no question by varying the intonation (see Note 1.5):

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Statement Pattern</u>	<u>Question Pattern</u>
	Zozefu ke na kusosa <u>kalaka</u> .	Zozefu ke na kusosa <u>kalaka</u> ?
dokotolo	Zozefu ke na <u>kusosa</u> dokotolo.	Zozefu ke na <u>kusosa</u> dokotolo?

	Zozefu ke na <u>kusosa</u> dokotolo.	Zozefu ke na <u>kusosa</u> dokotolo?
kwenda na	<u>Zozefu</u> ke na kwenda na dokotolo.	<u>Zozefu</u> ke na kwenda na dokotolo?
yandi	Yandi ke na kwenda na <u>dokotolo</u> .	Yandi ke na kwenda na <u>dokotolo</u> ?
kisalu	Yandi ke na <u>kwenda</u> na kisalu.	Yandi ke na <u>kwenda</u> na kisalu?
kubikala	<u>Yandi</u> ke na kubikala na kisalu.	<u>Yandi</u> ke na kubikala na kisalu?
Madi	Madi ke na kubikala na <u>kisalu</u> .	Madi ke na kubikala na <u>kisalu</u> ?
mwelo	Madi ke na <u>kubikala</u> na mwelo.	Madi ke na <u>kubikala</u> na mwelo?
kwiza	<u>Madi</u> ke na kwiza na mwelo.	<u>Madi</u> ke na kwiza na mwelo?
bakala	Bakala ke na kwiza na <u>mwelo</u> .	Bakala ke na kwiza na <u>mwelo</u> ?
kalaka	Bakala ke na <u>kwiza na</u> kalaka.	Bakala ke na <u>kwiza na</u> kalaka?
kusosa	<u>Bakala</u> ke na kusosa kalaka.	<u>Bakala</u> ke na kusosa kalaka?
Zozefu	Zozefu ke na kusosa kalaka.	Zozefu ke na kusosa kalaka?

i) Minimal Conversation Drill

Reverse drill (h) above with the student(s) giving the cues in random order and the instructor responding according to what he hears.

Drill 2.2 VOCABULARY SUPPLEMENT

a) Simple Substitution Drill

Mwana _a n ^a munu ke	<u>maladi.</u>
	<u>mayele.</u>
	<u>n.golo.</u>
	<u>zoba.</u>

My child is sick.

smart.

strong.

stupid.

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Inzo _n a munu ke	<u>m.pembe.</u>
	<u>n.dombe.</u>

My house is white/fair/light.

black/dark.

c) Simple Substitution Drill

Mu ke na kwenda	kuna.
	na <u>lupitalu</u> ¹ . (ba-)
	na <u>inzo</u> . (ba-)
	na <u>maza</u> . (ba-)
	na <u>m.patu</u> . (ba-)
	na <u>biló</u> ² . (ba-)

I'm going there.

to the hospital.

home. ('to [the]
house')

to the water/stream.

to the field /
farm.

to the office.

1

French: l'hôpital

2

French: bureau

Drill 2.3 SUBSTITUTION DRILLS INCORPORATING SUPPLEMENTAL VOCABULARY

a) Simple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Pesa	nkento	n ^a nge mbote-o!
	bakala	
	mwana	
	bana	
	bakento	
	inzo	
	babakala	

Give your wife my regards.

husband

child

children

ladies

household

gentlemen

b) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Pesa	mbote	na	nkento	n ^a nge.
Nata	melesi		mwana	n ^a yandi.
				(n ^a) munu.
			bakala	
			bakento	
			bana	

Give my regards to
your wife.

c) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Mu	ke na	kwenda	kuna.
Madi		kwiza	na magazini.
Yandi		kubikala	na lupitalu.
			na dokotolo.
			na inzo _n a nge.
			na mpatu _n a munu.
			na bilo _n a _y andi.

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 2.1 /ke/ + /na/ + /ku-/ + Verb = 'Present Action'

Note these sentences from dialogues:

Mu ke na kusosa ksalu.

'I'm looking for work./ I'm in the process of looking for work.'

Mu ke na kwenda kuna.

'I'm going there./ I'm in the process of going there.'

This verb phrase expresses the concept of immediate present action. It implies that the subject has already commenced the action. Of course, in practical situations, this form may be used to convey the impression that the action is already going on when actually it is still in the future:

Mu ke na kwiza.

I'm coming. (Either, 'I'm now en route.' or, 'Just a second, I'll be right along.')

Note 2.2 The Use of the /ku-/ Prefix on Verbal Forms: The 'Infinitive'.

The verbal form with the prefix /ku-/ is an 'infinitive' or 'verbal noun' form. It occurs regularly:

1. After /na/ or /ya/: /Mu ke na kusosa kisalu./
2. In the negative imperative: /Kusala ve!/ Don't work!
3. In all forms of verbs, the roots of which are /C/ (see Note 1.3) and which, therefore, are monosyllabic when the /-a/ suffix is added: /ku-w-a/, /ku-dy-a/ (spelled kudia), etc.
4. In all forms of verbs the roots of which are vowel initial (VC): /kw-end-a/, /kw-iz-a/ etc.

Elsewhere the use of the infinitive (with /ku-/ prefix) as main verb or in a verb phrase emphasizes the verb and is not very common.

Note 2.3 /ke/ + Verb: Potential or Future Action

Inki ntangu mu ke banda? When am I to start? When do I start?

This verb phrase expresses the general concept of future action. The translation 'will' is often appropriate in the sense of a willingness or intention to perform the action. The time of the action is not specified as to immediate or distant future. In some parts of the Kituba speaking area an auxiliary /ta/ is used instead of /ke/ in this potential verb phrase.

Note 2.4 The Simple Form of the Verb (without auxiliary)

In the sentence:

Inki kisalu nge zaba? What work do you know?

the simple form of the verb (root + /-a/) occurs alone as the predicate. It has a variety of usages but in the usage illustrated here (as verb of an independent clause in ordinary colloquial style) this form occurs much more frequently with certain very common verbs, of which /ku-zab-a/ is one. The meaning is of an indefinite non-past action. One is reminded of the several very common verbs in English which occur in the simple present rather than in the present progressive form: I see rather than I am seeing, I think or I suppose as contrasted to I am thinking, I know rather than I am knowing, etc.

Another use of the simple form of the verb is illustrated in the sentence /Nat_a yandi na dokotolo./ Take him to the doctor! Here this form is the imperative giving an order.

Note 2.5 Vowel Changes at Word Boundaries (Reference Note)

In Note 1.1 it was noted that prefixes undergo changes in shape before vowel-initial roots. The same types of changes occur where two vowels come together at a word boundary. This is common where /na/ and /ya/ occur between two nouns or pronouns, or noun and pronoun. The /y/ of /ya/ and, less frequently, the /n/ of /na/ are not heard in rapid speech with the result that the final vowel

of the preceding word now occurs adjacent to the remnant /a/ of the particle. The resultant shifts are just those outlined in Note 1.1:

o/u + a --- wa

e/i + a --- ya

a + a --- a

Note the example:

bakala + na + nge --- bakalange

The /y/ of /yandi/ 'he, she; him, her' is also commonly lost:

na + yandi --- nandi (spelled n'andi)

bakala + nandi --- bakalandi (spelled bakala n'andi)

In Kituba spelling, loss of the /y/ consonant is regularly indicated by an apostrophe (n'andi) but the /n/ of /na/ is regularly spelled whether pronounced or not.

Note 2.6 The Conjunction /ná/ 'and'

The unstressed /na/ has been introduced as a general preposition translating 'with', 'at', 'in', etc. When /na/ occurs between two substantives (nouns or pronouns) with a greater degree of stress than elsewhere (characterized by a slight pause before it, an increase in loudness or both) it functions as a conjunction with the general meaning of 'and'. Thus:

Nat_a yandi na dokotolo is Take him to the doctor.

while: Nat_a yandi ná dokotolo is Take him and the doctor.

However, frequently where context or grammar makes ambiguity impossible, there is no phonetic difference between preposition and conjunction.

Drill 2.4 Grammar Drills: /ke/ + /na/ + Verb:

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	<u>English</u>
	<u>Mu</u> ke na kusosa mukanda.	I'm looking for a book.
yandi	Yandi ke na <u>kusosa</u> mukanda.	
kunata	Yandi ke na kunata <u>mukanda</u> .	He's carrying a book.
mankondo	<u>Yandi</u> ke na kunata mankondo.	He's carrying bananas.
nge	Nge ke na <u>kunata</u> mankondo?	
kubika	Nge ke na kubika <u>mankondo</u> ?	Are you leaving bananas?
mbele	<u>Nge</u> ke na kubika mbele?	Are you leaving a knife?
yandi	Yandi ke na <u>kubika</u> mbele.	
kuzola	Yandi ke na kuzola <u>mbele</u> .	He is wishing for a knife.
kisalu	<u>Yandi</u> ke na kuzola kisalu.	He is wanting work.
mu	Mu ke na <u>kuzola</u> kisalu.	
kubanda	Mu ke na kubanda <u>kisalu</u> .	I'm starting work.
inzo	<u>Mu</u> ke na kubanda inzo.	I'm starting [on the] house.
Zozefu	Zozefu ke na <u>kubanda</u> inzo.	
kusosa	Zozefu ke na kusosa <u>inzo</u> .	Joseph is looking for a house.
mukanda	<u>Zozefu</u> ke na kusosa mukanda.	
mu	Mu ke na kusosa mukanda.	

Drill 2.5 Grammar Drills: /ke/ + verb:

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Inki <u>nge</u> ke sosa?	What will you look for?
Madi	Inki Madi ke <u>sosa</u> ?	
kubika	Inki <u>Madi</u> ke bika?	What will Mary leave?
yandi	Inki yandi ke <u>bika</u> ?	
kunata	Inki <u>yandi</u> ke nata?	What will he carry?
Zozefu	Inki Zozefu ke <u>nata</u> ?	
kuzaba	Inki <u>Zozefu</u> ke zaba?	What will Joseph know?
Madi	Inki Madi ke <u>zaba</u> ?	
kusosa	Inki <u>Madi</u> ke sosa?	
nge	Inki nge ke sosa?	

b) Progressive Substitution Drill:

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	<u>English</u>
	Inki <u>nge</u> ke pesa munu?	What will you give me?
yandi	Inki yandi ke pesa <u>munu</u> ?	
nge	Inki yandi ke <u>pesa</u> nge?	
kusala	Inki <u>yandi</u> ke sala nge?	What will he do to you?
Zozefu	Inki Zozefu ke sala <u>nge</u> ?	
mwana	Inki Zozefu ke <u>sala</u> mwana?	What [did] Joseph do to the child?
kupesa	Inki <u>Zozefu</u> ke pesa mwana?	

Inki Zozefu ke pesa mwana?

Madi Inki Madi ke pesa mwana?

munu Inki Madi ke pesa munu?

kusala Inki Madi ke sala munu?

nge Inki nge ke sala munu?

kupesa Inki nge ke pesa munu?

c) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Nge ke bika inki?

(= Inki nge ke
bika?) What
will you leave?

mukanda Nge ke bika mukanda?

mu Mu ke bika mukanda.

kunata Mu ke nata mukanda.

mwana Mu ke nata mwana.

Zozefu Zozefu ke nata mwana.

kusosa Zozefu ke sosa mwana.

magazini Zozefu ke sosa magazini.

Madi na yandi Madi na yandi ke sosa magazini. Mary and he....

kuzola Madi na yandi ke zola magazini.

dinkondo Madi na yandi ke zola dinkondo.

bakala Bakala ke zola dinkondo.

kupesa Bakala ke pesa dinkondo.

lukaya Bakala ke pesa lukaya.

	<u>Bakala</u> ke pesa lukaya.	
nge	Nge ke <u>pesa</u> lukaya?	
kubika	Nge ke bika <u>lukaya</u> ?	
mwana	<u>Nge</u> ke bika mwana?	
dokotolo	Dokotolo ke <u>bika</u> mwana.	
kusosa	Dokotolo ke sosa <u>mwana</u> .	
kisalu	<u>Dokotolo</u> ke sosa kisalu.	
Madi	Madi ke <u>sosa</u> kisalu.	
kubanda	Madi ke banda <u>kisalu</u> .	
mpatu	<u>Madi</u> ke banda mpatu.	Mary will start [work on] the fields.
yandi	Yandi ke <u>banda</u> mpatu.	
kubikala na	Yandi ke bikala na <u>mpatu</u> .	He will remain in the fields.
inzo	<u>Yandi</u> ke bikala na inzo.	
nkento	Nkento ke <u>bikala</u> na inzo.	
kwenda	Nkento ke kwenda na <u>inzo</u> .	
dokotolo	<u>Nkento</u> ke kwenda na dokotolo.	
Zozefu	Zozefu ke <u>kwenda</u> na dokotolo.	
kwiza	Zozefu ke kwiza <u>na dokotolo</u> .	
kuna	<u>Zozefu</u> ke kwiza kuna.	
mwana	Mwana ke <u>kwiza</u> kuna.	
kuzola	Mwana ke zola <u>kuna</u> .	The child will like [it] there.

Mwana ke zola kuna.

mukanda Mwana ke zola mukanda.

nge Nge ke zola mukanda?

kubika Nge ke bika mukanda?

inki Nge ke bika inki?

d) Simple Substitution Drill

Inki ntangu	nge ke kwenda na magazini?	When will you go to the store?
	Zozefu ke banda k isalu?	When will Joseph start work?
	mu ke zaba Madi?	When will I get to know Mary?
	yandi ke sosa mukanda?	When will he look for [the] book?
	dokotolo ke kwiza kuna?	When's the doctor coming there?
	Madi ke bikala na mpatu?	When will Mary stay in the fields?
	bakala ke sosa maza?	When will the man look for water?
	mu ke zaba bilo ya kalaka?	When am I to get to know the office of the clerk.
	yandi ke nata dinkondo?	When will he bring the banana?
	Zozefu ke zaba nzila?	When will Joseph learn (know) the way?

DIALOGUE INTRODUCING ONESELF

-A-

tata

father, Mr., sir, paternal
relative

Mbote tata!

Greetings sir!

-B-

n.kumbu (ba-)

name, noun

nani?

who? whom?

Mbote! Nkumbu na nge ke

Greetings! What's your name?

nani? /nkumbwange/

-A-

Za

Fr: Jean; John

Nkumbu na mu ke Za.

My name is John.

/nkumbwamu/

-B-

Zile

Fr: Jules; Julius

Nkumbu na mu ke Zile.

My name is Jules.

-A-

insi (ba-)

country, ground, under,
down, below

Inki ke insi na nge?

What is your homeland?

-B-

Kongó

Congo

Insi na mu ke Kongo. /insyamu/ My country is the Congo.

ya munu

mine

Angeletele

Fr: Angleterre; England

Ya munu ke Angeletele.

Mine is England.

-B-

Inki ke kisalu _na nge?

What is your work?

/kisalwange/

-A-

kalasi (ba-)

Fr: classe; school, class

mwan_a y_a kalasi
/mwanakalasi/

student

Mu ke mwan_a y_a kalasi.

I'm a student.

-B-

Mu ke pe mwan_a y_a kalasi.

I too am a student.

Drill 3.1 VOCABULARY SUPPLEMENT

a) Simple Substitution Drill

Nkumbu _n a mu ke	Za
	<u>Polo</u>
	<u>Andelé</u>
	<u>Kalala</u>
	<u>Maligeliti</u>
	<u>Katelína</u>
	<u>Sofí</u>

Fr: Paul (first name-male)

Fr: André (first name-male)

family name

Fr: Marguerite (first name-female)

Fr: Catherine (first name-female)

Fr: Sophie (first name-female)

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Insi	n	a	mu	ke	<u>Kongó.</u>	
					<u>Gabón.</u>	
					<u>Kongó ya Falansé.</u>	(Congo - Brazzaville)
					<u>Uganda.</u>	
					<u>France¹ /frans/</u>	
					<u>Belizike.</u>	(Belgium)
					<u>Amelike / Amerike.</u>	

c) Simple Substitution Drill

Kongo	ke	na	<u>Afelike.</u>	(Africa)
Gabon				
Kongo ya Falanse				
Uganda				

d) Simple Substitution Drill

France	ke	na	<u>Mputu.</u>	(Europe)
Belizike				

1

The /r/ sound as well as spelling of some foreign words is retained in Kituba despite the fact that /r/ does not occur (as distinct from /l/) in native words.

Drill 3.2 VARIATION DRILL ON PATTERN SENTENCES

a) Simple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Nani ke	Za?
	Zile?
	dokotolo?
	nkento n'andi? ¹
	bakala "
	mwana "

Who is John?

b) Simple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Nani ke nkumbu	na nge?
	n'andi?
	ya bakala n'andi?
	ya dokotolo?

What's your name?

his

What's the name of her husband?

What's the name of the doctor?

¹ In normal Kituba spelling the omission of a consonant is symbolized by an apostrophe. The elision of two vowels is not so symbolized. This phrase is thus: /nkento na yandi/, reduced to /nkento na yandi/. Henceforth in these units this spelling convention will be used.

c) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Nkumbu	n ^a nge	ke nani?
Bakala	n'andi	
Nkento	n ^a munu	
Mwana		
Dokotolo		

d) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Nani ke na kwenda na Angeletele?

Who's going to
England?Madi Madi ke na kwenda na Angeletele.Kongo Madi ke na kwenda na Kongo.yandi Yandi ke na kwenda na Kongo.kuna Yandi ke na kwenda kuna.Za Za ke na kwenda kuna.na magazini Za ke na kwenda na magazini.nani Nani ke na kwenda na magazini?

Angeletele Nani ke na kwenda na Angeletele?

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePatternNani ke na kwenda na kalasi?Who is going to
school?Zile Zile ke na kwenda na kalasi.kwiza Zile ke na kwiza na kalasi.

Zile ke na kwiza na kalasi.

Kongo Zile ke na kwiza na Kongo.

dokotolo Dokotolo ke na kwiza na Kongo.

kubikala Dokotolo ke na kubikala na Kongo. The doctor is staying
in the Congo.

bilo Dokotolo ke na kubikala na bilo.

Zozefu Zozefu ke na kubikala na bilo.

kwiza Zozefu ke na kwiza na bilo.

Madi Zozefu ke na kwiza na Madi. Joseph is coming to
Mary's. (or 'with
Mary')

nani Nani ke na kwiza na Madi?

kwenda Nani ke na kwenda na Madi?

kalasi Nani ke na kwenda na kalasi?

f) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Mu	ke na	kusosa	dinkondo.
Nge		kuzola	kisalu.
Nani			kalaka.
Dokotolo			magazini.
Madi			ntangu.
			mbele.
			Za.

I'm looking for a banana.

g) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePatternNge ke na kubanda kisalu?Are you starting the
job?dokotolo Dokotolo ke na kubanda kisalu.kusosa Dokotolo ke na kusosa kisalu.Zile Dokotolo ke na kusosa Zile.mwana Mwana ke na kusosa Zile.kunata Mwana ke na kunata Zile.The child is carrying
Jules.mukanda Mwana ke na kunata mukanda.mu Mu ke na kunata mukanda.kupesa Mu ke na kupesa mukanda.mankondo Mu ke na kupesa mankondo.

I'm giving bananas.

Zozefu Zozefu ke na kupesa mankondo.kusosa Zozefu ke na kusosa mankondo.kisalu Zozefu ke na kusosa kisalu.nge Nge ke na kusosa kisalu?

kubanda Nge ke na kubanda kisalu?

h) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Mu	ke	kwenda	na	magazini.
Andele		kwiza		kalasi.
Sofi		bikala		mpatu.
Nge				kisalu.
Katelina				nzila.

I'll go to the store.

i) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Inki ntangu	mama	ke	sosa	kisalu?
	Polo		zaba	kalasi?
	Maligeliti			magazini?
	Kalala			nzila?
	Sofi			zandu?
				lupitalu?
				inzo?

When will mother
look for work?j) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Nata	mbote	na	Madi.
Pesa	dinkondo		munu.
	lukaya		yandi.
	Kalala		tata.
	mukanda		Maligeliti.
	melesi		
	ntangu		

Give [my] best to Mary.

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 3.1 /na/ and /ya/ as Relative Particles

- | | |
|------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Mwan _a n ¹ _a munu ke maladi. | My child is sick. |
| 2. Pesa nkento n _a nge mbote-o! | Give [my] best to your wife! |
| 3. Nkumbu n _a nge ke nani? | What's your name? |
| 4. Nkumbu n _a mu ke Za. | My name is John. |
| 5. Ya munu ke Angeletele. | Mine is England. |
| 6. Mu ke mwan _a ya kalasi. | I'm a student. |

In these sentences the particles /na/ (regularly written separate from the following word unless there is a contraction) and /ya/ (sometimes written together with the following word) occur as relative particles to show a relationship between the word preceding the particle and the one following. In general the rules for the choice of one or the other of these particles are as follows:

1. When the second of the two words being related is a pronoun and the relationship indicated is non-emphatic possession, an unstressed /na/ occurs:

Mwana na nge	Your child	/mwanange/
Bana na betu	Our children	/banabetu/

1

na is commonly omitted in spelling after mwana on account of the elision /mwan_a n_a/.

2. When the second of the words being related is a noun rather than a pronoun, /ya/ occurs (also unstressed):

Mwana ya dokotolo The doctor's child

3. When the second of the words being related is a pronoun but the possessive idea is emphasized (my child, in contrast to someone else's), /ya/ occurs unstressed:

Mwana ya munu My child

4. A stressed /ná/ between two words is a conjunction and not a relative particle (see Note 2.5) and is normally translated 'and':

Mwana ná munu The child and I

Yandi ná Madi He and Mary

5. When the first of the items being related is not expressed (being clear from the context) /ya/ occurs with either pronoun or noun and the resultant phrase functions much as does a possessive pronoun in English:

Ya munu ke Angeletele. Mine is England.

6. In rapid speech both the /n/ of /na/ and the /y/ of /ya/ may be omitted with the result that only /a/ remains and the

distinction between /na/ and /ya/ is entirely lost.¹

Where in English we have a variety of modification constructions: noun-noun (banana market) adjective-noun (good market), possessive adjective-noun (my market), in Kituba all the concepts implicit in these English constructions are expressed by the use of /na/ and /ya/ in accordance with the rules above:

Inzo ya mankondo	Banana house.
Inzo ya mbote	Good house.
Inzo na munu	My house. (Inzo ya munu My house.)

There are a very few words in Kituba which can be classed as purely adjectives and even these occur with the relative particle /ya/ in this relational or 'adjectival' construction. The difference between noun and adjective in English will be reflected in translations of constructions which are identical in Kituba:

Nkento ya Polo	Paul's wife (woman of Paul)
Nkento ya maladi	[a] sick woman (woman of sickness)

1

Comparison with other Bantu languages makes clear that, historically, /a/ is a possessive particle root and the /n/ and /y/ are prefixes correlating with the pronoun or the class of the noun preceding. Basically /n/ represents a prefix correlating with pronouns and /y/ one correlating with certain classes of nouns. Other noun class correlating prefixes have fallen together with /y/.

With a few words, notably /fioti/ and numbers, there exist structures with and without /ya/ with different meanings:

bakento ya fioti little ladies

bakento fioti few ladies

Note that /fioti/ (and /mingi/) also occur following adjectival constructions as degree words:

nkento ya maladi fioti [a] slightly sick woman

nkento ya maladi mingi [a] very sick woman

Drill 3.3 Grammar Drills on /ya/ and /na/ in Possessive and Modification (Adjective) Construction

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

	Nani ke mwan _a n ^a nge?	Who is your child?
Polo	Polo <u>ke</u> mwan _a n ^a nge.	
kuzola	Polo zola <u>mwan</u> _a n ^a nge.	Paul likes your child.
nkumbu	Polo zola nkumbu n ^a <u>nge</u> .	
yandi	<u>Polo</u> zola nkumbu n'andi.	
mu	Mu <u>zola</u> nkumbu n'andi.	
ke na kusosa	Mu ke na kusosa <u>nkumbu</u> n'andi.	I'm searching for his name.
dinkondo	Mu ke na kusosa dinkondo n' <u>andi</u> .	
munu	<u>Mu</u> ke na kusosa dinkondo n ^a munu.	
tata	Tata ke na <u>kusosa</u> dinkondo n ^a munu.	

Tata ke na kusosa dinkondo _n a munu.

ke nata Tata ke nata dinkondo _n a munu. Dad will take
(carry) my ba-
nana.

mwana Tata ke nata mwan_a _n a munu. Dad will carry
my child.

yandi Tata ke nata mwana n'andi.

Zozefu Zozefu ke nata mwana n'andi.

zola Zozefu ke zola mwana n'andi.

bana Zozefu ke zola bana n'andi.

nge Zozefu ke zola ban_a _n a nge.

banani Banani ke zola ban_a _n a nge?

ke Banani ke ban_a _n a nge?

mwana Nani ke mwan_a _n a nge?

b) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Insi na nge ke	Amelike	kasi	ya munu	ke	Kongo
	Uganda		ya yandi		France
	Belezike				Gabon
	kuna				(kuna)

Your country
is America
but mine
is the
Congo.

c) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Ya nge	ke na	kusosa	munu.
Ya yandi		kuzola	mbele.
		kunata	tata.
			mankondo.
			Za.

Yours is looking for me.
(i.e. Your child, your
husband, etc.)

d)

Inki	ya munu	ke na	kupesa?
	ya yandi	ke	kunata?
	ya nge		kubanda?
			kuzola?

What is mine giving?

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

	<u>Nata</u> mukanda ya Sofi.
kupesa	Pesa <u>mukanda</u> ya Sofi.
mbele	Pesa mbele ya <u>Sofi</u> .
tata	<u>Pesa</u> mbele ya tata.
kusosa	Sosa <u>mbele</u> ya tata.
mwana	Sosa mwana ya <u>tata</u> .
dokotolo	<u>Sosa</u> mwana ya dokotolo.
kuzola	Zola <u>mwana</u> ya dokotolo.
kalaka	Zola kalaka ya <u>dokotolo</u> .

Bring Sophie's book!

Zola kalaka ya dokotolo.

Sofi Zola kalaka ya Sofi.

kunata Nata kalaka ya Sofi.

mukanda Nata mukanda ya Sofi.

f) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Mbazi	mu	ke	sosa	mwana	ya ngolo.
	yandi		nata		ya mpembe.
	Polo		pesa		ya mbote.
	banani		bika		ya mayele.
			zola		ya zoba.
					ya ndombe.

Tomorrow I'll
look for a
strong child.

g) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Yandi ke na kusosa lukaya ya ngolo.

He's looking for
a strong leaf.

Sofi Sofi ke na kusosa lukaya ya ngolo.

kunata Sofi ke na kunata lukaya ya ngolo.

mukanda Sofi ke na kunata mukanda ya ngolo.

Sofi is bringing
a difficult
book.

mbote Sofi ke na kunata mukanda ya mbote.

tata Tata ke na kunata mukanda ya mbote.

kuzola Tata ke na kuzola mukanda ya mbote.

Tata ke na kuzola mukanda ya mbote.

mwana Tata ke na kuzola mwana ya mbote.

Father likes a good child.

mayele Tata ke na kuzola mwana ya mayele.

mu Mu ke na kuzola mwana ya mayele.

kupesa Mu ke na kupesa mwana ya mayele.

I'm turning over a smart child.

kisalu Mu ke na kupesa kisalu ya mayele.

I'm giving [someone] an intellectual job.

ngolo Mu ke na kupesa kisalu ya ngolo.

yandi Yandi ke na kupesa kisalu ya ngolo.

kusosa Yandi ke na kusosa kisalu ya ngolo.

lukaya Yandi ke na kusosa lukaya ya ngolo.

h) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Bana	ya fioti	ke na	kwiza.
Babakala			kwenda.
Bakento			kubikala.
BaZozefu			kunata mankondo.
			kupesa mbote na nge.

Little children are coming.

i) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePatternMadi ke na kusosa mankondo ya fioti.Mary is looking
for little
bananas.Polo Polo ke na kusosa mankondo ya fioti.kunata Polo ke na kunata mankondo ya fioti.makaya Polo ke na kunata makaya ya fioti.nge Nge ke na kunata makaya ya fioti?kubika Nge ke na kubika makaya ya fioti?Are you leaving
small leaves?mukanda Nge ke na kubika mukanda ya fioti?Madi Madi ke na kubika mukanda ya fioti.kusosa Madi ke na kusosa mukanda ya fioti.

mankondo Madi ke na kusosa mankondo ya fioti.

j) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Pesa	makaya	fioti.
Bika	bana	
Nata	mikanda	
Sosa	mankondo	

Give a few leaves.

k) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

	<u>Za</u> ke sosa mikanda fioti.	John will look for a few books.
nge	Nge ke <u>sosa</u> mikanda fioti?	Are you to look for...?
kunata	Nge ke nata <u>mikanda</u> fioti?	
mankondo	<u>Nge</u> ke nata mankondo fioti?	
banani	Banani ke <u>nata</u> mankondo fioti.	Who (all) is to bring a few bananas?
kupesa	Banani ke pesa <u>mankondo</u> fioti?	
bana	<u>Banani</u> ke pesa bana fioti?	
tata	Tata ke <u>pesa</u> bana fioti.	
kuzola	Tata ke zola <u>bana</u> fioti.	
mielo	<u>Tata</u> ke zola mielo fioti.	
Za	Za ke <u>zola</u> mielo fioti.	
kusosa	Za ke sosa <u>mielo</u> fioti.	
mikanda	Za ke sosa mikanda fioti.	

l) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Nkento	ya	zoba	ke	bikala	na	Kongo.
Mwana		ngolo		kwiza		Mputu.
Bakala		mbote		kwenda		France.
						Uganda.
						Gabon.

The stupid woman will stay in the Congo.

m) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Nani	ke	nata	bana	ya	ngolo	mingi.
Polo		bika	babakala		maladi	fioti.
Tata		pesa	bakento		zoba	
Sofi					mayele	
Kalala						
Mu						
Nge						
Yandi						

n) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Nani	ke	ngolo	fioti.
Za		maladi	mingi.
Yandi		mayele	
Mu		zoba	
Nge			

Who is a bit strong?

o) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Sosa	bakento	ya	maladi	fioti.
Pesa	bana		ngolo	mingi.
Nata	bakalaka		mayele	
Bika			zoba	

Look for a somewhat sick woman.

p) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Mbazi mama ke sosa kisalu ya ngolo fioti.

Mother is (going) to look for a fairly hard job tomorrow.

Za Mbazi Za ke sosa kisalu ya ngolo fioti.

kubanda Mbazi Za ke banda kisalu ya ngolo fioti.

mwelo Mbazi Za ke banda mwelo ya ngolo fioti.

John is (going) to start on a fairly strong door tomorrow.

mpembe Mbazi Za ke banda mwelo ya mpembe fioti.

mingi Mbazi Za ke banda mwelo ya mpembe mingi.

nge Mbazi nge ke banda mwelo ya mpembe mingi?

Are you to start tomorrow on a very light (colored) door?

kunata Mbazi nge ke nata mwelo ya mpembe mingi?

mukanda Mbazi nge ke nata mukanda ya mpembe mingi?

mayele Mbazi nge ke nata mukanda ya mayele mingi?

q) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Mu ke nata mankondo ya mbote fioti.

I'll bring
quite good
bananas.

nge Nge ke nata mankondo ya mbote fioti?

Are you to...?

kusosa Nge ke sosa mankondo ya mbote fioti?

Nge ke sosa mankondo ya mbote fioti?

bana Nge ke sosa bana ya mbote fioti?

Are you to look
for rather
good chil-
dren?

ngolo Nge ke sosa bana ya ngolo fioti?

Polo Polo ke sosa bana ya ngolo fioti.

kubika Polo ko bika bana ya ngolo fioti.

Paul is to
leave [some]
rather strong
children.

babakala Polo ke bika babakala ya ngolo fioti.

mayele Polo ke bika babakala ya mayele fioti.

mu Mu ke bika babakala ya mayele fioti.

kunata Mu ke nata babakala ya mayele fioti.

mankondo Mu ke nata mankondo ya mayele fioti.

mpembe Mu ke nata mankondo ya mbote fioti.

DIALOGUE: FAMILY

-A-

m.buta (ba-)	elder, older brother
mbuta muntu (ba-)	sir, Mr.
Mbote mbuta muntu!	Good morning, sir!

-B-

di-ambu (m-) /dyambu/	matter, affair
Mbote mwana! Diambu ikele?	Good morning, child! Is something the matter? (Is there something?)

-A-

me / mene	(auxiliary for 'perfect')
ku-zimb.al-a	to be lost, to forget, to fail to recognize one another
E, mu me zimbala.	I'm lost. (I've become lost.)

-B-

Inki ke nkumbu na tat _a na nge?	What's your father's name?
--------------------------------------------	----------------------------

-A-

Meto	
Nkumbu n _a y _a ndi Meto.	His name[is]Meto.

-B-

m.pangi (ba-)	sibling (brother or sister)
ikwa ?	how many?

ke na / kele na (plus noun)

to have (be with)

Nge ke na bampangi ikwa?

How many brothers [and sisters]
have you?

-A-

zole

two

Mu ke na bampangi zole ya
babakala.I have two brothers. (I have
two male siblings.)

-B-

wapi (?)

where?; no, not at all!

bau

they, them

Wapi bau?

Where are they?

-A-

Bau me kwenda na kalasi.

They've gone to school.

-B-

ku-vwand-a

to stay, to sit, to live,
to be

benu

you (plural)

Banani ke vwandaka na benu?

Who lives with you?

-A-

yankaka

other

bantu yankaka
/bantwankaka/ veother person
no (negative particle)Bantu y_ankak_a ikele ve.Nobody else does. (There are
no other persons.)

-B-

mama

mother, lady, aunt, Mrs.,
Miss

Nge ke na mama?

Have you a mother?

betu

we, us

ku-fw-a

to die

n.tama

far, a long time ago,
alreadyMama_a na betu kufwaka ntama.

Our mother died a long time ago.

-A-

ku-land-a

to follow

famili (ba-)

Fr: famille; family

Landa munu. Mu zaba famili

na nge. /familyange/

Drill 4.1 VOCABULARY SUPPLEMENT

a) Simple Substitution Drill

Mu	me	zimbala.
		<u>kudia</u> .
		<u>kunwa</u> .
		<u>sonika</u> mukanda.
		<u>tanga</u> mukanda.

I have gotten lost.

eaten.

drunk.

written [a] book.

read [a] book.

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Mu me sosa	<u>dimpa.</u>
	<u>sizó.</u>
	<u>n.singa.</u>
	<u>kitambala.</u>

I've looked for bread. [di-m.pa (ma-)]
(Fr: du pain)

scissors. (ba-)(Fr:
ciseaux)

rope/cord. (ba-)

[a] kerchief/head
scarf. [ki-tambala
(bi-)]

c) Simple Substitution Drill

Yandi ke na	bampangi	zole.
		<u>tatu.</u>
		<u>iya.</u>
		<u>tanu.</u>
		<u>sambanu.</u>
		<u>n.sambodia.</u>
		<u>nana.</u>
		<u>ivwa.</u>
		<u>kumi.</u>
Yandi ke na	mpangi	<u>mosi.</u>

He has two siblings.

three

four

five

six

seven (also nsambwadi)

eight

nine

ten (ma-)

one sibling.

d) Simple Substitution Drill

Mpangi na munu ke	bakala.
	<u>nene.</u>
	<u>n.kufi.</u>
	<u>inda.</u>
	<u>leke.</u>

My sibling is male.

large/big.

short.

long/tall.

young.

e) Simple Substitution Drill

Bantu	yankaka ikele ve.
<u>N.susu</u>	
<u>Meza</u>	
<u>Muyibi</u>	

There is nobody else.

no other chicken. (ba-)

table. (ba-)

thief. [mu-yib-i
ba-)]

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 4.1 /me/ + verb: Immediate Past

Note the sentence from the dialogue:

Mu me zimbala. I have become lost.

The auxiliary /me/, followed by the verb forms a verb phrase the meaning of which is immediate past. The sentence above could be translated 'I've just gotten lost.' As with the English present perfect verb phrase with have, the action has taken place before the present and is of concern or has a result in the present. The usage differs from the English present perfect, however, in that the English phrase may be used for actions in the distant past

which have bearing on the present situation as 'I've read that book (so I don't need to borrow it)' where the reading may have taken place a long time ago. In Kituba this form is used only when the action or state took place in the recent past. Of course, the concept of 'recent' is a relative one and the word /ntama/ 'a long time ago' or 'already' may be used with this construction:

Mu me zimbala ntama. I've been lost a long time.

Mu me kudia ntama. I've already eaten.

However, it would be distinctly unusual to hear /ntama mingi/ 'for a very long time' after this construction. The drills below contain examples of this construction.

Drill 4.2 Grammar Drills /me/ + verb:

a) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Mu	me	zimbala	ntama.
Za		kufwa	
Meto		bikala	
Mbuta muntu		kwenda	
Bau			
Benu			

b) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePatternNani me sosa nsusu?Who has looked for [the]
chicken?bau Bau me sosa nsusu.kudia Bau me kudia nsusu.dimpa Bau me kudia dimpa.Zile Zile me kudia dimpa.kunata Zile me nata dimpa.sizo Zile me nata sizo.benu Benu me nata sizo?kubika Benu me bika sizo?mukanda Benu me bika mukanda?nani Nani me bika mukanda?kusosa Nani me sosa mukanda?

nsusu Nani me sosa nsusu?

c) Simple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Nani me	tuba?
	zimbala?
	kufwa?
	banda?
	kudia?
	kunwa?
	bikala?

d) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Madi	me	kudia	dinkondo	mosi.
Mu		pesa	lukaya	
Za		nata	dimpa	
Benu		bika	nsusu	
Yandi		sosa		
Zile		zola		

Mary has eaten one banana.

e) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Ya nge	me	sosa	munu.
Ya yandi		zola	nsusu.
Ya benu		nata	tata.
			dinkondo.
			Za.

Yours has looked for me.

f) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Inki	ya	munu	me	(ku)zaba?
		yandi	ke na	(ku)nata?
		nge		(ku)banda?
				(ku)zola?
				(ku)pesa?

What has mine known?

Note 4.2 The Concept of Possession: /ke/ + /na/ + Noun

Mu ke na bampangi zole.

I have two siblings.

Nge ke na mama?

Have you a mother?

In Note 2.1 we noted that /ke/ + /na/ + Verb was a verb phrase

for present state or action. In the sentences above we note that when /ke + na/ is followed by a noun it carries the sense of having, literally 'being with'. Kituba has no verb equivalent to English have, the concept of possession being expressed by this construction.

Drill 4.3 Grammar Drill /ke/ + /na/ + Noun

a) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Yandi	ke na	babakala	ikwa?
Tata		(ba)nsusu	
Zile		mikanda	
Andele		mankondo	
Mu		mampa	
Benu		badokotolo	
Betu		mielo	

How many men does he have?

b) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Betu	ke na	nsusu	yankaka.
Yandi		meza	
Bau		mwana	
Mu		mpangi	
Za		nkumbu	
		bilu	
		mbele	

We have another chicken.

c) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Nani (?)	ke na	dinkondo	ya	munu.
Sofi		mikanda		Polo.
Yandi		bana		nge.
Bau		mbele		

Who has my banana?

d) Random Substitution Drill

CuePatternMama ke na mankondo mingi.Mother has lots of
bananas.mikanda Mama ke na mikanda mingi.nge Nge ke na mikanda mingi?fioti Nge ke na mikanda fioti?Za Za ke na mikanda fioti.ya mpembe Za ke na mikanda ya mpembe.nge Za ke na mikanda ya nge.bana Za ke na bana ya nge.nani Nani ke na bana ya nge?Who is with your chil-
ren?dokotolo Nani ke na dokotolo ya nge?mu Mu ke na dokotolo ya nge.mbele Mu ke na mbele ya nge.ngolo Mu ke na mbele ya ngolo.Polo Polo ke na mbele ya ngolo.mingi Polo ke na bambele mingi.

Polo ke na bambele mingi.

mama Mama ke na bambele mingi.

mankondo Mama ke na mankondo mingi.

e) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Mu	ke na	bampangi	tatu.
Tata		bakento	iya.
Za		bana	sambanu.
Yandi		(ba)nsusu	nana.
Betu		mampa	kumi.
Zile		mielo	zole.
Maligeliti		bantangu	mingi.
Polo		bakalasi	tanu.
Bau		bisalu	fioti.
		mikanda	

Note 4.3 The negative - /ve/

Note this sentence from the dialogue:

Bantu yankaka ikele ve. There aren't any other persons.

The negative of a predication is signalled in Kituba by the particle /ve/ following the entire predication. This particle may also precede almost any word within a predication in which case it serves to negate only the word or phrase it follows. Compare:

Muntu ke kuna ve. Nobody is there (Person is not there).

Muntu ve ke kuna. Nobody is there (No person is there).

The particle may also occur as a negative short answer 'No'..:

Ve, muntu ke kuna ve. No, nobody is there.

In negative imperatives verbs occur with the /ku-/ prefix:

Kusumba mampa ina ve! Don't buy that bread!

Drill 4.4 Grammar Drills - The Negative

Repeat Drills 4.3 (b), (d) and (e) making all the sentences negative.

Note 4.4 The \emptyset - BA Noun Class:

The noun class which has no prefix for the singular and a BA-prefix in the plural is the simplest of Kituba noun classes and contains a very large number of nouns, including all borrowed French nouns. Some nouns of this class are:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Translation</u>	<u>Plural</u>
kalaka	clerk	bakalaka
magazini	store	bamagazini
nzila	way, means	banzila
mbele	knife	bambele
bakala	male	babakala
lupitalu	hospital	balupitalu
inzo	house	bainzo
mpatu	field, farm	bampatu
bilu	office	babilo
nkumbu	name	bankumbu

nani	who?	banani
kalasi	school	bakalasi
mbuta	elder	bambuta
mpangi	sibling	bampangi
yankaka	another	bayankaka
sizo	scissors	basizo
nsinga	rope	bansinga
ngolo	strength	bangolo
meza	table	bameza

Drill 4.5 Grammar Drills - The Ø - BA Noun Class

a) Simple Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute the Cue in its plural form):

Cue

Pattern

Betu ke na kwenda na bamagazini. We are going to
[the] stores.

lupitalu Betu ke na kwenda na balupitalu.

mpatu Betu ke na kwenda na bampatu.

bilo Betu ke na kwenda na babilo.

kalasi Betu ke na kwenda na bakalasi.

inzo Betu ke na kwenda na bainzo.

b) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute all nouns in plural form):

CuePattern

	Babakala na benu ke na kwiza <u>kuna</u> .
na bilo	Babakala na benu ke na <u>kwiza</u> na babilo.
kwenda	Babakala ne <u>benu</u> ke na kwenda na babilo.
betu	<u>Babakala</u> na betu ke na kwenda na babilo.
kalaka	Bakalaka na betu ke na kwenda na <u>babilo</u> .
mpatu	Bakalaka na betu ke na <u>kwenda</u> na bampatu.
kubikala	Bakalaka na <u>betu</u> ke na kubikala na bampatu.
bau	<u>Bakalaka</u> na bau ke na kubikala na bampatu.
mbuta	Bambuta na bau ke na kubikala na <u>bampatu</u> .
inzo	Bambuta na bau ke na <u>kubikala</u> na bainzo.
kusala	<u>Bambuta</u> na <u>bau</u> ke na kusala na bainzo.
nani	Banani ke na kusala na <u>bainzo</u> ?
kalasi	Banani ke na <u>kusala</u> na bakalasi?
kwenda	<u>Banani</u> ke na kwenda na bakalasi?
kalaka	Bakalaka ke na kwenda <u>na bakalasi</u> .
kuna	Bakalaka ke na <u>kwenda</u> kuna.
kwiza	<u>Bakalaka</u> ke na kwiza kuna.
bakala na benu	Babakala na benu ke na kwiza kuna.

Note 4.5 The Verb /kuvwanda/ 'to be'

In Unit 1 the verbal form /ke/ ~ /kele/ 'am, is, are' occurred and was introduced as coming from a verb /ku-kal-a/. This verb is widely used in tribal KiKongo but has a very restricted use in Kituba - the forms /ke/ and /kele/ being the only forms from this verb commonly encountered. The verb /ku-vwand-a/ replaces forms of /ku-kal-a/ in all verb phrases requiring a verb with the sense of 'to be'. Thus 'I will be...' translates as /Mu ke vwanda.../ in Kituba. Similarly in expressions of possession (see Note 4.2) /kuvwanda/ is used in verb phrases:

Mu ke na mukanda. I have a book.

Mu ke vwanda na mukanda. I will have a book.

In some areas this verb is heard as /ku-vand-a/.

Note 4.6 Various Uses of /mosi/ (Reference Note)

The 'basic' sense of /mosi/ is 'one'. This basic meaning is, however, extended to mean a variety of related concepts:

a) 'a', 'a certain':

Muntu mosi ke kwenda. A man is coming.

Mu ke landa muntu mosi. I'm going to follow a certain man.

b) 'self' - singular or plural; 'alone':

Munu mosi ke kwenda. I'm going to go myself.

Bau mosi ke na kudia. They themselves are eating.

c) 'same', 'one and the same':

Benu ke kwenda na ntangu mosi.

We're going to go at the
same time.

DIALOGUE: BUYING AND SELLING

-A-

n.talu (ba-)

value, price, figure,
number

di-lala (ma-)

citrus fruit, orange

yai / yayi

this, these

Ntalu ikwa na malala yai?

What is the price of these oranges?

/ntalwikwa/

-B-

pata

five franc piece

Pata mosi na malala tatu.

Five francs for three oranges.

-A-

Malala na nge ke ntalu mingi.

Your oranges are very expensive!

('are much price')

-B-

kiadi /kyadi/

Sorry!

ku-lend-a

to be able

ku-kakul-a

to reduce, to subtract

Kiadi. Mu lenda kakula ve.

Sorry, I can't reduce [it].

-A-

m.bisi (ba-)

meat, animal, fish

maza (ba-)

water, stream

mbisi ya maza /mbisyamaza/

fish

Nge lenda kakula na mbisi ya maza? Can you come down on fish?

-B-

kana

if

ku-sumb-a

to buy

Mu lenda kakula kana nge sumba
mingi.

I can come down if you buy a
lot.

-A-

Mbis_i ikwa na pata kumi?

How many fish for fifty francs?

-B-

sambu / samu

because, on account

sambu na / samu na

because of, on account of

Samu na nge mbis_i iya.

For you ('on account of you')
four fish.

-A-

ki-ma (bi-)

thing

ku-lut-a

to surpass, to be more
than, to exceed

Bim_a na nge me'luta ntalu
mingi, tata.

Your goods are too expensive
('have exceeded much price'),
sir.

-B-

mambu ve

no matter, all right

Mambu ve, sumba sambanu na
patu kumi.

All right, buy six for fifty
francs.

-A-

ku-kang-a

to tie up, bind, close,
catch

ku-kang.il-a

to tie up for (someone)

yau

it, they, them (impersonal
third person pronoun)

Melesi, kangila munu yau.

Thanks, wrap them up for me.

Drill 5.1 SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

a) Simple Substitution Drill

Ntalu ikwa na	malala	yai?	What's the price of these oranges?
	<u>pidipidi</u> ¹		this pepper?
	<u>matiti</u>		these herbs? ² [di-titi (ma-)]
	<u>bandunda</u>		these vegetables [n.dunda (ba-)]
	<u>bumbulutele</u> ¹		these potatoes Fr: pommes de terre [bumbulutele (ba-)]
	<u>bambala</u>		these sweet potatoes [m.bala (ba-)]
	<u>bapapayi</u>		these papaya [papayi (ba-)]
	<u>bamanga</u>		these mangoes [manga (ba-)]
	<u>nkuni</u> ¹		this firewood [n.kuni (ba-)]

1

Note: Some items such as firewood or pepper seldom bought in a single piece occur in such a pattern as this without the plural prefix even though a quantity is clearly thought of rather than a single item. /Bumbulutele/ possibly because of its length and because of the /bu-/ first syllable, seldom is used in the plural although the item is large enough that one might buy only one.

2

Also: grass, vegetables

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Pata mosi na malala tatu.

Five francs for three oranges.

Falanka iya na malala tatu.

Four Francs for three oranges.

Pata mosi na falanka mosi

Six francs for three oranges.

na malala tatu. (Falanka

sambanu)

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 5.1 The Verb Extension /.il-/ .in-/ 'to, for, on behalf of' etc.

Melesi, kangila munu yau. Thanks, wrap it up for me.

When a verb occurs with this extension of the root or stem it may be followed immediately by a noun or pronoun which is construed as the recipient or the beneficiary of the action rather than the undergoer. Note the contrast between:

Mu me futa pata mosi. I've paid five francs.

Mu me futa nge pata mosi. I've paid you five francs.

Mu me futila nge pata mosi. I've paid five francs for you.

If the verb root or stem has a nasal consonant which is not combined with a stop in a nasal compound the form of this extension is /.in-/:

Mwana ke nata mukanda.

The child will carry the book.

Mwana ke natina munu mukanda.

The child will carry the book for me.

but compare an example with a nasal in compound:

Mu me banda kisalu. I've started work.

Mu me bandila yandi kisalu. I've started a job for him.

This extension is widely productive - it may occur on almost any verb. Other uses of this extension will be described later.

Note 5.2 Shift of /l/ to /d/ before /i/

Roots and stems ending in /l/ change the /l/ to /d/ before extensions and suffixes beginning with /i/. Note these examples:

Mu me banda kusala. I've begun to work.

Mu me banda kusadila yandi. I've begun to work for him.

Mu lenda kakula ve. I can't come down ('subtract')

Mu lenda kakudila nge ve. I can't come down for you.

Mu zola Madi. I want Mary.

Mu zodila yandi Madi. I want Mary for him.

Drill 5.2 Grammar Drill - Verb Extension /.il-/ .in-/

a) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute all verbs with the /.il-/ .in-/ extension):

Cue

Pattern

Polo me sosila munu mbisi.

Paul has looked for meat for me.

kupesa Polo me pesila munu mbisi.

nge Polo me pesila nge mbisi.

ntangu Polo me pesila nge ntangu.

Meto me pesila nge ntangu.

	Meto <u>me</u> pesila nge ntangu.	
ke	Meto ke <u>pesila</u> nge ntangu.	Meto will give a watch for you.
kunata	Meto ke natina <u>nge</u> ntangu.	
yandi	Meto ke natina <u>yandi</u> ntangu.	
mbele	<u>Meto</u> ke natina <u>yandi</u> mbele.	
bau	Bau <u>ke</u> natina <u>yandi</u> mbele.	
zola	Bau zola <u>natina</u> <u>yandi</u> mbele.	They want to bring a knife for him.
kusumba	Bau zola sumbila <u>yandi</u> mbele.	
Madi	Bau zola sumbila Madi <u>mbele</u> .	
dimpa	<u>Bau</u> zola simbila Madi dimpa.	
Zile	Zile <u>zola</u> sumbila Madi dimpa.	
lenda	Zile lenda <u>sumbila</u> Madi dimpa.	Julius can buy bread for Mary.
kukanga	Zile lenda kangila <u>Madi</u> dimpa.	
benu	Zile lenda kangila benu <u>dimpa</u> .	
mbongo	<u>Zile</u> lenda kangila benu mbongo.	
mu	Mu <u>lenda</u> kangila benu mbongo.	
zola...ve	Mu zola <u>kangila</u> benu mbongo ve.	I don't want to tie up the money for you.
kufuta	Mu zola futila <u>benu</u> mbongo ve.	
Sofi	Mu zola futila Sofi <u>mbongo</u> ve.	
mankondo	<u>Mu</u> zola futila Sofi mankondo ve.	

Mu zola futila Sofi mankondo ve.

Polo Polo zola futila Sofi mankondo ve.

me Polo me futila Sofi mankondo. Paul has paid [over]
bananas for Sophie.

kusosa Polo me sosila Sofi mankondo.

munu Polo me sosila munu mankondo.

mbisi Polo me sosila munu mbisi.

Note 5.3 The MU-BA and N-BA Noun Classes

Among the classes of nouns in Kituba which have prefixes for both singular and plural, the MU-BA and N-BA classes contain mostly nouns referring to persons. Some of the examples which have occurred to date are:

<u>Singular</u>	<u>Translation</u>	<u>Plural</u>
muntu	person	bantu
mwana	child	bana
nkento	woman	bakento

Prefixed to tribal names the MU and BA prefixes refer to members of the group

Mukongo	person of the lower Congo	Bakongo
---------	------------------------------	---------

A few more words of these classes will occur in these units but the classes are not large in Kituba.

Note 5.4 The DI - MA Noun Class

Nouns of this class which have occurred to date are:

dinkondo	banana	mankondo
dilala	orange	malala
diambu	matter	mambu
dititi	herb	matiti
dimpa	bread	mampa

As can be seen from these examples the names of several foods are included in this class. Parts of the body and various miscellaneous nouns also occur in this fairly large class.

Drill 5.3 Grammar Drills Illustrating the MU-BA, N-BA, and DI-MA Noun Classes

a) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Muntu	mosi	ke na	kwiza	kuna.
Mwana			kwenda	na dokotolo.
Nkento			kubikala	na mpatu.
Mukongo			kusala	na inzo.
				na bilo.

b) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Bakongo	ikwa	ke	kwenda	na Uganda?
Bana			sala	kuna?
Bakento			bikala	na Amelike?
Bantu			vwanda	na nge?
			kwiza	na Za?

How many Bakongo will go to Uganda?

c) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute Subject Nouns in Plural Form)

CuePattern

Banani ke kuzola Polo ve?

Who (all) won't
like Paul?

nkento

Bakento ke zola Polo ve.

kunata

Bakento ke nata Polo ve.

nge

Bakento ke nata nge ve.

mntu

Bantu ke nata nge ve.

kusosa

Bantu ke sosa nge ve.

munu

Bantu ke sosa munu ve.

mwana

Bana ke sosa munu ve.

kufuta

Bana ke futa munu ve.

dokotolo

Bana ke futa dokotolo ve.

Mukongo

Bakongo ke futa dokotolo ve.

kulanda

Bakongo ke landa dokotolo ve.

tat_a n_a munu

Bakongo ke landa tat_a n_a munu ve.

The Bakongo won't
follow my father.

mntu

Bantu ke landa tat_a n_a munu ve.

kufwa

Bantu ke kufwa tat_a n_a munu ve.

Nobody will kill
my father.

nge

Bantu ke kufwa nge ve.

nkento

Bakento ke kufwa nge ve.

kuzola

Bakento ke zola nge ve.

Bakento ke zola nge ve.

Polo Bakento ke zola Polo ve.

nani Banani ke kuzola Polo ve?

d) Random Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute Subject Nouns in singular form)

Cue

Pattern

Nkento mosi me kwenda na Uganda.

One woman has gone to Uganda.

bantu Muntu mosi me kwenda na Uganda.

Mputu Muntu mosi me kwenda na Mputu.

kufwa Muntu mosi me kufwa na Mputu.

Someone has died in Europe.

bana Mwana mosi me kufwa na Mputu.

kubikala Mwana mosi me bikala na Mputu.

Bakongo Mukongo mosi me bikala na Mputu.

kwiza Mukongo mosi me kwiza na Mputu.

bantu Muntu mosi me kwiza na Mputu.

France Muntu mosi me kwiza na France.

kuzimbala Muntu mosi me zimbala na France.

Uganda Muntu mosi me zimbala na Uganda.

bakento Nkento mosi me zimbala na Uganda.

kwenda Nkento mosi me kwenda na Uganda.

- e) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill (Supply all nouns in form appropriate to the number supplied)

CuePattern

Bantu zole ke na kusosa bansinga tanu. Two men are looking for five ropes.

kalaka Bakalaka zole ke na kusosa bansinga tanu.

sambanu Bakalaka sambanu ke na kusosa bansinga tanu.

kunata Bakalaka sambanu ke na kunata bansinga tanu.

mwana Bakalaka sambanu ke na kunata bana tanu.

tatu Bakalaka sambanu ke na kunata bana tatu.

nkento Bakento sambanu ke na kunata bana tatu.

mosi Nkento mosi ke na kunata bana tatu.

kuzola Nkento mosi ke na kuzola bana tatu.

dimpa Nkento mosi ke na kuzola mampa tatu.

mingi Nkento mosi ke na kuzola mampa mingi.

Mukongo Mukongo mosi ke na kuzola mampa mingi.

kumi Bakongo kumi ke na kuzola mampa mingi.

kusumba Bakongo kumi ke na kusumba mampa mingi.

dititi Bakongo kumi ke na kusumba matiti mingi.

mosi Bakongo kumi ke na kusumba dititi mosi.

muntu Bantu kumi ke na kusumba dititi mosi.

zole Bantu zole ke na kusumba dititi mosi.

kusosa Bantu zole ke na kusosa dititi mosi.

Bantu zole ka na kusosa dititi mosi.

nsinga Bantu zole ke na kusosa nsinga mosi.

tanu Bantu zole ke na kusosa bansinga tanu.

f) Multiple Substitution Drill (The DI-MA Class) *unrecorded*

Tata	ke na	dinkondo	mosi.
Za		dilala	
Nge (?)		dititi	
Nani (?)		diambu	
Betu			
Bau			

g) Simple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Nani ke sosa	matiti	tatu?
	mankondo	
	malala	

h) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute nouns in plural form)

Cue

Pattern

Sumbila munu malala tanu.

Buy five oranges for me.

kukangila Kangila munu malala tanu.

betu Kangila betu malala tanu.

dinkondo Kangila betu mankondo tanu.

mingi Kangila betu mankondo mingi.

kubikila Bikila betu mankondo mingi.

Leave a lot of bananas for us.

	Bikila <u>betu</u> mankondo mingi.
Za	Bikila Za <u>mankondo</u> mingi.
mukanda	Bikila Za mikanda <u>mingi</u> .
fioti	<u>Bikila</u> Za mikanda fioti.
kunatina	Natina <u>Za</u> mikanda fioti.
tata	Natina tata <u>mikanda</u> fioti.
dititi	Natina tata matiti <u>fioti</u> .
zole	<u>Natina</u> tata matiti zole.
kusumbila	Sumbila <u>tata</u> matiti zole.
munu	Sumbila munu <u>matiti</u> zole.
dilala	Sumbila munu malala <u>zole</u> .
tanu	Sumbila munu malala tanu.

i) Random Substitution-Correlation Drill (Substitute nouns in appropriate form)

CuePattern

Mu me nata malala zole na zandu.

I have taken two oranges to market.

dinkondo	<u>Mu</u> me nata mankondo zole na zandu.
Za	Za me <u>nata</u> mankondo zole na zandu.
kubika	Za me bika mankondo <u>zole</u> na zandu.
mosi	Za me bika <u>dinkondo</u> mosi na zandu.
dimpa	Za me bika dimpa mosi na <u>zandu</u> .
inzo	Za me bika dimpa <u>mosi</u> na inzo.

	Za me bika dimpa <u>mosi</u> na inzo.
mingi	Za me <u>bika</u> mampa mingi na inzo.
kusumba	Za me sumba <u>mampa</u> mingi na inzo.
dititi	<u>Za</u> me sumba matiti mingi na inzo.
Polo	Polo me <u>sumba</u> matiti mingi na inzo.
kupesa	Polo me pesa <u>matiti</u> mingi na inzo.
sizo	Polo me <u>pesa</u> basizo mingi na inzo.
kusosa	<u>Polo</u> me sosa basizo mingi na inzo.
mu	Mu me sosa basizo mingi na <u>inzo</u> .
zandu	Mu me sosa <u>basizo</u> mingi na zandu.
dilala	Mu me <u>sosa</u> malala mingi na zandu.
kunata	Mu me nata malala <u>mingi</u> na zandu.
zole	Mu me nata malala zole na zandu.

j) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute Nouns in Plural Form)

CuePattern

Nge ke pesa inki na bamama?¹ (= Inki What will you give
nge ke pesa na bamama?² = Nge ke to the mothers?
pesa na bamama inki?³)

mu Mu ke pesa inki na bamama?

kubika Mu ke bika inki na bamama?

dilala Mu ke bika malala na bamama. I'll leave the
oranges with the
ladies.

nkento Mu ke bika malala na bakento.

mwana Bana ke bika malala na bakento.

kusumba Bana ke sumba malala na bakento. The children will
buy oranges from
the women.

dinkondo Bana ke sumba mankondo na bakento.

Mukongo Bana ke sumba mankondo na Bakongo.

muntu Bantu ke sumba mankondo na Bakongo.

kunata Bantu ke nata mankondo na Bakongo. People will bring
bananas to the
Bakongo.

dimpa Bantu ke nata mampa na Bakongo.

¹ Second in order of frequency of occurrence.

² First in order of frequency of occurrence.

³ Third in order of frequency of occurrence.

Bantu ke nata mampa na Bakongo.

mwana Bantu ke nata mampa na bana.

nge Nge ke nata mampa na bana?

kupesa Nge ke pesa mampa na bana?

inki Nge ke pesa inki na bana?

mama Nge ke pesa inki na bamama?

Note 5.5 Other Noun Classes

Other noun classes exist (see Note 1.1) but nouns of these classes have not occurred in units to date in sufficient number to provide drills of each class separately. The most numerous of the other classes is the KI-BI class, the members of which frequently denote abstractions derived from verb roots (such as /ki-sal-u/ 'work, job'). This large class does not occur often in early units. We have also seen examples of the MU-MI class (/mu-kanda (mi-)/) and a few examples will occur from time to time of other classes. In the drills which follow nouns introduced to date in these units are presented randomly for drill regardless of their class.

Drill 5.4 Drills with Mixed Noun Classes

a) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill

CuePatternBana zole ke pesa mikanda iya.Two children will
give four books.kalaka Bakalaka zole ke pesa mikanda iya.mosi Kalaka mosi ke pesa mikanda iya.kusumba Kalaka mosi ke sumba mikanda iya.papayi Kalaka mosi ke sumba bapapayi iya.sambanu Kalaka mosi ke sumba bapapayi sambanu.muntu Muntu mosi ke sumba bapapayi sambanu.tatu Bantu tatu ke sumba bapapayi sambanu.kunata Bantu tatu ke nata bapapayi sambanu.nsusu Bantu tatu ke nata bansusu sambanu.mosi Bantu tatu ke nata nsusu mosi.bakala Babakala tatu ke nata nsusu mosi.iya Babakala iya ke nata nsusu mosi.kusosa Babakala iya ke sosa nsusu mosi.lukaya Babakala iya ke sosa lukaya mosi.tanu Babakala iya ke sosa makaya tanu.mwana Bana iya ke sosa makaya tanu.zole Bana zole ke sosa makaya tanu.kupesa Bana zole ke pesa makaya tanu.

Bana zole ke pesa makaya tanu.

mukanda Bana zole ke pesa mikanda tanu.

iya Bana zole ke pesa mikanda iya.

b) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill

Cue

Pattern

Sumbila munu mampa zole na mbisi ya maza mosi.

kunata Natina munu mampa zole na mbisi ya maza mosi.

Za Natina Za mampa zole na mbisi ya maza mosi.

dinkondo Natina Za mankondo zole na mbisi ya maza mosi.

tatu Natina Za mankondo tatu na mbisi ya maza mosi.

papayi Natina Za mankondo tatu na papayi mosi.

zole Natina Za mankondo tatu na bapapayi zole.

kubika Bikila Za mankondo tatu na bapapayi zole.

tata Bikila tata mankondo tatu na bapapayi zole.

mbele Bikila tata bambele tatu na bapapayi zole.

mosi Bikila tata mbele mosi na bapapayi zole.

dilala Bikila tata mbele mosi na malala zole.

mosi Bikila tata mbele mosi na dilala mosi.

kusumba Sumbila tata mbele mosi na dilala mosi.

munu Sumbila munu mbele mosi na dilala mosi.

dimpa Sumbila munu dimpa mosi na dilala mosi.

zole Sumbila munu mampa zole na dilala mosi.

mbisi ya maza Sumbila munu mampa zole na mbisi ya maza mosi.

c) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill

	Nani ke na <u>kusosa</u> bisalu zole?	Who's looking for two jobs?
kwenda na	Nani ke na kwenda na <u>bisalu</u> zole?	
dokotolo	Nani ke na kwenda na badokotolo <u>zole</u> ?	
mosi	Nani <u>ke na kwenda na dokotolo</u> mosi?	
kuzola	Nani zola <u>dokotolo</u> mosi?	
bilo	Nani zola bilo <u>mosi</u> ?	
tanu	Nani <u>zola</u> babilo tanu?	
kuzaba	Nani zaba <u>babilo</u> tanu?	
mwana	Nani zaba bana <u>tanu</u> ?	
kumi	Nani <u>zaba</u> bana kumi?	
ke na kwiza na	Nani ke na kwiza na <u>bana</u> kumi?	
Zozefu	Nani ke na kwiza na BaZozefu <u>kumi</u> ?	
mosi	Nani ke na <u>kwiza na</u> Zozefu mosi?	
kusosa	Mani ke na kusosa <u>Zozefu</u> mosi?	
kisalu	Nani ke na kusosa kisalu <u>mosi</u> ?	
zole	Nani ke na kusosa bisalu zole?	

DIALOGUE: A CALL

-A-

ko ko ko ko kooooo!

(Onomatapoetic form used
in place of knocking on
a door.)

Ko ko ko ko kooooo!

Knock, knock-----!

-B-

Nani ke kuna?

Who is there?

-A-

ku-long-a

to teach

n-long-i (ba-)

teacher

Munu, nlongi y_a mpangi n_a nge.

I, your brother's/sister's

/nlongyampangyange/

teacher.

-B-

ku-kot-a

to enter, to be involved in

kota nge

come in (polite imperative)

Kota nge, tata. Mbote.

Come in, sir. Greetings.

-A-

Piele

Fr: Pierre; Peter

wapi (?)

where?

Mbote mama. Wapi Piele?

Greetings ma'am. Where's Peter?

-B-

ku-sak.an-a

to play

Piele me kwenda sakana.

Peter has gone playing.

-A-

ku-mon-a

to see

Mu zonaka mon_a y_andi.

I wanted to see him.

(Mu zolaka...)

-B-

Diambu ikele?

Is there something?

-A-

ku-vut.uk-a

to return

midi (ba-)

(Fr.) noon

Ve, diambu ikele ve. Mu

No, may I return tomorrow at

lenda vutuka mbasi na midi?

noon?

-B-

E, mambu ve. Kwiza mbasi na

All right. Come tomorrow at

midi.

noon.

Drill 6.1 SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

a) Simple Substitution Drill

Piele me kwenda sakana.

Pierre has gone to play.

yobila. (ku-yob.il-a)

bathe/swim.

nwana. (ku-nwan-a)

fight.

tunga inzo. (ku-tung-a)

build [a] house.

zibula mwelo. (ku-zib.ul-a)

open [the] door.

bula ngunga. (ku-bul-a)
[n.gunga (ba-)]ring 'strike'
[the] bell.vutula sizo. (ku-vut.ul-a)¹
[sizo (ba-)]return the
scissors.kotisa mwana na kalasi. (ku-kot.is-a) enter (cause
to enter) [the]
child in school.lamba matiti. (ku-lamb-a)

cook vegetables.

tala mwana. (ku-tal-a)look after/look
at [the] child.komba inzo. (ku-komb-a)sweep [the]
house.

¹ ku-vut.ul-a 'return' also translates 'answer'.

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Mu ke	nlongi	y ^a mpangi n ^a nge.	I am your brother's/ sister's teacher.
	<u>kolodoni</u> (ba-/ma-)		shoemaker. (fr. cordon- nier)
	<u>taye</u> le (ba-)		tailor. (Fr: tailleur)
	<u>kilambi</u> [ki-lamb-i(bi)]		cook.
	<u>mukombi</u> [mu-komb-i(ba-)]		sweeper.
	<u>mutubi</u> [mu-tub-i(ba-)]		spokesman/ announcer.
	kisadi [ki-sad-i(bi)]		worker/workman.

Drill 6.2 Variation Drills on Pattern Sentences

a) Simple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Wapi	Piele?	Where's Peter?
	tata n ^a nge?	
	Zozefu?	
	mbuta muntu?	
	mukombi?	
	kolodoni?	
	taye?	
	mukombi?	
	kisadi?	

b) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Polo	me	kwenda	sakana.
Piele		kwiza	kudia.
Za			kunwa.
Mu			zimbala.
Yandi			yobila.
Banani			longa.
Betu			
Bakento			

Paul has gone to play.

c) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePatternPiele me kwenda kudia mbisi.Peter has gone to eat
meat.nge Nge me kwenda kudia mbisi?kwiza Nge me kwiza kudia mbisi?kusumba Nge me kwiza sumba mbisi?mankondo Nge me kwiza sumba mankondo?nani Nani me kwiza sumba mankondo?kuzola Nani me zola sumba mankondo?kuvutula Nani me zola vutula mankondo?mukanda Nani me zola vutula mukanda?balongi Balongi me zola vutula mukanda.kubanda Balongi me banda vutula mukanda.

	Balongi me banda <u>vutula</u> mukanda.
kuzibula	Balongi me banda zibula <u>mukanda</u> .
inzo	<u>Balongi</u> me banda zibula inzo.
tayelee	Tayelee me <u>banda</u> zibula inzo.
kubikala	Tayelee me bikala <u>zibula</u> inzo.
kutala	Tayelee me bikala tala <u>inzo</u> .
malala	<u>Tayelee</u> me bikala tala malala.
Piele	Piele me <u>bikala</u> tala malala.
kwenda	Piele me kwenda <u>tala</u> malala.
kudia	Piele me kwenda kudia <u>malala</u> .
mbisi	Piele me kwenda kudia mbisi.

d) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Za ke nlongi y^a Madi ve.

John is not Mary's
teacher.

mu	Mu ke <u>nlonqi</u> y ^a Madi ve.
kalaka	Mu ke kalaka y ^a <u>Madi</u> ve.
nge	<u>Mu</u> ke kalaka y ^a nge ve.
yandi	Yandi ke <u>kalaka</u> y ^a nge ve.
tayelee	Yandi ke tayelee y ^a <u>nge</u> ve.
mukombi	<u>Yandi</u> ke tayelee ya mukombi ve.
bakala	Bakala ke <u>tayelee</u> y ^a mukombi ve.
mpangi	Bakala ke mpangi y ^a <u>mukombi</u> ve.

Bakala ke mpangi ya mukombi ve.

Madi Bakala ke mpangi ya Madi ve.

Za Za ke mpangi ya Madi ve.

nlongi Za ke nlongi ya Madi ve.

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Zozefu ke zona kudia mbisi ya maza. Joseph will want
to eat fish.

nge Nge ke zona kudia mbisi ya maza?

kwiza Nge ke kwiza kudia mbisi ya maza?

kusumba Nge ke kwiza sumba mbisi ya maza?

nkuni Nge ke kwiza sumba nkuni?

nani Nani ke kwiza sumba nkuni?

kwenda Nani ke kwenda sumba nkuni?

kusosa Nani ke kwenda sosa nkuni?

sizo Nani ke kwenda sosa sizo?

kolodoni Kolodoni ke kwenda sosa sizo.

kubikala Kolodoni ke bikala sosa sizo.

kutala Kolodoni ke bikala tala sizo.

mapapayi Kolodoni ke bikala tala mapapayi.

betu Betu ke bikala tala mapapayi.

kuvwanda Betu ke vwanda tala mapapayi.

kudia Betu ke vwanda kudia mapapayi.

	Betu ke vwanda kudia <u>mapapayi</u> .	
manga	<u>Betu</u> ke vwanda kudia manga.	
mutubi	Mutubi ke <u>vwanda</u> kudia manga.	
kubanda	Mutubi ke banda <u>kudia</u> mangi.	
kubika	Mutubi ke banda bika <u>manga</u> .	The spokesman will start to give up mangoes.
bumbulutele	<u>Mutubi</u> ke banda bika bumbulutele.	
Piele	Piele ke <u>banda</u> bika bumbulutele.	
kwenda	Piele ke kwenda <u>bika</u> bumbulutele.	
kukanga	Piele ke kwenda kanga <u>bumbulutele</u> .	Peter will go to wrap up potatoes.
nkuni	<u>Piele</u> ke kwenda kanga nkuni.	Peter will go to tie up firewood.
mama	Mama ke <u>kwenda</u> kanga nkuni.	
kuzona	Mama ke zona <u>kanga</u> nkuni.	
kukakula	Mama ke zona kakula <u>nkuni</u> .	Mother will wish to reduce [the price of] firewood.
ntalu ina	<u>Mama</u> ke zona kakula ntalu ina.	
Polo	Polo ke <u>zona</u> kakula ntalu ina.	
kwiza	Polo ke kwiza <u>kakula</u> ntalu ina.	
kufata	Polo ke kwiza futa <u>ntalu ina</u> .	
balongi	<u>Polo</u> ke kwiza futa balongi.	Paul will come to pay the teachers.
Zozefu	Zozefu ke <u>kwiza</u> futa balongi.	

Zozefu ke kwiza futa balongi.

kuzona Zozefu ke zona futa balongi.

kudia Zozefu ke zona kudia balongi.

Joseph will want to borrow [from the] teachers. (e.g. in a card game).

mbisi ya maza Zozefu ke zona kudia mbisi ya maza.

f) Random Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Mama ke vutuka na midi.

Mother/[the] lady will return at noon.

mbasi Mama ke vutuka mbasi.

mwana Mwana ke vutuka mbasi.

kwiza Mwana ke kwiza mbasi.

kutuba Mwana ke tuba mbasi.

Za Za ke tuba mbasi.

kwenda Za ke kwenda mbasi.

na midi Za ke kwenda na midi.

kusala Za ke sala na midi.

kuna Za ke sala kuna.

nge Nge ke sala kuna?

kubikala Nge ke bikala kuna?

me Nge me bikala kuna?

na inzo Nge me bikala na inzo?

nsusu Nsusu me bikala na inzo.

Nsusu me bikala na inzo.

kufwa Nsusu me kufwa na inzo.

na kalasi Nsusu me kufwa na kalasi.

kuvwanda Nsusu me vwanda na kalasi.

bakento Bakento me vwanda na kalasi.

kulonga Bakento me longa na kalasi.

ke Bakento ke longa na kalasi.

mama Mama ke longa na kalasi.

kuvutuka Mama ke vutuka na kalasi.

midi Mama ke vutuka na midi.

g) Random Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Mbasi nge ke kwenda na zandu?

Are you going to go
to market tomorrow?

Zile Mbasi Zile ke kwenda na zandu.

inzo Mbasi Zile ke kwenda na inzo.

na midi Na midi Zile ke kwenda na inzo.

kusakana Na midi Zile ke sakana na inzo.

nzila Na midi Zile ke sakana na nzila.

kusala Na midi Zile ke sala na nzila.

benu Na midi benu ke sala na nzila?

mbasi Mbasi benu ke sala na nzila?

kudia Mbasi benu ke kudia na nzila?

Mbasi benu ke kudia na nzila?

bana Mbasi bana ke kudia na nzila.

lupitalu Mbasi bana ke kudia na lupitalu.

kuyobila Mbasi bana ke yobila na lupitalu.

kwenda Mbasi bana ke kwenda na lupitalu.

nge Mbasi nge ke kwenda na lupitalu?

zandu Mbasi nge ke kwenda na zandu?

h) Controlled Conversation Drill (The student takes part A in each conversation and looks only at the English in the left-hand column, covering the Kituba. The instructor (or other student) makes the responses of part B).

unrecorded

1. You meet a gentleman while you are looking for work downtown. Greet him. Reply to his question.

A. Mbote.

B. Mbote. Nge ke na kusosa kisalu?

A. E, mu ke na kusosa kisalu.

B. Munu mpe ke na kusosa kisalu.

2. Ask your new-found acquaintance what work he does. Tell him you are a salesperson in a store.

A. Inki ke kisalu na nge?

B. Mu ke taye.

A. Mu ke kalak_a ya magazini.

B. Mpangi ya munu mpe ke

kalak_a ya magazini.

3. Inquire what country he is from. Inform him you are from Uganda.

- A. Inki ke insi na nge?
B. Insi na munu ke Gabon.
A. Ya munu ke Uganda.
B. Ina ke mbote mingi.

4. Tell him your name (Meto) and ask him his. Since you both have to go, exchange goodbyes using the names you have learned.

- A. Nkumbu na mu(nu) ke Meto.
Nkumbu na nge ke nani?
B. Ya munu ke Kalala.
A. Kwenda mbote, Kalala.
B. Kwenda mbote, Meto.

i) Controlled Conversation Drill

unrecorded

1. During a gathering of women you see a man looking for someone. Greet him. Ask him what he wants.

- A. Mbote tata.
B. Mbote tata.
A. Inki nge zola?
B. Mu ke na kusosa famili

y^a munu.

2. Ask him his wife's name. After he replies ask him how many children he has.

- A. Nkumbu y^a nkento na nge
ke nani?
B. Nkumbu na y^a andi ke Madi.
A. Nge ke na bana ikwa?
B. Mu ke na bana zole ya fioti.
Bau ke babakala.

3. Tell him to follow you, that you know his family. Reply to his thanks and say good-bye to him.
- A. Landa munu. Mu zaba famili na nge.
- B. Melesi mingi.
- A. Mambu ve. Kwenda mbote.
- B. Bikala mbote.

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 6.1 The Polite Imperative

Kota nge, tata.

Come in, sir.

The simple form of the verb - root or stem plus /-a/ - is the abrupt imperative. The addition of /nge/ (or /benu/ for a plurality of persons addressed) adds an element of politeness to the imperative - an element which might commonly require 'please' in the translation. Still more polite is a structure which has not yet occurred in dialogues:

Benu vwanda ya benu. (You) [please] be seated.

A 'literal' translation of the phrase /ya benu/ is impossible. This is simply an idiomatic expression which softens the imperative making it polite and might better be translated 'Won't you please be seated.'

Drill 6.3 The Polite Imperative with /nge/

Random Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Kota nge, <u>mama</u> .	Come in, madame!
Za	<u>Kota</u> nge, Za.	
kwiza	<u>Kwiza</u> nge, Za.	Come, please, John.
kutuba	Tuba nge, <u>Za</u> .	
Polo	<u>Tuba</u> nge, Polo.	
kwenda	<u>Kwenda</u> nge, Polo.	
kusala	<u>Sala</u> nge, Polo.	
kuyobila	Yobila nge, <u>Polo</u> .	
Meto	<u>Yobila</u> nge, Meto.	
kudia	Kudia nge, <u>Meto</u> .	
mwana	<u>Kudia</u> nge, mwana.	
kuvwanda	<u>Vwanda</u> nge, mwana.	Be seated, child. ¹
kuluta	Luta nge, <u>mwana</u> .	
mama	<u>Luta</u> nge, mama.	
kukota	Kota nge, mama.	

1

/Vwanda nge/ may also mean 'Pay no attention.', 'Contain yourself'. (in the sense of 'Ignore the annoyance').

Note 6.2 The Impersonal Expression /ikele/ 'there is', 'there are', 'exists', 'is present'

Diambu ikele? Is something the matter? ('Is there something?')

The form /ikele/ consists of the verbal form /kele/, the longer form of /ke/ 'am, is, are', with a prefix /i-/. This prefix is an impersonal subject prefix translatable 'it' in some contexts. Thus /ikele na inzo/ means 'It is in the house.' Commonly the form /ikele/ has the sense of 'there is', 'there are' as in /Mikanda ikele?/ 'Are there [any] books?'. With a personal subject the sense is 'is here', 'is present' as in /Tata ikele?/ 'Is Father here?', or perhaps better 'Is Father available?'

Drill 6.4 /ikele/

Simple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Nge	ikele?
Diambu	
Tata	
Taye	
Mutubi	
Madi	
Za	
Nani	

Are you [there]?

Note 6.3 The Verbal Extension /*.ak-*/ 'Past' and 'Habitual'

a) Mama _na betu kufwaka ntama. Our mother died a long time ago.

Mu zonaka mon_a y_yandi. I wanted to see him.

The verbal extension /*.ak-*/, when the root or stem to which it is attached is the first or only verb in the verb phrase, carries a simple past denotation.

In contrast with other extensions such as /*.il-*/ *.in-*/, the extension /*.ak-*/ is a 'tense' signal and may occur on all verbs including auxiliaries. It follows any and all stem-formative extensions. On borrowed French verbs, which have infinitive forms ending in /*e*/, this extension has the form /*.ek-*/.

b) Banani ke vwandaka na benu? Who (pl) lives with you?

This sentence illustrates the extension /*.ak-*/ not on the first verb of the verb phrase but on a verb following an auxiliary. In this position /*.ak-*/ carries a denotation of habitual state or action. After the auxiliary /*me*/, however, a verb form with /*.ak-*/ signals a 'intermediate past'.

c) Banani me vwandaka na benu? Who lived (was) with you (awhile ago)?

Pesaka mpe nkento _na nge mbote. Also take greetings to
your wife.

When attached to a verb used without subject as an 'imperative', this extension softens the abruptness of the imperative and often carries also a faint denotation of 'habitual'. In effect it re-

duces the immediacy of the imperative. Thus:

Kwiza! 'Come!' but Kwizaka. 'Come along [whenever you can]' the latter carrying a sense of 'Make it your habit to come.' Similarly:

Kwenda na zandu! Go to market!

Kwendaka na zandu. Go along to the market [from time to time]. The latter might be said by a parent starting on a trip to the oldest child to remind him to keep food supplies up during the parental absence.

Note 6.4 Summary of 'Past' Forms of Kituba Verbs (Reference Note)

Three verb forms or verb phrases have occurred to date which have past reference: /me/ + verb + /-a/; /me/ + verb + /.ak/ + /-a/; verb + /.ak-/ + /-a/. These three are respectively 'immediate past', 'intermediate past' and 'indefinite past (generally more distant)'. Thus in sentences these forms translate approximately as follows (the exact translation will, of course, depend on context since time is a relative matter):

1. Mu me kudia. I've (just) eaten.
2. Mu me kudiaka. I ate (a while ago.)
3. Mu kudiaka. I ate (in the past.)

It is immediately clear that (1) and (2) share an 'aspect' -of the action's having been completed in the relatively recent past so that it may bear on the present situation-which is lacking

from (3). For this reason (2) and especially (1) will often be translated with a 'perfect' form in English while (3) will much less frequently receive such a translation. There is, however, clearly no one-to-one correspondence between English 'perfect' verb phrases and these Kituba forms.

Drill 6.5 Grammar Drills on Verbal Extension /.ak-/ 'Past'

- a) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute verbs with /.ak-/)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>Polo</u> kwendaka ntama.	Paul went a long time ago.
yandi	Yandi <u>kwendaka</u> ntama.	
kudia	Yandi kudiaka <u>ntama</u> .	
dimpa mosi	<u>Yandi</u> kudiaka dimpa mosi.	
bau	Bau <u>kudiaka</u> dimpa mosi.	
kusumba	Bau sumbaka <u>dimpa mosi</u> .	
matiti mingi	<u>Bau</u> sumbaka matiti mingi.	
nani	Nani <u>sumbaka</u> matiti mingi?	
kunata	Nani nataka <u>matiti mingi</u> ?	
mwana	<u>Nani</u> nataka mwana?	
Zozefu	Zozefu <u>nataka</u> mwana.	
kubula	Zozefu bulaka <u>mwana</u> .	Joseph struck [the] child.
Madi	<u>Zozefu</u> bulaka Madi.	

	<u>Zozefu</u> bulaka Madi.	
betu	Betu <u>bulaka</u> Madi.	
kufuta	Metu futaka <u>Madi</u> .	
taye	<u>Betu</u> futaka taye.	
betu na benu	Betu na benu <u>futaka</u> taye. ¹	
kumona	Betu na benu monaka <u>taye</u> .	
nzila	<u>Betu na benu</u> monaka nzila.	
Za	Za <u>monaka</u> nzila.	
kusosa	Za sosaka <u>nzila</u> .	
sizo	<u>Za</u> sosaka sizo.	
mama	Mama <u>sosaka</u> sizo.	
kuvutula	Mama vutulaka <u>sizo</u> .	Mother returned the scissors.
mbongo na nge	<u>Mama</u> vutulaka mbongo na nge.	
Meto	Meto vutulaka mbongo na nge.	
kutanga	Meto tangaka <u>mbongo na nge</u> .	Meto counted your money.
mukanda yai	<u>Meto</u> tangaka mukanda yai.	Meto read that book.
mu	Mu <u>tangaka</u> mukanda yai.	
kuzaba	Mu zabaka <u>mukanda yai</u> .	I knew that book.
mpatu	<u>Mu</u> zabaka mpatu.	
Polo	Polo <u>zabaka</u> mpatu.	

1

Note order: 'We and you' rather than normal English or French 'You and we'. There is no convention about this matter.

Polo zabaka mpatu.

kwenda na Polo kwendaka na mpatu.

ntama Polo kwendaka ntama.

b) Random Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute Verbs with /.ak-/):

Cue

Pattern

Bana tatu kwendaka na Kongo.

Three children went
to the Congo.

kuzimbala Bana tatu zimbalaka na Kongo.

bakento Bakento tatu zimbalaka na Kongo.

Mputu Bakento tatu zimbalaka na Mputu.

sambanu Bakento sambanu zimbalaka na Mputu.

Uganda Bakento sambanu zimbalaka na Uganda.

bafamili Bafamili sambanu zimbalaka na Uganda.

kufwa Bafamili sambanu kufwaka na Uganda.

bampangi Bampangi sambanu kufwaka na Uganda.

kwiza Bampangi sambanu kwizaka na Uganda.

tanu Bampangi tanu kwizaka na Uganda.

Amelike Bampangi tanu kwizaka na Amelike.

tatu Bampangi tatu kwizaka na Amelike.

kwenda Bampangi tatu kwendaka na Amelike.

Kongo Bampangi tatu kwendaka na Kongo.

bana Bana tatu kwendaka na Kongo.

c) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute Verbs in Past Form with /.ak-/):

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>Tata</u> zolaka mukanda ya ngolo ve.	Father didn't like [the] hard book.
nge	Nge <u>zolaka</u> mukanda ya ngolo ve?	
kubika	Nge bikaka <u>mukanda</u> ya ngolo ve?	
mwana	Nge bikaka mwana ya <u>ngolo</u> ve?	
maladi	<u>Nge</u> bikaka mwana ya maladi ve?	
nani	Nani <u>bikaka</u> mwana ya maladi ve?	
kumona	Nani monaka <u>mwana</u> ya maladi ve?	
nkento	Nani monaka nkento ya <u>maladi</u> ve?	
ngolo	<u>Nani</u> monaka nkento ya ngolo ve?	
tata	Tata <u>monaka</u> nkento ya ngolo ve.	
kuzola	Tata zolaka <u>nkento</u> ya ngolo ve.	
mukanda	Tata zolaka mukanda ya ngolo ve.	

d) Random Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Mu <u>kudiaka</u> kima ve.	I didn't eat anything.
kunwa	Mu kunwaka <u>kima</u> ve.	
maza	Mu <u>kunwaka</u> maza ve.	
kwenda na	Mu kwendaka na <u>maza</u> ve.	I didn't go to the river,
Mputu	<u>Mu</u> kwendaka na Mputu ve.	
Madi	Madi kwendaka na <u>Mputu</u> ve.	

	Madi kwendaka na <u>Mputu</u> ve.
Kongo	<u>Madi</u> kwendaka na Kongo ve.
nani	Nani <u>kwendaka</u> na Kongo ve?
kuvutuka	<u>Nani</u> vutukaka na Kongo ve?
nge	Nge vutukaka na <u>Kongo</u> ve?
Gabon	<u>Nge</u> vutukaka na Gabon ve?
Polo	Polo <u>vutukaka</u> na Gabon ve.
kufwa	Polo kufwaka <u>na Gabon</u> ve.
kuna	Polo kufwaka kuna ve.

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Nge zonaka bika <u>nani</u> ? (= Nani nge zonaka bika?) ¹	Whom did you want to leave?
Maligeliti	<u>Nge</u> zonaka bika Maligeliti?	
Za	Za zonaka <u>bika</u> Maligeliti.	
kusosa	Za zonaka sosa <u>Maligeliti</u> .	
nsusu	<u>Za</u> zonaka sosa nsusu.	
benu	Benu zonaka <u>sosa</u> nsusu?	
kuluta	Benu zonaka luta <u>nsusu</u> ?	Did you want to pass the chicken?
bau	<u>Benu</u> zonaka luta bau?	
bakento	Bakento zonaka <u>luta</u> bau	

1

The second form is the more common of this particular question.

	Bakento zonaka <u>luta</u> bau.
kunata	Bakento zonaka nata <u>bau</u> .
maza	<u>Bakento</u> zonaka nata maza.
Kalala	Kalala zonaka <u>nata</u> maza.
kunwa	Kalala zonaka kunwa <u>maza</u> .
inki	<u>Kalala</u> zonaka kunwa inki?
nge	Nge zonaka <u>kunwa</u> inki?
kubika	Nge zonaka bika <u>inki</u> ?
nani	Nge zonaka bika nani?

f) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

	Tata kwendaka sosa mielo ya <u>mpembe</u> .
ngolo	<u>Tata</u> kwendaka sosa mielo ya ngolo.
nani	Nani kwendaka <u>sosa</u> mielo ya ngolo?
kunata	Nani kwendaka nata <u>mielo</u> ya ngolo?
ngunga	Nani kwendaka nata ngunga ya <u>ngolo</u> ?
Za	<u>Nani</u> kwendaka nata ngunga ya Za?
muyibi	Muyibi <u>kwendaka</u> nata ngunga ya Za.
kubikala	Muyibi bikalaka <u>nata</u> ngunga ya Za.
kubula	Muyibi bikalaka bula <u>ngunga</u> ya Za.
mwana	Muyibi bikalaka bula mwana ya <u>Za</u> .

Father went to
look for some
white doors
(painted white).

A thief went and
carried off
John's bell.

	Muyibi bikalaka bula mwana ya <u>Za</u> .	
mayele	<u>Muyibi</u> bikalaka bula mwana ya mayele.	
Sofi	Sofi <u>bikalaka</u> bula mwana ya mayele.	
kuzona	Sofi zonaka <u>bula</u> mwana ya mayele.	
kutala	Sofi zonaka tala <u>mwana</u> ya mayele.	
kalasi	Sofi zonaka tala kalasi ya <u>mayele</u> .	
zoba	<u>Sofi</u> zonaka tala kalasi ya zoba.	
bau	Bau <u>zonaka</u> tala kalasi ya zoba.	
kubanda	Bau bandaka <u>tala</u> kalasi ya zoba.	
kukota	Bau bandaka kota <u>kalasi</u> ya zoba.	
mambu	Bau bandaka kota mambu ya <u>zoba</u> .	They started to be involved in stupid matters.
yandi	Bau bandaka kota mambu n'andi.	
Bakongo	Bakongo <u>bandaka</u> kota mambu n'andi.	
kwenda	Bakongo kwendaka <u>kota</u> mambu n'andi.	
kufwa	Bakongo kwendaka kufwa <u>mambu</u> n'andi.	The Bakongo went to finish off his affairs.
nkento	Bakongo kwendaka kufwa nkento n' <u>andi</u> .	
dokotolo	<u>Bakongo</u> kwendaka kufwa nkento ya dokotolo.	
muntu	Muntu <u>kwendaka</u> kufwa nkento ya dokotolo.	
kusosa	Muntu sosaka <u>kufwa</u> nkento ya dokotolo.	
kukanga	Muntu sosaka kanga <u>nkento</u> ya dokotolo.	
inzo	Muntu sosaka kanga inzo ya <u>dokotolo</u> .	Somebody wanted to close up the doc- tor's house.

Muntu sosaka kanga inzo ya dokotolo.

mpembe Muntu sosaka kanga inzo ya mpembe.

tata Tata sosaka kanga inzo ya mpembe.

kwenda Tata kwendaka kanga inzo ya mpembe.

kusosa Tata kwendaka sosa inzo ya mpembe.

mielo Tata kwendaka sosa mielo ya mpembe.

Drill 6.6 Grammar Drill with Verbal Extension /.ak-/ after /ke/ -
'Habitual'

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Bau ke sosaka bana ya betu.

They come after our
children.

Za Za ke sosaka bana ya betu.

kunata Za ke nataka bana ya betu.

John brings our
children.

bansusu Za ke nataka bansusu ya betu.

Polo Za ke nataka bansusu ya Polo.

nani Nani ke nataka bansusu ya Polo?

kudia Nani ke kudiaka bansusu ya Polo?

Who eats Paul's
chickens?

mampa Nani ke kudiaka mampa ya Polo?

tata Nani ke kudiaka mampa ya tata?

Madi Madi ke kudiaka mampa ya tata.

kuzola Madi ke zolaka mampa ya tata.

maza Madi ke zolaka maza ya tata.

Madi ke zolaka maza ya tata.

dokotolo Madi ke zolaka maza ya dokotolo.

bau Bau ke zolaka maza ya dokotolo.

kusosa Bau ke sosaka maza ya dokotolo.

bana Bau ke sosaka bana ya dokotolo.

betu Bau ke sosaka bana ya betu.

b) Multiple Substitution Drill *unrecorded*

Banani (?)	ke	vwandaka	na	benu.
Bana ikwa (?)		kudiaka		nge.
Bakento		kwendaka		betu.
Bafamili		salaka		Za.
Miyibi		kwizaka		munu.
Nani (?)				bambuta muntu.
Bakolodoni				

c) Random Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Betu ke kwendaka na kisalu.

We go to work.

France Betu ke kwendaka na France.

banani Banani ke kwendaka na France?

kuvwanda Banani ke vwanaka na France?

tata na mama Tata na mama ke vwanaka na France.

kuna Tata na mama ke vwanaka kuna.

yandi Yandi ke vwanaka kuna.

	Yandi ke <u>vwandaka</u> kuna.	
kwiza	Yandi ke kwizaka <u>kuna</u> .	
na Uganda	<u>Yandi</u> ke kwizaka na Uganda.	
Meto	Meto ke kwizaka na <u>Uganda</u> .	
inzo	Meto ke <u>kwizaka</u> na inzo.	
kusakana	Meto ke sakanaka na <u>inzo</u> .	Meto plays in [the] house. ¹
maza	<u>Meto</u> ke sakanaka na maza.	
nge	Nge ke <u>sakanaka</u> na maza?	
kwenda	Nge ke kwendaka na <u>maza</u> ?	
zandu	<u>Nge</u> ke kwendaka na zandu?	
nani	Nani ke kwendaka na <u>zandu</u> ?	
kisalu	<u>Nani</u> ke kwendaka na kisalu?	
betu	Betu ke kwendaka na kisalu.	

1

In appropriate context this could also mean 'Meto plays with
[the] [toy] house.'

d) Random Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Nge ke salaka <u>inki</u> ?	What do you do?
mampa	<u>Nge</u> ke salaka mampa?	Do you make bread?
bau	Bau ke <u>salaka</u> mampa.	
kudia	<u>Bau</u> ke kudiaka mampa.	
Za	Za ke kudiaka <u>mampa</u> .	
mbisi	<u>Za</u> ke kudiaka mbisi.	
tata	Tata ke <u>kudiaka</u> mbisi.	
kusumba	Tata ke sumbaka <u>mbisi</u> .	
mankondo	Tata ke <u>sumbaka</u> mankondo.	
kunata	Tata ke nataka <u>mankondo</u> .	
bana	<u>Tata</u> ke nataka bana.	
nani	Nani ke <u>nataka</u> bana?	
kubula	Nani ke bulaka bana?	

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Mu ke kudiaka <u>mampa</u> mingi.	I eat a lot of bread.
dinkondo	Mu ke kudiaka mankondo <u>mingi</u> .	
fioti	<u>Mu</u> ke kudiaka mankondo fioti.	
mama	Mama ke <u>kudiaka</u> mankondo fioti.	
kusumba	Mama ke sumbaka <u>mankondo</u> fioti.	

	Mama ke sumbaka <u>mankondo</u> fioti.	
dilala	Mama ke sumbaka malala <u>fioti</u> .	
ya mbote	<u>Mama</u> ke sumbaka malala ya mbote.	
nani	Nani ke <u>sumbaka</u> malala ya mbote?	
kusosa	Nani ke sosaka <u>malala</u> ya mbote?	
bantu	Nani ke sosaka bantu ya <u>mbote</u> ?	
zoba	<u>Nani</u> ke sosaka bantu ya zoba?	
bau	Bau ke <u>sosaka</u> bantu ya zoba.	
kufuta	Bau ke futaka <u>bantu</u> ya zoba.	
bisadi	Bau ke futaka bisadi ya <u>zoba</u> .	
tata	<u>Bau</u> ke futaka bisadi ya tata.	
balongi	Balongi ke <u>futaka</u> bisadi ya tata.	
kutala	Balongi ke talaka <u>bisadi</u> ya tata.	
bana	Balongi ke talaka bana ya <u>tata</u> .	The teachers look after Father's children.
Za	<u>Balongi</u> ke talaka bana ya Za.	
Madi	Madi ke <u>talaka</u> bana ya Za.	
kubula	Madi ke bulaka <u>bana</u> ya Za.	
mpangi	Madi ke bulaka mpangi ya <u>Za</u> .	
munu	<u>Madi</u> ke bulaka mpangi ya munu.	
benu	Benu ke <u>bulaka</u> mpangi ya munu?	
kunwana na	Benu ke nwanaka na <u>mpangi</u> ya munu?	Do you fight with my brother?
bakolodoni	Benu ke nwanaka na bakolodoni ya <u>munu</u> ?	

	Benu ke nwanaka na bakolodoni ya <u>munu</u> ?
ya ngolo	<u>Benu</u> ke nwanaka na bakolodoni ya ngolo?
banani	Banani ke <u>nwanaka</u> na bakolodoni ya ngolo?
kusakana	Banani ke sakanaka na <u>bakolodoni</u> ya ngolo?
bikombi	Banani ke sakanaka na bikombi ya <u>ngolo</u> ?
inda	<u>Banani</u> ke sakanaka na bikombi ya inda?
nge na yandi	Nge na yandi ke <u>sakanaka</u> na bikombi ya inda?
kudia	Nge na yandi ke kudiaka na <u>bikombi</u> ya inda?
bakento	Nge na yandi ke kudiaka na bakento ya <u>inda</u> ?
mingi	<u>Nge na yandi</u> ke kudiaka na bakento mingi?
mu	Mu ke kudiaka <u>na bakento</u> mingi.
mampa	Mu ke kudiaka mampa mingi.

Drill 6.7 Grammar Drill - /me/ + Verb + /.ak-/, 'Intermediate Past'

a) Multiple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Nani (?)	me	kufwaka	ntama	mingi.
Polo		kudiaka		fioti.
Maligeliti		tubaka		
Mama		zimbalaka		
		bikalaka		
		kwendaka		
		kunwaka		
		tangaka		
		sonikaka		

Who died quite a while ago?

DIALOGUE: ASKING DIRECTIONS

-A-

mwan_a y_a bakala

young man, gentleman

ku-sad.is-a

to help to do, cause to
doNge, mwan_a y_a bakala yai, nge

You - this young man - could you

lenda sadisa munu?

help me?

-B-

E mama, inki nge zola?

Yes ma'am, what can I do for you?

-A-

n.dambu (ba-)

part, half, section

balabala (ba-)

street

Balumbú

(name of street in Leopoldville)

Na inki ndambu ike balabala

Where ('in what part') is Balambu

Balumbu?

street?

-B-

ku-tal-a

to look at, look after

ya iya

fourth

Yau ke ntama ve. Tala kuna,

It's not far. Look there, cross

luta babalabala tatu, ina

three streets, (that) the fourth

ya iya ike Balumbu.

is Balumbu.

-A-

dalakisio /dalakisyo/
(ba-)

Fr: direction; cross
street¹

Prince Baudoin

Proper name of Belgian
Prince - now King
Baudoin I

Dalakisio y^a Prince Baudoin
ike ntama?

Is Prince Baudoin Street far?

-B-

mingi mingi

very much

n.tete

first

bosi

then

ku-yufus-a

to ask

Ve. Ike ntama mingi mingi ve.

No. It isn't so very far. First

Ntete kwenda na Balumbu,

go to Balumbu [street], then you

bosi nge yufusa bantu

ask other people.

yankaka.

-A-

lusad.is-u
/lusad.us-u (ba-)/

help

Melesi mingi tata na lusadisu

Thank you very much sir for your

y^a nge.

help.

1

In Leopoldville cross streets, which do not have numbered lots facing them are called by this name, also used to refer to the lanes of a divided highway or boulevard.

Drill 7.1 SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

a) Simple Substitution Drill

Na inki	ndambu	ike balabala Balumbu?	In what area is Balumbu street?
	<u>kifulu</u> [ki-fulu(bi-)]		place
	<u>palasi</u> (ba-)		place (Fr: place)
	<u>bwala</u> (ma-)		village
	<u>sika</u> (ba-)		place

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Na inki ndambu ike	balabala Balumbu?	In what area is Balumbu Street?
	<u>pósita ya letá?</u>	the state house? (Fr: poste, l'état)
	<u>gale ya lukalu?</u> [gale (ba-)] [lu.kalu (ba-)]	the train station? (Fr: gare)
	<u>posita ya mikanda</u>	the post office?
	<u>dibungu</u> [di-bungu (ma-)]?	the port?
	<u>n.zadi</u> (ba-)?	the river?

c) Simple Substitution Drill

Za me sumba	<u>masini</u> . (ba-)
	<u>kamió</u> . (ba-)
	<u>veló</u> . (ba-)
	<u>bisikaleti</u> . (ba-)
	<u>vwatile</u> . (ba-)
	<u>pusu pusu</u> . (ba-)
	di-lata. (ma-)
	<u>midiki</u> . ()

John has bought a machine.
(Fr: machine)

an automobile/truck.
(Fr: camion)

a bicycle. (Fr: vélo)

a bicycle. (Fr: bicyclette)

a car. (Fr: voiture)

a push cart.

a tin/can.

milk.

d) Simple Substitution Drill

Nani ke	sumba	kamio?
	<u>tambusa</u> [ku-tamb.us-a]	
	<u>pusa</u> [ku-pus-a]	
	<u>balula</u> [ku-bal.ul-a]	
	<u>teka</u> [ku-tek-a]	

Who will buy [the] truck?

drive

push

turn [transitive]

sell

e) Simple Substitution Drill

Tala	kuna.
	<u>na manima</u> .
	<u>malumalu</u> .

Look there.

backwards. [nima (ba-) 'back']

quickly.

f) Simple Substitution Drill

Kwenda	na manima.
<u>Baluka</u>	
<u>Tambula</u>	

Go back.

Turn [intransitive] /ku-bal.uk-a/

Walk. [ku-tamb.ul-a]

g) Simple Substitution Drill

Yufusa	bantu yankaka.
	<u>podisi.</u>

Ask other people.

a policeman.

h) Simple Substitution Drill

Betu ke na kisalu	ya	mbote.
		<u>n.golo.</u>
		<u>m.pasi.</u>

We have a good job.

a hard (physically) job.

a difficult job. (from
any point of view)

i) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePatternNani me kudia dimpa?

Who has eaten [the] bread?

kuzenga Nani me zenga dimpa?

Who has cut [the] bread?

nzila Nani me zenga nzila?

Who has taken a short cut?

j) Simple Substitution Drill

Zozefu kudiaka dimpa	<u>mazono.</u> (ba-) mazono na <u>m.pimpa.</u> <u>bilumbu</u> lutaka. <u>bubu</u> na nsuka. na <u>m.vula</u> lutaka. mazono na <u>n.kokila.</u>	Joseph ate bread yesterday. yesterday evening/ night (also 'dark- ness') [during the] past days. [ki-lumbu (bi-)] this morning ('today in the morning') last ('past') year (ba-) yesterday after- noon/evening (ba-)
----------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

k) Substitution-Correlation Drill (Change the verb phrases to correlate with the times given)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Zozefu kudiaka dimpa <u>mazono.</u>	Joseph ate bread yesterday.
malumalu yai	Zozefu ke na kudia dimpa <u>malumalu yai.</u>	Joseph is eating bread now.
bubu na mpimpa	Zozefu ke kudia dimpa <u>bubu na mpimpa.</u>	Joseph will eat bread tonight.
ntangu yonso	Zozefu ke kudiaka dimpa <u>ntangu yonso.</u>	Joseph always eats bread.

Drill 7.2 VARIATION DRILLS ON PATTERN SENTENCES

a) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill (Substitute Words in Appropriate Forms)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Ntangu yonso Za ke <u>kudiaka</u> mampa zole.	John always eats two [loaves of] bread.
kusumba	Ntangu yonso Za ke sumbaka <u>mampa</u> zole.	
mukanda	Ntangu yonso Za ke sumbaka mikanda <u>zole</u> .	
mingi	<u>Ntangu yonso</u> Za ke sumbaka mikanda mingi.	
mbasi	Mbasi <u>Za</u> ke sumba mikanda mingi.	
Kalala	Mbasi Kalala ke <u>sumba</u> mikanda mingi.	
kutanga	Mbasi Kalala ke tanga <u>mikanda</u> mingi.	
ntalu ya bana	Mbasi Kalala ke tanga ntau ya bana <u>mingi</u> .	Tomorrow, Kalala will count (the number of) many children.
fioti	<u>Mbasi</u> Kalala ke tanga ntau ya bana fioti.	
mazono	Mazono <u>Kalala</u> tangaka ntau ya bana fioti.	
betu	Mazono betu <u>tangaka ntau ya</u> bana fioti.	
kulonga	Mazono betu longaka <u>bana</u> fioti.	
bakento	Mazono betu longaka bakento <u>fioti</u> .	
ya bau	<u>Mazono</u> betu longaka bakento ya bau.	
malumalu yai	Malumalu yai <u>betu</u> ke na kulonga bakento ya bau.	
banani	Malumalu yai banani ke na <u>kulonga</u> bakento ya bau?	
kusosa	Malumalu yai banani ke na kusosa <u>bakento</u> ya bau?	

	Malumalu yai banani ke na kusosa <u>bakento</u> ya bau?
matiti	Malumalu yai banani ke na kusosa matiti <u>ya bau</u> ?
yina	<u>Malumalu yai</u> banani ke na kusosa matiti yina?
ntangu yonso	Ntangu yonso <u>banani</u> ke sosaka matiti yina?
Za	Ntangu yonso Za ke <u>sosaka</u> matiti yina.
kudia	Ntangu yonso Za ke kudiaka <u>matiti</u> yina.
dimpa	Ntangu yonso Za ke kudiaka dimpa <u>yina</u> .
zole	Ntangu yonso Za ke kudiaka mampa zole.

b) Random Substitution-Correlation Drill (The Time is Before Noon)

Cue

Pattern

	Mbasi mu ke <u>tambusa</u> vwatile.	I'm going to drive a car tomorrow.
kusumba	Mbasi <u>mu</u> ke sumba vwatile.	
Za	<u>Mbasi</u> Za ke sumba vwatile.	
mazono	Mazono Za sumbaka <u>vwatile</u> .	
mankondo	Mazono Za <u>sumbaka</u> mankondo.	
kunata	<u>Mazono</u> Za nataka mankondo.	
malumalu yai	Malumalu yai Za ke na <u>kunata</u> mankondo.	
kuteka	Malumalu yai Za ke na kuteka <u>mankondo</u> .	
velo	Malumalu yai <u>Za</u> ke na kuteka velo.	
nani	Malumalu yai nani ke na kuteka <u>velo</u> ?	
bansusu	<u>Malumalu yai</u> nani ke na kuteka bansusu?	
na suka	Na suka <u>nani</u> tekaka bansusu?	

	Na suka <u>nani</u> tekaka bansusu?
Polo	Na suka Polo <u>tekaka</u> bansusu.
kusosa	Na suka Polo sosaka <u>bansusu</u> .
malala	<u>Na suka</u> Polo sosaka malala.
mbasi na midi	Mbasi na midi Polo ke sosa <u>malala</u> .
vwatile	Mbasi na midi Polo ke <u>sosa</u> vwatile.
kutambusa	Mbasi na midi <u>Polo</u> ke tambusa vwatile.
mu	<u>Mbasi na midi</u> mu ke tambusa vwatile.
mbasi	Mbasi mu ke tambusa vwatile.

c) Simple Substitution-Correlation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Nge me tanga ntalu ya meza na suka yai?	Have you counted the tables this morning? (immediate past)
mazono na mpimpa	Nge me tangaka ntalu ya meza mazono na mpimpa?	Did you count the tables last night? (intermediate past)
mbasi	Nge ke tanga ntalu ya meza mbasi?	
malumalu yai	Nge ke na kutanga ntalu ya meza malumalu yai?	
ntangu yonso	Nge ke tangaka ntalu ya meza ntangu yonso?	
mbasi na midi	Nge ke tanga ntalu ya meza mbasi na midi?	

d) Simple Substitution-Correlation Drill

CuePattern

Polo ke tuba kuna na mpimpa.

Paul will speak
there at night.

mazono Polo tubaka kuna mazono.

mbasi Polo ke tuba kuna mbasi.

malumalu yai Polo ke na kutuba kuna malumalu yai.

ntama fioti Polo me tuba kuna ntama fioti.

ntangu yonso Polo ke tubaka kuna ntangu yonso.

bubu na suka Polo tubaka kuna bubu na suka.

ntama mingi Polo tubaka kuna ntama mingi.

e) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill

CuePatternMama ke sumbila betu mampa mbasi.Mother will buy us
bread(s) tomorrow.Zozefu Zozefu ke sumbila betu mampa mbasi.kusala Zozefu ke sadila betu mampa mbasi.bana Zozefu ke sadila bana mampa mbasi.bavelo Zozefu ke sadila bana bavelo mbasi.Joseph will fix the
bikes for the chil-
dren tomorrow.mazono Zozefu sadilaka bana bavelo mazono.podisi Podisi sadilaka bana bavelo mazono.kutala Podisi tadilaka bana bavelo mazono.The policeman took
care of bicycles
for the children
yesterday.

Podisi tadilaka bana bavelo mazono.

bakento Podisi tadilaka bakento bavelo mazono.

mampa Podisi tadilaka bakento mampa mazono.

mbasi Podisi ke tadila bakento mampa mbasi.

mama Mama ke tadila bakento mampa mbasi.

kusumba Mama ke sumbila bakento mampa mbasi.

betu Mama ke sumbila betu mampa mbasi.

f) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill

Cue

Pattern

Mbasi betu ke kudia mampa. We'll eat bread
tomorrow.

malumalu yai Malumalu yai betu ke na kudia mampa.

nani Malumalu yai nani ke na kudia mampa?

kusumba Malumalu yai nani ke na kusumba mampa?

mikanda Malumalu yai nani ke na kusumba mikanda?

mazono Mazono nani sumbaka mikanda?

Polo Mazono Polo sumbaka mikanda.

kusosa Mazono Polo sosaka mikanda.

mbongo Mazono Polo sosaka mbongo.

mbasi na suka Mbasi na suka Polo ke sosa mbongo.

Kalala Mbasi na suka Kalala ke sosa mbongo.

kufuta Mbasi na suka Kalala ke futa mbongo.

tayeke Mbasi na suka Kalala ke futa tayeke.

	<u>Mbasi na suka</u> Kalala ke futa taye.
na mvula lutaka	Na mvula lutaka <u>Kalala</u> futaka taye.
bau	Na mvula lutaka bau <u>futaka</u> taye.
kumona	Na mvula lutaka bau monaka <u>taye</u> .
Kongo	<u>Na mvula lutaka</u> bau monaka Kongo.
ntangu yonso	Ntangu yonso <u>bau</u> ke monaka Kongo.
Za	Ntangu yonso Za ke <u>monaka</u> Kongo.
kwenda na	Ntangu yonso Za ke kwendaka na <u>Kongo</u> .
Angeletele	<u>Ntangu yonso</u> Za ke kwendaka na Angeletele.
bubu yai	Bubu yai <u>Za</u> me kwenda na Angeletele.
mama	Bubu yai mama me <u>kwenda</u> na Angeletele.
kubikala	Bubu yai mama me bikala na <u>Angeletele</u> .
Madi	<u>Bubu yai</u> mama me bikala na Madi.
ntangu mosi	Ntangu mosi <u>mama</u> bikalaka na Madi.
Zozefu	Ntangu mosi Zozefu <u>bikalaka na</u> Madi.
kunata	Ntangu mosi Zozefu nataka <u>Madi</u> .
malala	<u>Ntangu mosi</u> Zozefu nataka malala.
mbasi	Mbasi <u>Zozefu</u> ke nata malala.
betu	Mbasi betu ke <u>nata</u> malala.
kudia	Mbasi betu ke kudia <u>malala</u> .
mampa	Mbasi betu ke kudia mampa.

g) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Mazono <u>tata</u> zibulaka mwelo.	Father opened the door yesterday.
banani	Mazono banani <u>zibulaka</u> mwelo?	
kukanga	Mazono banani kangaka <u>mwelo</u> ?	...shut/lock the door?
inzo	<u>Mazono</u> banani kangaka inzo?	
ntangu yonso	Ntangu yonso <u>banani</u> ke kangaka inzo?	
mu	Ntangu yonso mu ke <u>kangaka</u> inzo.	
kukomba	Ntangu yonso mu ke kombaka <u>inzo</u> .	
balabala yai	<u>Ntangu yonso</u> mu ke kombaka balabala yai.	
mbasi	Mbasi <u>mu</u> ke komba balabala yai.	
yandi	Mbasi yandi ke <u>komba</u> balabala yai.	
kulanda	Mbasi yandi ke landa <u>balabala</u> yai.	
Andele	<u>Mbasi</u> yandi ke landa Andele.	
malumalu yai	Malumalu yai <u>yandi</u> ke na kulanda Andele.	
bantu	Malumalu yai bantu ke na <u>kulanda</u> Andele.	
kusosa	Malumalu yai bantu ke na kusosa <u>Andele</u> .	
benu	<u>Malumalu yai</u> bantu ke na kusosa benu.	
mbasi na mpimpa	Mbasi na mpimpa <u>bantu</u> ke sosa benu.	
Madi	Mbasi na mpimpa Madi ke <u>sosa</u> benu.	
kuluta	Mbasi na mpimpa Madi ke luta <u>benu</u> .	
babakala	<u>Mbasi na mpimpa</u> Madi ke luta babakala.	

Mbasi na mpimpa Madi ke luta babakala.

mazono na midi Mazono na midi Madi lutaka babakala.

bana Mazono na midi bana lutaka babakala.

kutuba na Mazono na midi bana tubaka na babakala.

mama Mazono na midi bana tubaka na mama.

bubu na mpimpa Bubu na mpimpa bana ke tuba na mama.

nge Bubu na mpimpa nge ke tuba na mama?

kwenda Bubu na mpimpa nge ke kwenda na mama?

nge Bubu na mpimpa nge ke kwenda na nge?

Tonight you will go with you? (two people)
Tonight you yourself will go? (one person)

na mpimpa ya Na mpimpa ya mazono nge kwendaka na nge?
 mazono

tayeke Na mpimpa ya mazono tayeke kwendaka na nge.

kufuta Na mpimpa ya mazono tayeke futaka nge.

matiti Na mpimpa ya mazono tayeke futaka matiti.

ntangu yonso Ntangu yonso tayeke ke futaka matiti.

Za Ntangu yonso Za ke futaka matiti.

kunata Ntangu yonso Za ke nataka matiti.

malala kumi Ntangu yonso Za ke nataka malala kumi.

mazono Mazono Za nataka malala kumi.

tata Mazono tata nataka malala kumi.

kuzibula Mazono tata zibulaka malala kumi.

mwelo Mazono tata zibulaka mwelo.

h) Simple Substitution-Correlation Drill (The Time is Before Noon)

CuePattern

	Bubu na midi nu ke tanga mukanda ve.	I won't read a book this noon.
na suka	Na suka mu tangaka mukanda ve.	I didn't read a book in the morning.
mazono	Mazono mu tangaka mukanda ve.	
na suka ya mbasi	Na suka ya mbasi mu ke tanga mukanda ve.	
ntangu yonso	Ntangu yonso mu ke tangaka mukanda ve.	
na mpimpa	Na mpimpa mu ke tanga mukanda ve.	
mazono na nkokila	Mazono na nkokila mu tangaka mukanda ve.	
malumalu yai	Malumalu yai mu ke na kutanga mukanda ve.	
bubu na mpimpa	Bubu na mpimpa mu ke tanga mukanda ve.	

i) Simple Substitution-Correlation Drill (The Time is Before Noon)

CuePattern

	Mazono ntete mu kudiaka dimpa bosi mu kwendaka.	Yesterday first I ate bread, then I went.
mbasi	Mbasi ntete mu ke kudia dimpa bosi mu ke kwenda.	

Mbasi ntete mu ke kudia dimpa

bosi mu ke kwenda.

bubu na
nkokila

Bubu na nkokila ntete mu ke kudia

dimpa bosi mu ke kwenda.

ntangu yonso

Ntangu yonso ntete mu ke kudiaka

dimpa bosi mu ke kwendaka.

malumalu yai

Malumalu yai ntete mu ke na kudia

dimpa bosi mu ke kwenda.

na mpimpa

Na mpimpa ntete mu ke kudia dimpa

bosi mu ke kwenda.

na midi ya
bubu

Na midi ya bubu ntete mu ke kudia

dimpa bosi mu ke kwenda.

mazono na
suka

Mazono na suka ntete mu kudiaka

dimpa bosi mu kwendaka.

j) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill (The Time is Before Noon)

Cue

Pattern

Malumalu yai betu ke na kudia mbisi.

We're eating
meat right
now.

mbasi na midi

Mbasi na midi betu ke kudia mbisi.

Polo

Mbasi na midi Polo ke kudia mbisi.

kutanga mukanda

Mbasi na midi Polo ke tanga mukanda.

mazono

Mazono Polo tangaka mukanda.

nani

Mazono nani tangaka mukanda?

	Mazono nani <u>tangaka mukanda?</u>
kwenda na zandu	<u>Mazono</u> nani kwendaka na zandu?
na nkokila	Na nkokila <u>nani</u> ke kwenda na zandu?
nge	Na nkokila nge ke <u>kwenda na zandu?</u>
kuyobila	<u>Na nkokila</u> nge ke yobila?
mazono na suka	Mazono na suka <u>nge</u> yobilaka?
tata	Mazono na suka tata <u>yobilaka.</u>
kutambusa wvatile ya nlongi na munu	<u>Mazono na suka</u> tata tambusaka wvatile ya nlongi <u>na</u> munu.
bubu na mpimpa	Bubu na mpimpa <u>tata</u> ke tambusa wvatile ya nlongi <u>na</u> munu.
Zozefu	Bubu na mpimpa Zozefu ke <u>tambusa wvatile ya</u> <u>nlongi na munu.</u>
kumona podisi	<u>Bubu na mpimpa</u> Zozefu ke mona podisi.
ntangu yons	Ntangu yonso <u>Zozefu</u> ke monaka podisi.
bana	Ntangu yonso bana ke <u>monaka podisi.</u>
kuyufusa ba - balabala	<u>Ntangu yonso</u> bana ke yufusaka babalabala.
bilumbu lutaka	Bilumbu lutaka <u>bana</u> yufusaka babalabala.
Piele	Bilumbu lutaka Piele <u>yufusaka babalabala.</u>
kuteka mankondo	<u>Bilumbu lutaka</u> Piele tekaka mankondo.
bubu na midi	Bubu na midi <u>Piele</u> ke teka mankondo.
nani	Bubu na midi nani ke <u>teka mankondo?</u>

	Bubu na midi nani ke <u>teka mankondo</u> ?
kuzibula malala	<u>Bubu na midi</u> nani ke zibula malala?
na mpimpa ya mbasi	Na mpimpa ya mbasi <u>nani</u> ke zibula malala?
Madi	Na mpimpa ya mbasi Madi ke <u>zibula malala</u> .
kunata mikanda na posita	<u>Na mpimpa ya mbasi</u> Madi ke nata mikanda na posita.
na suka ya mazono	Na suka ya mazono <u>Madi</u> nataka mikanda na posita.
bau	Na suka ya mazono bau <u>nataka mikanda na posita</u> .
kupusa pusu pusu	<u>Na suka ya mazono</u> bau pusaka pusu pusu.
mvula yonso	Mvula yonso <u>bau</u> ke pusaka pusu pusu.
tata	Mvula yonso tata ke <u>pusaka pusu pusu</u> .
kuzenga matiti	<u>Mvula yonso</u> tata ke zengaka matiti.
na mvula lutaka	Na mvula lutaka <u>tata</u> zengaka matiti.
kolodoni	Na mvula lutaka kolodoni <u>zengaka matiti</u> .
kusumbila nkento kitambala	<u>Na mvula lutaka</u> kolodoni sumbilaka nkento kitambala.
mbasi na suka	Mbasi na suka <u>kolodoni</u> ke sumbila nkento kitambala.
mpangi na nge	Mbasi na suka mpangi <u>n</u> a nge ke <u>sumbila</u> <u>nkento kitambala</u> .
kukota na kamio	<u>Mbasi na suka</u> mpangi <u>n</u> a nge ke kota na kamio.
malumalu yai	Malumalu yai <u>mpangi n</u> a nge ke na kukota na kamio.

Malumalu yai mpangi na nge ke na kukota na
kamio.

betu Malumalu yai betu ke na kukota na kamio.

kudia mbisi Malumalu yai betu ke na kudia mbisi.

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 7.1 Some Uses of the Simple Form of the Verb

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| A. Nata yandi na dokotolo. | Take him/her to the doctor. |
| Kangila munu yau. | Wrap it up for me. |
| Kota nge, tata. | Come in [please], sir. |
| B. Inki kisalu nge zaba? | What work [do] you know? |
| Mu zola kisalu. | I want work. |
| Polo zola mwana nge. | Paul likes your child. |
| Nani zola bana ya ngolo? | Who likes strong children? |
| C. Mu lenda kakula ve. | I can't come down [on the price]. |
| Mu zola futila Sofi mbongo. | I want to pay money for Sophie. |
| Mu zonaka mona yandi. | I wanted to see him. |
| D. Inki nge pesa munu? | What [did/will] you give me? |
| ...bosi nge yufusa bantu | ...then you'll ask other people. |
| yankaka. | |

Group A illustrates the use of the simple form of the verb alone (without /ku-/ prefix [except for monosyllabic roots or vowel-initial roots like /kwenda/], and without subject or auxiliary) as an imperative. Followed by /nge/ or /benu/ this form is a

polite imperative. This usage has been profusely illustrated in previous drills and does not present any particular difficulty to an English speaker.

Group B illustrates the indefinite non-past use of the simple form which was described briefly in Note 2.3. In that note it was mentioned that this use of the simple form is common with certain verbs. Among these are the following verbs which have been introduced:

ku-zol-a	to wish, want, like, love
ku-mon-a	to see, perceive
ku-zab-a	to know
ku-lut-a	to exceed, surpass, pass
ku-tub-a	to say, speak, talk
ku-lend-a	to be able

Group C illustrates (except for the last example) the use of the simple form of verbs as auxiliaries followed by another verb also in the simple form. Auxiliaries may occur with the /ak-/ extension 'past' (as in the last example of Group C) or with other auxiliaries preceding then in verb phrases, but they also commonly occur, as in the other examples, in the simple form with an indefinite non-past meaning. The common auxiliaries /ke/ and /me/ have particular functions in indicating time-aspect relations and are thus in a different category.

The verbs which have occurred to date which are commonly used as auxiliaries are: /ku-zol-a/, /ku-lend-a/, /ku-lut-a/ 'exceed' (used in comparison), and /ku-bik-a/ 'let'.

Group D illustrates somewhat more confusing uses of the simple form. In the first sentence, the time of the action is not specified at all. A literal translation would be 'What you give me?' with the time of the giving implicit in the context (probably) but not expressed. The second example illustrates the use of this form in a second clause (the first clause contained an imperative in the original context) where the time or aspect of the action has already been set by the first clause. This situation is roughly parallel to the English usage which requires a 'simple present' form in subordinate clauses following a non-past verb phrase in the main clause in such sentences as:

I'll see him if he comes.

I see him whenever I go there.

I'm buying at that store when I can.

etc.

In Kituba the general rule might be stated that wherever the time and aspect of the action is clear from preceding context the verb may be used in its simple form. This is especially true of second or later clauses in a sentence or of second or later sentences in a continuous narrative. Thus, whenever the action or state of

the clause in question is clearly subsequent to or consequent upon the action or state of the preceding context, the simple form may occur. The simple form does not direct attention to any time or aspect of the action or state and should not be used where attention to the time or aspect is desired but it is commonly used in connected narrative where such attention is not desired.

Subsequent units which develop longer sequences of clauses will illustrate these usages more fully.

Drill 7.3 Grammar Drill on Use of the Simple Form of the Verb in Second Clauses

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Ntete kudia mankondo bosi nge
nata maza.

First eat bananas
then you [are to]
bring water.

kusosa Ntete sosa mankondo bosi nge nata maza.

malala Ntete sosa malala bosi nge nata maza.

kunwa Ntete sosa malala bosi nge kunwa maza.

midiki Ntete sosa malala bosi nge kunwa midiki.

kusumba Ntete sumba malala bosi nge kunwa midiki.

matiti Ntete sumba matiti bosi nge kunwa midiki.

kupesa Ntete sumba matiti bosi nge pesa midiki.

mukanda Ntete sumba matiti bosi nge pesa mukanda.

kuzenga Ntete zenga matiti bosi nge pesa mukanda.

	Ntete zenga <u>matiti</u> bosì nge pesa mukanda.
ndunda	Ntete zenga ndunda bosì nge <u>pesa</u> mukanda.
kukotisa	Ntete zenga ndunda bosì nge kotisa <u>mukanda</u> .
velo	Ntete <u>zenga</u> ndunda bosì nge kotisa velo.
kudia	Ntete kudia <u>ndunda</u> bosì nge kotisa velo.
mankondo	Ntete kudia mankondo bosì nge <u>kotisa</u> velo.
kunata	Ntete kudia mankondo bosì nge nata <u>velo</u> .
maza	Ntete kudia mankondo bosì nge nata maza.

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Podisi ke kanga nge kana nge	tuba.
	yobila.
	zenga nzila.
	balula kamio.
	teka mikanda yai.
	pusa velo.
	kota kuna.
	landa munu.
	bula ngunga.

The policeman will arrest you
if you speak.

wash/swim.

cross the street.

turn the truck.

sell these books.

push the bicycle.

enter there.

follow me.

ring the bell.

Note 7.2 Adjectival Phrase with /ya/ + Infinitive (I)

This structure has not yet appeared in basic sentences. However, with the vocabulary already at the student's command a fairly large number of sentences can be constructed and drilled

using /ya/ plus the infinitive of the verb (with /ku-/ prefix) as a modifier of a noun. In English we employ the infinitive of verbs with to in such phrases as 'water to drink', 'work to do' etc. and these are commonly satisfactory translations for the Kituba /maza ya kunwa/, /kisalu ya kusala/ etc. However, the relative paucity of adjectives in Kituba makes this structure more widely used than is the English infinitive in the usage illustrated above and phrases such as 'an open door' are frequently expressed in Kituba by this structure with a verb meaning 'to be open'.

Drill 7.4 Grammar Drill on Adjectival Phrase with /ya/ + verb

a) Simple Substitution Drill

Nani ke na	maza ya kunwa?
	matiti ya kuzenga?
	mbisi ya kulamba?
	malala ya kuteka?
	mbongo ya kufuta?
	kisalu ya kusala?
	nsusu ya kunata?

Who has some drinking water (water to drink)?

vegetables to wrap?

meat to cook?

oranges to sell?

money to pay?

work to do?

chicken(s) to bring/
take?

b) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePatternSofi ke na kusosa malala ya kusumba.Sophie is looking
for oranges to
buy.ndunda Sofi ke na kusosa ndunda ya kusumba.kunata Sofi ke na kusosa ndunda ya kunata.mu Mu ke na kusosa ndunda ya kunata.kutala Mu ke na kutala ndunda ya kunata.mukanda Mu ke na kutala mukanda ya kunata.kutanga Mu ke na kutala mukanda ya kutanga.nani Nani ke na kutala mukanda ya kutanga?kuzola Nani ke na kuzola mukanda ya kutanga?mbongo Nani ke na kuzola mbongo ya kutanga?kudia Nani ke na kuzola mbongo ya kudia?Who wants money
to spend?Sofi Sofi ke na kuzola mbongo ya kudia.kusosa Sofi ke na kusosa mbongo ya kudia.malala Sofi ke na kusosa malala ya kudia.

kusumba Sofi ke na kusosa malala ya kusumba.

c) Simple Substitution Drill

Pesila munu mankondo ya kuteka na Polo.	Give Paul on my behalf bananas for sale.
maza ya kunwa na mwana.	Give the child on my behalf water to drink.
mikanda ya kutanga na nlongi.	Give the teacher on my behalf books to read.
malala ya kunata na Za.	Give John on my behalf oranges to carry.
kamio ya kutambusa na yandi.	Give him on my behalf a truck to drive.
mikanda ya kusonika na Zozefu.	Give Joseph on my be- half letters to write.
mbongo ya kufuta na podisi.	Give the policeman on my behalf money to pay.
midiki ya kunwa na bana.	Give the children on my behalf milk to drink.

Drill 7.5 REVIEW DRILLS *unreconled*

a) Controlled Dialogue Drill (The student takes part B in the following conversations, looking only at the English summary of part B in the left-hand column. The instructor or another student provides part A.)

You are going to the market to sell bananas. A friend questions you about your purpose. Answer his questions.

A. Na inki ndambu nge ke na
kwenda?

B. Mu ke na kwenda na zandu.

A. Inki nge ke kwenda sala
kuna?

B. Mu ke kwenda teka mankondo.

Your friend wishes to buy.
Your asking price is 15 francs
(three five-franc pieces) for
five. When he bargains, ex-
plain that because of his
being your friend (because of
him) you will sell for ten
francs (two five-franc coins).

A. Ntalu ikwa na mankondo tanu?

B. Pata tatu na mankondo tanu.

A. Nge lenda kakula?

B. Samu na nge pesa pata zole.

In reply to your friends'
question inform him you have
oranges to sell. Your price
is four francs for ten
oranges.

A. Nge ke na malala?

B. E, mu ke na malala ya
kuteka.

A. Ntalu ikwa na malala kumi?

B. Falanka iya na malala kumi.

A. Pesa munu malala kumi.

b) Controlled Dialogue Drill: Repeat the drills of part (a) above
varying the prices asked and given as suggested by the instructor.

c) Controlled Dialogue Drill (The student takes part B as before)

An elder greets you and asks
your help. Greet him and ask
what he wants.

A. Mbote na nge mwana ya
bakala.

B. Mbote na nge mbuta muntu.

A. Nge lenda sadisa munu?

B. E, tata, inki nge zola?

Tell him in response to his question to look there, to cross six streets, and that the street he seeks is the seventh.

A. Mu ke na kusosa balabala
Balumbu.

B. Tala kuna, luta babalabala
sambanu, ina ya nsombodia
ikele Balumbu.

In response to his further question inform him that you (and he) are now in Prince Baudoin Street.

A. Na inki ndambu ikele dala-
kisio ya Prince Baudoin?

B. Malumalu yai betu ke na
Prince Baudoin.

In response to his offer say that we don't pay people for assistance. Take leave of him.

A. Mu zola futa nge.

B. Kiadi; betu ke kufutaka
bantu samu na lusadisu ve.

A. Melesi mingi. Bikala mbote.

B. E, kwenda mbote tata.

- d) Minimal Dialogue Drill: Answer the following questions in the affirmative, substituting the appropriate pronouns in the answer.

Q. Mama ke na kupusa pusu pusu? A. E, yandi ke na kupusu yau.

Q. Bana me kunwaka midiki? A. E, bau me kunwaka yau.

Q. Madi zaba tambusa velo? A. E, yandi zaba tambusa yau.

Q. Nge ke kwiza na nkokila? A. E, mu ke kwiza na ntangu yina.

Q. Benu ke kwenda na manima? A. E, betu ke kwenda kuna.

Q. Podisi kangaka muyibi? A. E, yandi kangaka yandi.

Q. Polo me zengaka ndunda? A. E, yandi me zengaka yau.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| Q. Benu ke kwenda na dibungu? | A. E, betu ke kwenda kuna. |
| Q. Nge kwendaka sumba malala? | A. E, mu kwendaka sumba yau. |
| Q. Nkumbu _n a nge ke Madi? | A. E, ya(u) ke Madi. |
| Q. Yandi monaka dokotolo? | A. E, yandi monaka _y andi. |
| Q. Bau ke vutuka na bwala? | A. E, bau ke vutuka kuna. |

(Note: A certain amount of variation in the answers is, of course, possible, and the instructor should accept any correct answer.)

- e) Minimal Dialogue Drill: Answer the questions in part (d) above in the negative, e.g.:

- | | |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Q. Mama ke na kupusa pusu pusu? | A. Ve, yandi ke na kupusa yau |
| | etc. ve. |

- f) Minimal Dialogue Drill: Answer the following questions in the affirmative employing in the answer the key word(s) provided in parentheses:

- | | |
|---------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| Q. Sofi, inki nge ke na
kusosa? (kitambala) | A. Mu ke na kusosa kitambala. |
| Q. Nani kwendaka na zandu?
(kolodoni) | A. Kolodoni kwendaka kuna. |
| Q. Inki nge me kudia? (mbisi
ya maza na bumbulutele) | A. Mu me kudia mbisi ya maza
na bumbulutele. |
| Q. Banani ke vwandaka na benu?
(Kalala na Meto) | A. Kalala na Meto ke vwandaka
na betu. |
| Q. Nkumbu n'andi ke nani?
(Maligeliti) | A. Nkumbu n'andi ke Maligeliti./
Yau ke Maligeliti. |

- Q. Na inki ntangu benu ke tuba? (mbasi na midi) A. Betu ke tuba mbasi na midi.
- Q. Inki ndambu nge ke na kwenda? (dibungu) A. Mu ke na kwenda na dibungu.
- g) Minimal Dialogue Drill: Answer the following questions in the affirmative. Use in the answer the key word(s) provided, making whatever other changes in the sentence are required.
- Q. Nge me teka malala? (ntama) A. E, mu me tekaka malala ntama.
- Q. Yandi ke sumba midiki? (kusumbila benu) A. E, yandi ke sumbila benu midiki.
- Q. Nge ke zenga matiti? (na nkokila) A. E, mu ke zenga matiti na nkokila.
- Q. Nge ke kwenda na kalasi? (malumalu yai) A. E, mu ke na kwenda na kalasi malumalu yai.
- Q. Wapi Piele? (kwenda kusakana)(ntama) A. Piele me kwendaka sakana ntama.
- Q. Madi me kufwa? (ntama) A. E, Madi me kufwaka ntama.
- Q. Bau me kwenda? (Amelike) A. E, bau me kwenda na Amelike.

- h) Minimal Dialogue Drill: Answer the following questions in the negative. Then give the correct information using the cues provided in two ways: 1) in a complete sentence 2) using the word /kasi/ 'but' following the negative answer and adding the correct information.

Q. Nge me sumbilaka A.1 Ve, mu me sumbilaka A.2 Ve, mu me sumbi-
mwana dimpa? yandi dimpa ve. Mu laka yandi dimpa
(dilala) me sumbilaka yandi ve kasi dilala.
dilala.

Q. Betu ke tanga A.1 Ve, betu ke tanga A.2 Ve, betu ke tanga
mukanda yai? yai ve. Betu ke yai ve kasi yina.
(yina) tanga mukanda yina.

Q. Nge ke na bampa- A.1 Ve, mu ke na bampa- A.2 Ve, mu ke na
ngi zole ya ngi zole ya bake- bampangi zole ya
bakento? (tatu) nto ve. Mu ke na bakento ve kasi
(ya babakala) bampangi tatu ya tatu ya babakala.
babakala.

Q. Nkumbu ya mpangi A.1 Ve, yau ke Za ve. A.2 Ve, yau ke Za ve
na nge ke Za? Yau ke Zile. kasi Zile.
(Zile)

Q. Bau ke kwenda na A.1 Ve, bau ke kwenda A.2 Ve, bau ke kwenda
Uganda? (Mputu) na Uganda ve. Bau na Uganda ve kasi
ke kwenda na Mputu. na Mputu.

Q. Nge ke kalaka? A.1 Ve, mu ke kalaka A.2 Ve, mu ke kalaka
(taye) ve. Mu ke taye. ve kasi taye.

DIALOGUE: HELP IN THE HOME

Mimí

(Given name or nickname
for a girl)

Mimi

bānda

since (from ku-bānd-a 'to
start')

ku-tek-a maza

to fetch water

n.satu (ba-)

hunger, desire

kufwa nsatu

to be hungry ('die of
desire')

Mama, banda nge kwendaka teka

Mother, since you went to draw

maza, mu vwandaka kufwa

water, I have been dying of

nsatu mingi.

(great) hunger.

Mama

ku-vibidil-a

to be patient

Mu zaba, Mimi, vibidila

I know, Mimi, wait a bit, we'll

fioti, betu ke kudia.

eat.

Mimi

atá

even, though

Mama, nge lenda pesa munu

Mama, can't you even give me

ata midiki ve?

[some] milk?

Mama

samu na inki?

why?

ku-bak-a

to take, to get

ku-ki-bak.il-a

to take for oneself

fidigó (ba-)

Fr: Frigo (brand name);
refrigerator

Samu na inki nge kukibakilaka

Why didn't you get yourself

midiki na fidigo ve?

[some] milk from the refrigera-
tor?

Mimi

ku-měk-a

to try

Mu mekaka ngolo, kansi mu

I tried hard but I couldn't

lendaka zibula yau ve.

open it.

Mama

fofolo (ma-)

match box (hence; matches)

suku (ma-)

room

ku-lal-a

to lie down, to sleep

Na ntangu mu ke vwanda bakila

While I'm getting it for you go

nge yau, kwenda sosila

find me some matches in the

munu fofolo na suku ya

bedroom.

kulala.

Mimi

ku-pěl-a

to burn (intransitive)

ku-pěd.is-a

to light, ignite, stir up
(a fire)

tiya (ba-)

fire, electric power,
heat

Mama, nge zona mu pedisila
nge tiya?

Mother, do you want me to start
the fire for you?

Mama

ku-yok-a

to burn (transitive)

ku-ki-yok-a

to burn oneself

ku-suk.ul-a

to wash, to clean
(transitive)

ku-suk.ud.is-a

to have someone wash,
to help someone wash

di-longa (ma-)

dish

Bika; mu zona nge kukiyoka
ve. Kana nge zona bosi
nge sukudisa munu malonga.

Don't ('Give up'); I don't want
you to burn yourself. If you
wish (then) you [may] help me
wash the dishes.

Mimi

ku-bul.akan-a

to be potentially broken - i.e. to be
breakable

Na inki kima bau ke sukudilaka
malonga ina ke bulakanaka?

In what are the breakable dishes
washed? ('In what thing they
habitually wash using [it] the
dishes which are potentially
broken?')

Mama

ku-ving-a to expect

ku-vingil-a to wait, to await

ku-mon.is-a	to show, to cause to see, to help to see
-------------	---------------------------------------------

Vingila; mu ke monisa nge Wait, I'll show you when we (will)
ntangu betu ke sukula yau. wash them.

Mimi

mu-tindu (mi-)	type, kind, sort
----------------	------------------

ma-dia	food, comestibles
--------	-------------------

Mama, inki mutindu ya madia Mother, what kind of food do we
ke na betu? have?

Mama

mutindu na mutindu all kinds, a variety

di-dezo (ma-) bean

loso () rice

kwanga (ba-)	manioc dumpling
--------------	-----------------

n.gombe (ba-) beef ('cow')

mu-n.sambu (mi-) salt fish

[illegible]

Betu ke na madia ya mutindu	We have all sorts of food: beans,
na mutindu: madezo, loso,	rice, manioc dumplings, beef,
kwanga, ngombe, minsambu	salt fish and so forth.
na bima yankaka nkaka.	

Mimi

ku-man-a

to end, to come to an end

ku-man.is-a

to finish

Mama, ntangu betu ke manisa

Mother, when we finish eating

kudia inki kisalu nge zona

what work do you want me to

mu sala?

do?

Mama

ku-long-a

to teach

ku-long.uk-a

to learn

Ntete nge ke tekisa munu ma-

First you'll help me fetch water,

za, bosu nge ke banda lo-

then you'll begin to learn

nguka bantalu.

[study] the numbers.

Mimi

Kasi mama, inki ntangu mu

But Mother, when will I go to

ke kwenda lala?

sleep?

Mama

ku-vut.uk.is-a

to come back

Nge ke lala kana tat_a n^a

You'll sleep when your father

nge me vutukisa na kisalu.

returns ('has returned') from
work.

Drill 8.1 SUPPLEMENTARY VOCABULARY

a) Simple Substitution Drill

Kwenda sosila munu	<u>katini</u> ya maza. (ba-)	Go look for a bucket of water for me.
	<u>ki-tunga</u> ya malala. (bi-)	...a basket of oranges...
	<u>m.bidika</u> ya maza. (ba-)	...kettle/pot of water...
	<u>mu-langi</u> ya <u>malafu</u> . (mi-)	...a bottle of wine/ liquor...
	<u>n.zungu</u> ya madezo. (ba-)	...pan/pot of beans.

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Yandi lendaka	sumbila Madi ata <u>bilele</u> ve. [ki-lele (bi-)]	He wasn't able to buy Mary even clothes.
	sukudila ¹ yau ata na <u>sabuni</u> na <u>nsanu</u> ve. [sabuni (ba-)], [n.sanu (ba-)]	...to wash it even with soap and sponge.
	lambila ata na <u>kikuku</u> ya mama ve. [ki-kuku (bi-)]	...to cook even in Mother's kitchen.
	lambila ata na <u>dikukwa</u> ya nge ve. [di-kukwa (ma-)]	...to cook even on/with your stove.

c) Simple Substitution Drill

Na inki kilumbu Za	ke sukudisa nge inzo?	On what day is John going to help you wash the house?
	ke sumbila nge <u>kisangala</u> ya malafu? [ki-sangala (bi-)]	...going to buy you a demi-john of wine.

1

Note the use of .il- extension in its instrumental sense (See

Note 8.1.2

d) Sample Sentence Drill

Natina munu yau awa, tula yau
vana na meza. (ku-tul-a)

Bring it right here for me,
put it right there on the
table.

Natina munu yau kwaku, pusa
yau kuna na nzila.

Bring it here for me, push
it there in the road.

e) Simple Substitution Drill

Nani mekaka tina? [ku-tin-a]

Who tried to escape?¹

timuka?
[ku-tim.uk-a]

...to jump/fly?

zaula?
[ku-zaul-a]

...to run/run away?

vwata bilele kasi
nsampatu ve?
[n.sampatu
(ba-)] [ku-vwat-a]

...to wear the clothes but not
the shoes?

kwenda lala na
mfulu? [m.fulu
(ba-)]

...to go sleep in [the] bed?

Drill 8.2 VARIATION DRILLS ON PATTERN SENTENCES

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Tata mekaka kasi yandi lendaka bula
yau ve.

Dad tried but he
couldn't break
it.

betu Betu mekaka kasi betu lendaka bula yau ve.

kwenda Betu kwendaka kasi betu lendaka bula yau ve.

1

Ku-tin-a also may be translated 'to fear, to avoid'.

	Betu kwendaka kasi betu <u>lendaka</u> bula yau ve.
kuzona	Betu kwendaka kasi betu zonaka <u>bula</u> yau ve.
kunata	Betu kwendaka kasi betu zonaka nata <u>yau</u> ve.
kima	<u>Betu</u> kwendaka kasi <u>betu</u> zonaka nata kima ve.
nani	Nani <u>kwendaka</u> kasi yandi zonaka nata kima ve?
kumona	Nani monaka kasi yandi <u>zonaka</u> nata kima ve?
kubanda	Nani monaka kasi yandi bandaka <u>nata</u> kima ve?
kuvutula	Nani monaka kasi yandi bandaka vutula <u>kima</u> ve?
mulangi	<u>Nani</u> monaka kasi yandi bandaka vutula mulangi ve?
tata	Tata <u>monaka</u> kasi yandi bandaka vutula mulangi ve.
kumeka	Tata mekaka kasi yandi <u>bandaka</u> vutula mulangi ve.
kulenda	Tata mekaka kasi yandi lendaka <u>vutula</u> mulangi ve.
kubula	Tata mekaka kasi yandi lendaka bula <u>mulangi</u> ve.
yau	Tata mekaka kasi yandi lendaka bula yau ve.

b) Random Substitution Drill

CuePattern

	Inki mutindu ya <u>madia</u> ke na betu?	What kind of food do we have?
bana	Inki mutindu ya bana ke na <u>betu</u> ?	
bau	Inki mutindu ya bana ke na <u>bau</u> ?	
nge	Inki mutindu ya <u>bana</u> ke na nge?	
mayele	Inki mutindu ya mayele ke na <u>nge</u> ?	What sort of intelligence do you have?

Inki mutindu ya mayele ke na nge?

Za Inki mutindu ya mayele ke na Za?

munu Inki mutindu ya mayele ke na munu?

mbidika Inki mutindu ya mbidika ke na munu?

nkento Inki mutindu ya nkento ke na munu?

Kalala Inki mutindu ya nkento ke na Kalala?

kitunga Inki mutindu ya kitunga ke na Kalala?

Madi Inki mutindu ya kitunga ke na Madi?

sabuni Inki mutindu ya sabuni ke na Madi?

yandi Inki mutindu ya sabuni ke na yandi?

mfulu Inki mutindu ya mfulu ke na yandi?

madezo Inki mutindu ya madezo ke na yandi?

kisalu Inki mutindu ya kisalu ke na yandi?

madia Inki mutindu ya madia ke na yandi?

betu Inki mutindu ya madia ke na betu?

c) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Banda mama sukulaka malonga

Since Mother washed
the dishes.

kana Kana mama sukulaka malonga.

Mimi Kana Mimi sukulaka malonga.

If/when/in case...

kunata Kana Mimi nataka malonga.

mulangi Kana Mimi nataka mulangi.

ntangu Ntangu Mimi nataka mulangi.

When Mimi...

Ntangu Mimi nataka mulangi.

nge Ntangu nge nataka mulangi?

kumonisa Ntangu nge monisaka mulangi?

nsanu Ntangu nge monisaka nsanu?

banda Banda nge monisaka nsanu?

mama Banda mama monisaka nsanu.

kusukula Banda mama sukulaka nsanu.

malonga Banda mama sukulaka malonga.

d) Simple Substitution Drill

unrecorded

Tubila munu kana nge kufwa nsatu ya	manga.	Tell me ('Sáy for me') if/when you get hungry for mango.
	maza.	...thirsty for water.
	malafu.	...thirsty for wine.
	midiki.	...thirsty for milk.
	malala.	...hungry for oranges.
	kudia.	...hungry (to eat).
	kunwa maza.	...thirsty (to drink water).

e) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Kudia ata dimpa ve.

Don't even eat bread.

kutula Kutula ata dimpa ve.

Don't even set out ('put') bread.

sizo Kutula ata sizo ve.

Don't even lay down ('put') scissors.

Kutula ata sizo ve.

kunata Kunata ata sizo ve.

kima mosi Kunata ata kima mosi ve.

kumonisa Kumonisa ata kima mosi ve.

maza Kumonisa ata maza ve.

kunwa Kunwa ata maza ve.

midiki Kunwa ata midiki ve.

kusumba Kusumba ata midiki ve.

kwanga Kusumba ata kwanga ve.

kudia Kudia ata kwanga ve.

dimpa Kudia ata dimpa ve.

f) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Inki ntangu podisi ke kanga yandi?

When is the police-man going to arrest him?

muyibi Inki ntangu podisi ke kanga muyibi?

kilumbu Inki kilumbu podisi ke kanga muyibi?

Za Inki kilumbu Za ke kanga muyibi?

nsusu Inki kilumbu Za ke kanga nsusu?

What day is John going to catch the chicken?

imvu Inki imvu Za ke kanga nsusu?

Polo Inki imvu Polo ke kanga nsusu?

matiti Inki imvu Polo ke kanga matiti?

What year is Paul going to bind hay?

Inki imvu Polo ke kanga matiti?

ntangu Inki ntangu Polo ke kanga matiti?

podisi Inki ntangu podisi ke kanga matiti?

yandi Inki ntangu podisi ke kanga yandi?

g) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Vingila, mu ke na kulamba loso.

Wait, I'm cooking
rice.

kuvibidila Vibidila, mu ke na kulamba loso.

betu Vibidila, betu ke na kulamba loso.

kusukula Vibidila, betu ke na kusukula loso.

bilele Vibidila, betu ke na kusukula bilele.

kwiza Kwiza, betu ke na kusukula bilele.

mama Kwiza, mama ke na kusukula bilele.

kuvutula Kwiza, mama ke na kuvutula bilele.

kwanga Kwiza, mama ke na kuvutula kwanga.

kuvingila Vingila, mama ke na kuvutula kwanga.

mu Vingila, mu ke na kuvutula kwanga.

kulamba Vingila, mu ke na kulamba kwanga.

losa Vingila, mu ke na kulamba loso.

h) Minimal Dialogue Drill: Make responses to the following utterances utilizing the pattern 'Na inki kifulu...' and employing the cue provided in the left hand column. One possible response is printed as part B. *unrecorded*

1. A. Madi, kwenda sosila munu fofolo. Mary, go find me matches.

kubika yau

B. Na inki kifulu nge bikaka yau?

2. A. Mu zona yobila kasi mu ke na kumona ata sabuni ve.

mama
kubika yau

B. Na inki kifulu mama bikaka yau?

3. A. Bana ke na kufwa nsatu ya maza. The kids are thirsty.

kutula
mbidiki ya
maza

B. Na inki kifulu nge tulaka mbidika ya maza? Where did you put the kettle of water?

4. A. Muyibi mosi zonaka kota na inzo na betu. A thief wanted to enter our house.

kumona
podisi

B. Na inki kifulu nge monaka podisi?

5. A. Za na Maligeliti kwizaka sosa nge. John and Marguerite came to look for you.

kwenda

B. Na inki kifulu bau me kwenda?

6. A. Bau ke na mbongo ya kusumbila bilele ve. They don't have money to buy clothes with.

kutula
mbongo
kupesa bau

B. Na inki kifulu bau tulaka

mbongo mu pesaka bau?

7. A. Betu ke ata na kima mosi ya kudia ve. We haven't a single thing to eat.

kutula
dimpa
kusumbila
benu

B. Na inki kifulu nge tulaka

dimpa ina mu sumbilaka benu?

i) Controlled Dialogue Drill: Student takes part B: *unrecorded*

You are planning to enter Mimi in a school in the vicinity of the large hospital in the morning.

Mimi: Mama, na inki ntangu nge ke kwenda kotisa munu na kalasi?

B: Mu ke kotisa nge na kalasi na suka.

Mimi: Na inki ndambu ikele kalasi yina?

B: Yau ikele na ndambu ya
lupitalu ya nene.

Tell her you plan to pay money
but not much. You don't know
how much - you'll know tomor-
row.

Mimi: Samu na kukotisa munu na
kalasi nge ke futa mbongo?

B: E, munu ke futa mbongo kasi
mingi ve.

Mimi: Ntalu ikwa nge ke futa?

B: Mu zaba ntalu mu ke futa
ve, mu ke zaba mbasi.

You haven't bought books for
her yet because you don't know
what kind to buy. First they
will teach her to read and to
write words (mambu) and
figures.

(not yet = ntete...ve)

Mimi: Nge me sumbilaka munu mikanda
ya kunata na kalasi?

B: Mu me sumbila nge ntete
mikanda ve samu mu zaba
mutindu ya mikanda ina ya
kusumba ve.

Mimi: Inki mambu bau ke longa munu
na kalasi?

B: Ntete bau ke longa nge kutanga
na kusonika mambu na bantalu.

If you don't have time, her
father will take her on [his]
bicycle. She won't get lost
because she is smart, but if
she has gotten lost she is to
ask the aid of a policeman.

Mimi: Kana nge ke na ntangu ve,
nani ke nata munu na kalasi?

B: Kana mu ke na ntangu ve,
tata na nge ke natima nge na
velo.

Mimi: Kana mu me zimbala inki mu
ke sala?

B: O Mimi, nge ke kuzimbala ve
samu nge ke mayele mingi;
kasi kana nge me zimbala
yufusa lusadisu ya podisi.

She will eat food which you
will put in a basket. You will
put in two small [loaves of]
bread, two pieces of meat,
three oranges, a bottle of
milk and another of water.

Mimi: Na midi kana mu kufwa nsatu
inki mu ke sala?

B: Bosi nge kudia madia ina
mu ke tula na kitunga.

Mimi: Ina ke mbote mingi; kasi inki
mutindu ya madia nge ke tula
kuna?

B: Mu ke tula kuna mampa zole
ya fioti, ndambu zole ya
mbisi, malala tatu, mulangi
mosi ya midiki na yankaka ya
maza.

She will return in the even-
ing. She will wash, you all
will eat, and at last (na
manima) she will go to bed
(to sleep).

Mimi: Inki ntangu mu ke vutuka
kwaku?

B: Nge ke vutuka kwaku na
nkokila.

Mimi: Inki mu ke kwiza sala

kwaku ntangu mu vutuka?

B: Nge ke yobila, betu ke

kudia, bosi na manima nge

ke kwenda lala na mfulu.

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 8.1 Some Verb Extensions

1. 'Reflexive' prefix /ki-/, with and without extension
/.il-/.in-/

a) In Note 5.1 the verb extension /.il-/.in/ was introduced with its meaning of 'for' or 'on behalf of' someone. In this unit occur further examples of this extension in this meaning:

Mu ke vwanda bakila nge yau.

I will go to get it
for you.

Nge zona mu pedisila nge tiya?

Do you want me to light
the fire for you?

Also in this unit occurs the following example of this extension combined with a verbal prefix, /-ki-/, prefixed to the root but following the /ku-/ prefix; which is obligatory on this form.

Samu na inki nge kukibakilaka
midiki na fidigo ve?

Why didn't you get some
milk from the refrigera-
tor for yourself?

The prefix without the extension is exemplified in the sentence:

Mu zona nge kukiyoka ve.

I don't want you to
burn yourself.

These sentences exemplify a 'reflexive' verbal extension which is a prefix, /-ki-/ occurring before the root but after the obligatory /ku-/ prefix. When this prefix represents the only object of a transitive verb the extension /.il-/.in-/ is not used. When there is another object (as /midiki/ in the example), the extension /.il-/.in-/ combines with the prefix to carry a meaning 'for/on behalf of oneself'.

2. The 'applicative' extension, /.il-/.in-/ used to express 'instrument' etc.

In the sentence

Na inki kima bau ke sukudilaka
malonga...?

In what thing to they
wash the dishes...?

the extension /.il-/ occurs together with the mention of an instrument /na inki kima/ 'in what thing' used for the performance of the action. Other examples are:

Yandi kwendilaka na kamio.

He went by truck.

Mu ke na kubudila mwana na
mukanda.

I'm striking the child
with a book.

A convenient way to think of this extension plus /na/ in such sentences is in terms of the English phrase 'use...for' - we use a tool for performing a task. Thus the three sentences above might be rendered:

What do they use for washing the dishes...?

He used a truck for going.

I'm using a book for hitting the child.

In some cases the item following /na/ is clearly not the instrument of the action but the relatively passive means or locale of the action. Note these two sentences for Drill 8.1 (b)

Yandi lendaka lambila	He wasn't able to cook even
ata na kikuku ya mama ve.	in Mother's kitchen. ('even
	using Mother's kitchen')

Yandi lendaka lambila ata	He wasn't able to cook even
na dikukwa na nge ve.	on/with your stove.

In these examples the kitchen and the stove are in some sense instrumental to the cooking and this relationship emphasized by ata 'even', is fairly clear. In some contexts the relationship is more subtle:

Mu sosilaka bana na inzo.	It was at home I looked for
	the children.

Here it is only by a stretch of the imagination that one conceives of the house as an instrument of the search. But the extension /.il-/ does here emphasize the place as the locale of the search.

Compare:

Mu sosaka bana.	I looked for the children.
-----------------	----------------------------

Mu kwendaka na zandu kusosa	I went to the market to look
bana.	for the children.

Mu kwendaka na zandu samu	I went to the market in order
na kusosa bana.	to look for the children.

Mu kwendaka sosa bana na	I went looking for the chil-
zandu.	dren in the market.

Mu kwendaka sosila bana
na zandu.

It was to the market I went
looking for the children.
(The market was the place
used for the search.)

This extension also occurs without na. Note the sentence from
Drill 8.2 (h):

Bau ke na mbongo ya
kusumbila bilele ve.

They don't have money to buy
clothing with.

Here the verbal form is a modifier (with ya) of mbongo rather
than the main verb of the predicate. Compare:

Bau sumbilaka bilele na
mbongo.

They used money to buy clothing.

Note 8.2 /kuzola/kuzona/ as an auxiliary verb

To date the verb /kuzola/kuzona/ has occurred mainly in its
full verbal sense of 'to like, to love, to want, to desire'. As
an auxiliary (followed by another verb in a verb phrase) this verb
carries the sense of to want to do the action of the following verb:

Yandi zola mona bana n'andi. He wants to see his children.

However, in some contexts this sense is patently impossible. This
verb, as an auxiliary, also signifies that the action of the fol-
lowing verb is imminent - about to happen. In such cases the
suitable translation is 'about to', 'almost';

Yandi zolaka kufwa. He wanted to die. He was about to
die. He almost died.

Following a conditional clause with /kana/ 'if/when' /kuzola/ is

used to indicate that, had the condition been true, the action of the following verb would have happened:

Kana Piele monaka podisi yandi zolaka tubila yandi.

Had Peter seen a policeman he would have told him (but he didn't see one).

These usages are illustrated in some of the following drills.

Drill 8.3 Grammar Drills on Verbal Extensions

- a) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute Main Verbs in the 'Reflexive' form (with prefix /-ki-/))

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>Mimi</u> zonaka kukiyoka.	Mimi was about to burn herself.
nani	Nani <u>zonaka</u> kukiyoka?	Who wanted to burn himself?
kubanda	Nani bandaka <u>kukiyoka</u> ?	
kupusa	<u>Nani</u> bandaka kukipusa?	Who began to push himself? (As to push himself on a wagon.)
Andele	Andele <u>bandaka</u> kukipusa.	
kumeka	Andele mekaka <u>kukipusa</u> .	Andrew tried to push himself.
kukanga	<u>Andele</u> mekaka kukikanga.	Andrew tried to tie himself up.
betu	Betu <u>mekaka</u> kukikanga.	
kubikala	Betu bikalaka <u>kukikanga</u> .	We remained [here] [and] tied ourselves up.
kuzenga	<u>Betu</u> bikalaka kukizenga.	We remained [here] [and] cut ourselves.

Betu bikalaka kukizenga.

bau Bau bikalaka kukizenga.

kwenda Bau kwendaka kukizenga. They went [and] cut themselves.

kuyufusa Bau kwendaka kukiufufusa. They went [and] wondered (asked themselves).

Mimi Mimi kwendaka kukiufufusa.

kuzona Mimi zonaka kukiufufusa.

kuyoka Mimi zonaka kukiufuka.

b) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute Verbs with /.il/.in-/ extension)

Cue

Pattern

Madi me futila nge malala. Mary has paid oranges for you.

nani Nani me futila nge malala?

kusumba Nani me sumbila nge malala?

Kalala Nani me sumbila Kalala malala?

loso Nani me sumbila Kalala loso?

Maligeliti Maligeliti me sumbila Kalala loso.

kulamba Maligeliti me lambila Kalala loso.

munu Maligeliti me lambila munu loso.

kwanga Maligeliti me lambila munu kwanga.

Madi Madi me lambila munu kwanga.

kufuta Madi me futila munu kwanga.

nge Madi me futila nge kwanga.

malala Madi me futila nge malala.

c) Progressive Substitution-Modification Drill (Substitute Second Verbs with /.il-/.in-/ extension and in reflexive form)

CuePattern

	<u>Kwenda</u> kukisumbila malala ve.	Don't go and buy yourself oranges.
kwiza	Kwiza <u>kukisumbila</u> malala ve.	
kukanga	Kwiza kukikangila <u>malala</u> ve.	
mankondo	<u>Kwiza</u> kukikangila mankondo ve.	
kumeka	Meka <u>kukikangila</u> mankondo ve.	Don't try to tie up bananas for yourself.
kulamba	Meka kukilambila <u>mankondo</u> ve.	
madezo	<u>Meka</u> kukilambila madezo ve.	
kubanda	Banda <u>kukilambila</u> madezo ve.	Don't start to cook yourself beans.
kunata	Banda kukinatina <u>madezo</u> ve.	
minsambu	<u>Banda</u> kukinatina minsambu ve.	
kubikala	Bikala <u>kukinatina</u> minsambu ve.	
kuzenga	Bikala kukizengila <u>minsambu</u> ve.	
matiti	<u>Bikala</u> kukizengila matiti ve.	
kwenda	Kwenda <u>kukizengila</u> matiti ve.	
kusumba	Kwenda kukisumbila <u>matiti</u> ve.	
malala	Kwenda kukisumbila malala ve.	

- d) Progressive Substitution-Modification-Correlation Drill
(Substitute verbs in the reflexive form and make any other changes suitable to the context)

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	<u>Mbasi</u> mu ke kukinatina na pusu pusu.	Tomorrow I'll transport myself by push-cart.
mazono	Mazono <u>mu</u> kukinatinaka na pusu pusu.	
Madi	Mazono Madi <u>kukinatinaka na pusu pusu</u> .	
kuyoka na tiya	<u>Mazono</u> Madi kukiyokaka ¹ na tiya.	Yesterday Mary burned herself (with fire).
ntangu yonso	Ntangu yonso <u>Madi</u> ke kukiyokaka na tiya.	
bau	Ntangu yonso bau ke <u>kukiyokaka na tiya</u> .	
kusumba loso	<u>Ntangu yonso</u> bau ke kukisumbilaka loso.	They always buy themselves rice.
mbasi	Mbasi <u>bau</u> ke kukisumbila loso.	
bakento	Mbasi bakento ke <u>kukisumbila loso</u> .	
kuteka maza	<u>Mbasi</u> bakento ke kukitekila maza.	
bilumbu lutaka	Bilumbu lutaka <u>bakento</u> kukitekila maza.	
bana	Bilumbu lutaka bana <u>kukitekila maza</u> .	
kubaka bilele	<u>Bilumbu lutaka</u> bana kukibakilaka bilele.	
mbasi	Mbasi <u>bana</u> ke kukibakila bilele.	

¹ Note: kukiyokilaka is possible and would mean 'used fire to burn herself [on purpose]'.

Mbasi bana ke kukibakila bilele.

mu Mbasi mu ke kukibakila bilele.

kunata na Mbasi me ke kukinatina na pusu pusu.
pusu pusu

e) Simple Substitution Drill

Na inki kima bau	ke sukudilaka malonga?	What does one wash dishes in?
	me nwinaka maza?	What have they drunk water out of [a while ago]?
	ke natinaka malala?	What are oranges carried in?
	ke kombilaka inzo?	What is the house swept with?
	ke sumbilaka loso?	What is used to buy rice?
	ke kangilaka matiti?	In what are vegetables wrapped?
	ke pedisilaka tiya?	What's used to start the fire?
	ke tungilaka inzo?	What do they build houses with?
	ke zibudilaka malata?	With what does one open cans?
	ke kwendilaka na maza?	What does one go to the water in?
	ke bandilaka zenga bansinga?	With what does one begin to cut rope?
	ke manisinaka nsatu ya kudia?	What is used to satisfy hunger? ('end desire for food')

Na inki kima bau ke sonikinaka mikanda?

What is used to write books with?

ke kwendilaka na Leo?

What is used to go to Leopoldville?

f) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Betu ke sukudilaka malonga na maza.

We use water to wash dishes.

nani Nani ke sukudilaka malonga na maza?

kusosa Nani ke sosilaka malonga na maza?

Who searches in the river for dishes? ('Use the river to look for dishes')

bansanu Nani ke sosilaka bansanu na maza?

inzo Nani ke sosilaka bansanu na inzo?

nge Nge ke sosilaka bansanu na inzo?

me monisa Nge me monisina bansanu na inzo?

Is it in the house you have shown sponges?

bilele Nge me monisina bilele na inzo?

zandu Nge me monisina bilele na zandu?

betu Betu me monisina bilele na zandu.

It's in the market we have shown the clothes.

ke sukula Betu ke sukudilaka bilele na zandu.

malonga Betu ke sukudilaka malonga na zandu.

maza Betu ke sukudilaka malonga na maza.

g) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Madi ke lambila madezo na nzungu. Mary will use a
pot to cook
beans.

mama	Mama ke <u>lambila</u> madezo na nzungu.
kusukula	Mama ke sukudila <u>madezo</u> na nzungu.
munsambu	Mama ke sukudila munsambu na <u>nzungu</u> .
katini	<u>Mama</u> ke sukudila munsambu na katini.
nani	Nani ke <u>sukudila</u> munsambu na katini?
kusumba	Nani ke sumbila <u>munsambu</u> na katini?
mampa	Nani ke sumbila mampa na <u>katini</u> ?
kitunga	<u>Nani</u> ke sumbila mampa na kitunga?
Za	Za ke <u>sumbila</u> mampa na kitunga.
me nata	Za me natina <u>mampa</u> na kitunga.
mbisi	Za me natina mbisi na <u>kitunga</u> .
dilata	<u>Za</u> me natina mbisi na dilata.
Madi	Madi <u>me natina</u> mbisi na dilata.
ke lambila	Madi ke lambila <u>mbisi</u> na dilata.
madezo	Madi ke lambila madezo na <u>dilata</u> .
nzungu	Madi ke lambila madezo na nzungu.

h) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Polo ke na kima ya kusukudila malonga. Paul has [the]
thing for
washing [the]
dishes.

mu Mu ke na kima ya kusukudila malonga.

ke sosa Mu ke sosa kima ya kusukudila malonga.

nzungu Mu ke sosa nzungu ya kusukudila malonga.

kuvutula Mu ke sosa nzungu ya kuvutudila malonga.

madia Mu ke sosa nzungu ya kuvutudila madia. I will look for
a pot to use to
return [the]
food.

BaZa BaZa ke sosa nzungu ya kuvutudila madia.

me zimbisa BaZa me zimbisa nzungu ya kuvutudila The Johns have
lost...
madia.

katini BaZa me zimbisa katini ya kuvutudila madia.

kuzenga BaZa me zimbisa katini ya kuzengila madia.

manga BaZa me zimbisa katini ya kuzengila manga.

Polo me zimbisa katini ya kuzengila manga.

ke na Polo ke na katini ya kuzengila manga.

kima Polo ke na kima ya kuzengila manga. Paul has [the]
thing to cut
the mangos in.

kusukula Polo ke na kima ya kusukudila manga.

malonga Polo ke na kima ya kusukudila malonga.

DIALOGUE: A WEEK'S ACTIVITY

-A-

ki.esē (ba-)

gladness, joy

diaka

again, once more

Mbote Michel! Mu ke na kiese

Greetings Michel! I'm delighted

mingi ya kumona nge diaka.

to see you again.

-B-

Mbote Etienne! Mu ke mpe na

Greetings, Etienne! I too am

kiese mingi ya kumona nge.

very pleased to see you.

ku-kut-a

to meet, encounter

ku-kut.an-a

to meet one another

n.sangu (ba-)

news

Ntama betu kutanaka. Inki

It's been a long time since

nsangu?

we've met. ('We met a long
time ago.') .What news?

-A-

ku-tub.il-a

to tell ('to say for...')

Mu ke na nsangu mingi ya

I don't have much news to tell

kutubila nge ve.

you.

kaka

only, just, still

imbi (ba-)

badness, evil

ku-vund-a

to rest

lumingu (ba-)

week

Diambu mosi kaka ya imbi, mu Only one bad thing I wasn't able
 lendaka baka ntangu ya kuvu- to take time to rest last week.
 nda na lumingu lutaka ve.

-B-

congé (ba-) (Fr.); vacation
 ku-bw-a to fall, befall, hap-
 pen

Nge vwandaka na conge ve? Weren't you on vacation? What
 Inki diambu kubwaka? (thing) happened?

-A-

bonso, (kome) as; (Fr: comme)
 ke that (conjunction)
 zulu/yulu (ba-) heaven, sky, up
 na zulu above, up, on top
 na zulu ya on top of, on
 di-tadi (ma-) rock, stone
 ku-kat.uk-a to depart, leave, be
 from
 katuka from
 ti /tii/ until, to
 kilumbu ya lendi Fr: lundi; Monday

Bonso nge zaba ke mu kubwaka As you know (that) I fell on
 na zulu ya matadi, katuka [some] rocks, from Monday un-
 kilumbu ya lendi ti na kilu- till Tuesday I was going to

mbu ya zole mu vwandaka

the doctor.

kwenda na dokotolo.

ku-fimp-a

to examine

n.zutu (ba-)

body

Yandi vwandaka fimpa nzutu

He was examining my whole body.

na munu yonso.

-B-

m.vutu (ba-)

result, answer (c.f. ku-
vut.ul-a 'to return,
to answer')

Inki mvutu yandi pesaka nge?

What result did he give you?

-A-

bilongo (ba-)

medicine

ku-pāk.ul-a

to rub on, spread

Yandi pesaka munu mvutu ve;

He didn't give me any result;

kasi yandi pesaka munu bi-

he gave me medicine to drink

longo ya kunwa, na ya kupa-

and to rub on [my] back.

kula na nima.

-B-

ku-vund.is-a

to rest (transitive)

Yandi tubilaka nge vundisa

Did he tell you to rest [your]

nzutu?

(body)?

-A-

m.pila

like; way, manner
(= mutindu)

m.pidina

thus (m.pila + ina)

E, yandi tubilaka munu mpidina.

Yes, he told me that.

Mu salaka kima mosi ve na ki-

I didn't do a single thing on

Iumbu ya tatu.

Wednesday.

ku-fuk-a

to roof, cover

Kasi na kilumbu ya iya, mu

On Thursday, I went to help

kwendaka fukisa Zile inzo.

Julius put a roof on his house.

-B-

pēnepēne

near

n.gwankazi (ba-)

maternal uncle

Inki Zile? Ina vwandaka vwanda

Which Julius? The one who used

penepene na inzo ya ngwankazi

to live near your uncle's

na nge?

house?

-A-

ku-tim-a

to dig

di-bulu (ma-)

hole

E, yandi yina; bosi mpe na ki-

Yes, that one; then also on

lumbu ya tanu, yandi yufusaka

Friday he asked me to help

munu timisa yandi dibulu ya

him dig a hole for grass [weeds

matiti.

and trimmings].

-B-

ku-banz-a

to think, to suppose

ku-kun-a

to plant

inti (ba-)

tree, plant

lupangu (ba-)

lot, yard, garden, enclosure

Mu banza nge kwendaka ve, samu I guess you didn't go, because
 bau tubilaka munu ke nge I was told ('they told me')
 vwandaka kuna bainti na you were planting trees in
 lupangu _na nge. your yard.

-A-

tieleka (ba-)

truth

ya tieleka

true

di-ba (ma-)

palm

fololo (ba-)

flower

m.bwaki (ba-)

redness

ya mbwaki

red

E, ina ke ya tieleka. Mu Yes, that's true. I was plan-
 vwandaka kuna bainti, maba ting trees, palms and those
 na bafololo ya mbwaki ina red flowers you gave me.
 nge pesaka munu.

-B-

ku-fil-a

to send

Ntangu me ke baka yankaka, mu When I get others I'll send
 ke fidisa nge yau. them to you.

sabala

Saturday, sabbath (Port.)

kilumbu ya sabala

Saturday

Inki nge salaka na kilumbu
ya sabala?

What did you do on Saturday?

-A-

ku-lob-a

to fish

m.vula (ba-)

rain, year

ku-nok-a

to rain, to fall as rain

Na kilumbu ya sabala, mu zonaka
kwenda loba mbisi kasi kome
nge zaba, mvula ya ngolo
nokaka.

On Saturday I was planning to
catch fish but, as you know,
it rained hard.

yau yina

that's why, therefore

Yau yina mu vwandaka kaka na
inzo.

Therefore, I just stayed at
home.

-B-

N.zambi

God

Inzo ya Nzambi

church

Nge kwendaka na Inzo ya Nzambi
na kilumbu ya lumingu?

Did you go to church on Sunday?

-A-

ku-lam.uk-a

to get up

letale (ba-)

Fr: retard; lateness

ku-lěmb-a

to be tired

Mu zonaka kwenda kasi mu la-
mukaka na letale, bosì mpe
mu lembaka mingi.

I wanted to go but I got up
late and (then) also I was
very tired.

-B-

bika

let (auxiliary verb)

ku-samb.il-a

to worship

kati (ba-)

middle, center

na kati ya

between among

Kaliná

Ki.n.tambu

}

districts in Leopoldville

Kana nge zona na kilumbu ya
lumingu ke kwiza, bika betu
kwenda sambidila na Inzo ya
Nzambi ina ke na kati ya
Kalina na Kintambu.

If you wish, next Sunday, let's
go to worship in the church
which is between Kalina and
Kintambu ('use the church...
for worship').

-A-

n.gindu (ba-)

thought, idea

ku-sol.ül-a

to talk, to converse

na manima

afterwards, later

Ina ke ngindu ya mbote; bosì
betu ke solula na manima.

That's a good idea; then we'll
talk afterwards.

-B-

E! Kwenda mbote Etienne.

Yes, goodbye, Etienne. My

Pesaka inzo _na nge mbote!

regards to your household!

-A-

mpila mosi

same ('like one')

Melesi, mpila mosi na ya nge.

Thanks, same to yours!

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 9.1 /vwandaka/ + verb 'used to...', 'was...ing'

Note these sentences from dialogues:

Mama, banda nge kwendaka teka

Mother, since you went to

maza mu vwandaka kufwa

draw water, I've been

nsatu mingi.

dying of hunger.

...katuka kilumbu ya lendi ti

From Monday until Tuesday I

na kilumbu ya zole mu

was going to the doctor.

vwandaka kwenda na dokotolo.

Yandi vwandaka fimpa nzutu

He was examining my whole body.

na munu yonso.

...nge vwandaka kuna bainti na

You were planting trees in

lupangu na nge.

your yard.

Ina vwandaka vwanda penepene

[He] who used to live near

na inzo ya ngwankazi na nge?

your (maternal) uncle?

These sentences illustrate a verb phrase consisting of the 'past' of /kuvwanda/ plus the simple form of the verb. The phrase translates commonly as a 'past progressive' or 'present perfect progressive' phrase in English and carries much the same senses as those English constructions - namely that the activity described continued for some period (often specified) or up to the present or was going on at some time in the past at which time it was observed, interrupted or accompanied by another action. 'I have been dying of hunger', 'What were you doing that you couldn't get any rest on your vacation?' , 'For two days I was continually going to the doctor.' 'During that whole time he was examining me.' 'When observed by my informants you were planting trees.

In the last example above, however, we see an example of this construction without any context indicative of a period of time or of one activity concurrent with another. In such cases the sense is of a habitual action in the past, often better translated with the English verb-phrase construction with 'used to...'.

Drill 9.1 Grammar Drill: vwandaka + Verb 'used to...', 'was ...ing':

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

<u>Cue</u>	<u>Pattern</u>	
	Ntama <u>betu</u> vwandaka sakana na bau.	A long time ago we used to play with them.
Zile	Ntama Zile vwandaka <u>sakana</u> na bau.	
kutambula	Ntama Zile vwandaka tambula na <u>bau</u>used to walk...
Madi	Ntama <u>Zile</u> vwandaka tambula na Madi.	
nani	Ntama nani vwandaka <u>tambula</u> na Madi?	
kuzaula	Ntama nani vwandaka zaula na <u>Madi</u> ?	...used to run...
Polo	Ntama <u>nani</u> vwandaka zaula na Polo?	
benu	Ntama benu vwandaka <u>zaula</u> na Polo?	
kutimuka	Ntama benu vwandaka timuka na <u>Polo</u> ?	...used to jump...
bakombi	Ntama <u>benu</u> vwandaka timuka na bakombi?	
babakala	Ntama babakala vwandaka <u>timuka</u> na bakombi.	
kusala	Ntama babakala vwandaka sala na <u>bakombi</u>used to work...
bakento	Ntama <u>babakala</u> vwandaka sala na bakento.	
betu	Ntama betu vwandaka <u>sala</u> na bakento.	
kusakana	Ntama betu vwandaka sakana na <u>bakento</u> .	
bau	Ntama betu vwandaka sakana na bau.	

b) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Banda nge kwendaka tal_a yandi betu vwandaka sakana.

Since you went to see him we have been playing.

kubikala Banda nge bikalaka tal_a yandi betu vwandaka sakana.

Since you stayed to look after him...

kusosa Banda nge bikalaka sos_a yandi betu vwandaka sakana.

kutimuka Banda nge bikalaka sos_a yandi betu vwandaka timuka.

kubanda Banda nge bandaka sos_a yandi betu vwandaka timuka.

kuingila Banda nge bandaka vingil_a yandi betu vwandaka timuka.

kwenda Banda nge bandaka vingil_a yandi betu vwandaka kwenda.

kuvutuka Banda nge vutukaka vingil_a yandi betu vwandaka kwenda.

We've been going since you went back to wait for him.

kunata Banda nge vutukaka nat_a yandi betu vwandaka kwenda.

kuvunda Banda nge vutukaka nat_a yandi betu vwandaka vunda.

kwiza Banda nge kwizaka nat_a yandi betu vwandaka vunda.

kusadisa Banda nge kwizaka sadis_a yandi betu vwandaka vunda.

kuzaula Banda nge kwizaka sadis_a yandi betu vwandaka zaula.

kubanda Banda nge bandaka sadis_a yandi betu vwandaka zaula.

kubula Banda nge bandaka bul_a yandi betu vwandaka zaula.

kumona Banda nge bandaka bul_a yandi betu vwandaka mona.

Since you started to hit him we've been observing.

	Banda nge <u>bandaka</u> bul _a y _a ndi betu vwandaka mona.
kubikala	Banda nge bikalaka <u>bul</u> _a y _a ndi betu vwandaka mona.
kutala	Banda nge bikalaka tal _a y _a ndi betu vwandaka <u>mona</u> .
kusakana	Banda nge <u>bikalaka</u> tal _a y _a ndi betu vwandaka sakana.
kwenda	Banda nge kwendaka tal _a y _a ndi betu vwandaka sakana.

c) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Ntangu nge kwendaka betu vwandaka sonika mikanda.

When you left we were writing letters.

Michel	Ntangu Michel <u>kwendaka</u> betu vwandaka sonika mikanda.
kuzaula	Ntangu Michel zaulaka <u>betu</u> vwandaka sonika mikanda.
banani	Ntangu Michel zaulaka banani vwandaka <u>sonika</u> mikanda?
kutanga	Ntangu Michel zaulaka banani vwandaka tanga <u>mikanda</u> ?
yau	Ntangu <u>Michel</u> zaulaka banani vwandaka tanga yau?
nge	Ntangu nge <u>zaulaka</u> banani vwandaka tanga yau?
kwenda	Ntangu nge kwendaka <u>banani</u> vwandaka tanga yau?
betu	Ntangu nge kwendaka betu vwandaka <u>tanga</u> yau.
kusonika	Ntangu nge kwendaka betu vwandaka sonika <u>yau</u> .
mikanda	Ntangu nge kwendaka betu vwandaka sonika mikanda.

Note 9.2 /ya/ + Verb - Adjectival use of the verb (II)

In Note 7.2 attention was called to such constructions as /maza ya kunwa/ 'water to drink' or 'drinking water'. In this

unit occurs:

Mu ke na kiese mingi ya kumona nge diaka.

I'm delighted to see you again.

In the first case the /ya/ + verb construction is clearly modifying the noun /maza/ and the whole can easily be translated with a modifying construction using a participle in English: 'drinking water'. In the new case the same structure occurs but here the presence of an object of the verbal form in 'to see you' requires an infinitive in the English translation and obscures the identity of structure with the earlier sentence. However, /kiese/ is a noun and as such is modified by the phrase with /ya/ + verb, so that an English participial translation such as 'I have seeing-you-again joy.' might be more literal.

In the dialogue of this unit occurs one other example of this structure, this one again without an object of the verb form:

...ntangu ya kuvunda 'time to rest' or 'resting time'.

Drill 9.2 Grammar Drill /ya/ + Verb

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Yufusa kana yandi ke na malala ya kuteka.

Ask [him] if he has oranges to sell.

mbisi Yufusa kana yandi ke na mbisi ya kuteka.

kulamba Yufusa kana yandi ke na mbisi ya kulamba.

	Yufusa kana yandi ke na <u>mbisi</u> ya kulamba.
kima	Yufusa kana yandi ke na kima ya <u>kulamba</u> .
kunwa	Yufusa kana yandi ke na <u>kima</u> ya kunwa.
maza	Yufusa kana yandi ke na maza ya <u>kunwa</u> .
kunata	Yufusa kana yandi ke na <u>maza</u> ya kunata.
bilele	Yufusa kana yandi ke na bilele ya <u>kunata</u> .
kupesa	Yufusa kana yandi ke na <u>bilele</u> ya kupesa.
sabuni	Yufusa kana yandi ke na sabuni ya <u>kupesa</u> .
kusukudila	Yufusa kana yandi ke na <u>sabuni</u> ya kusukudila.

Ask if he has soap to use to wash [with].

nsanu	Yufusa kana yandi ke na nsanu ya <u>kusukudila</u> .
kumonisa	Yufusa kana yandi ke na <u>nsanu</u> ya kumonisa.
bilongo	Yufusa kana yandi ke na bilongo ya <u>kumonisa</u> .
kunwa	Yufusa kana yandi ke na <u>bilongo</u> ya kunwa.
malala	Yufusa kana yandi ke na malala ya <u>kunwa</u> .

Ask if he has oranges to suck.

kuteka	Yufusa kana yandi ke na malala ya kuteka.
--------	-------------------------------------------

b) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Nge ke vwanda na ngolo ya kusala kisalu ina?

Will you have the strength to do that work?

kiese Nge ke vwanda na kiese ya kusala kisalu ina?

Are you going to be pleased to do that work?

	Nge ke vwanda na kiese ya <u>kusala kisalu ina</u> ?
kunata yau	Nge ke vwanda na <u>kiese</u> ya kunata yau? Are you going to be willing to carry it?
mayele	Nge ke vwanda na mayele ya <u>kunata yau</u> ? Are you going to have the intelligence to carry it?
kuvwanda pene- pene	Nge ke vwanda na <u>mayele</u> ya kuvwanda penepene? Are you going to have the sense to live nearby?
ngolo	Nge ke vwanda na ngolo ya <u>kuvwanda penepene</u> ?
kusosa yandi	Nge ke vwanda na <u>ngolo</u> ya kusosa yandi?
kiadi	Nge ke vwanda na kiadi ya <u>kusosa yandi</u> ? Are you going to be sorry to look for him?
kumona yandi ve	Nge ke vwanda na <u>kiadi</u> ya kumona yandi ve?
nsatu	Nge ke vwanda na nsatu ya <u>kumona yandi ve</u> ? Are you not going to want to see him?
kutanga yau	Nge ke vwanda na <u>nsatu</u> ya kutanga yau?
ngolo	Nge ke vwanda na ngolo ya <u>kutanga yau</u> ?
kusala kisalu ina	Nge ke vwanda na ngolo ya kusala kisalu ina?

c) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

	Nge ke vwanda na <u>ntangu</u> y ^a kuvunda?	Will you have time to rest?
kilumbu	Nge ke vwanda na kilumbu y ^a <u>kuvunda</u> ?	
kusakana	Nge ke vwanda na <u>kilumbu</u> y ^a kusakana?	
ngolo	Nge ke vwanda na ngolo y ^a <u>kusakana</u> ?	
kuzaula	Nge ke vwanda na <u>ngolo</u> y ^a kuzaula?	
nsatu	Nge ke vwanda na nsatu y ^a <u>kuzaula</u> ?	Are you going to want to run?
kwiza	Nge ke vwanda na <u>nsatu</u> y ^a kwiza?	
ntangu	Nge ke vwanda na ntangu y ^a <u>kwiza</u> ?	
kuvunda	Nge ke vwanda na ntangu y ^a kuvunda?	

d) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

	Ngwankazi ke na <u>ngolo</u> y ^a kutubila.	Uncle has strength to [use for] talking.
nzila	Ngwankazi ke na nzila y ^a <u>kutubila</u> .	Uncle has a means of talking.
kwendila	Ngwankazi ke na <u>nzila</u> y ^a kwendila.	Uncle has a way of going.
velo	Ngwankazi ke na velo y ^a <u>kwendila</u> .	Uncle has a bi- cycle to use to go.
kutambudila	Ngwankazi ke na <u>velo</u> y ^a kutambudila.	
kifulu	Ngwankazi ke na kifulu y ^a <u>kutambudila</u> .	Uncle has a place to [use to] walk.

	Ngwankazi ke na kifulu <u>y</u> ^a <u>kutambudila</u> .	
kumonisa	Ngwankazi ke na <u>kifulu</u> <u>y</u> ^a kumonisa.	Uncle has a place to show.
kiese	Ngwankazi ke na kiese <u>y</u> ^a <u>kumonisa</u> .	Uncle enjoys showing [something].
kulonguka	Ngwankazi ke na <u>kiese</u> <u>y</u> ^a kulonguka.	Uncle enjoys learning.
mambu	Ngwankazi ke na mambu <u>y</u> ^a <u>kulonguka</u> .	Uncle has matters to learn.
kupesa	Ngwankazi ke na <u>mambu</u> <u>y</u> ^a kupesa.	Uncle has matters to contribute.
kima	Ngwankazi ke na kima <u>y</u> ^a <u>kupesa</u> .	Uncle has something to give.
kutubila	Ngwankazi ke na <u>kima</u> <u>y</u> ^a kutubila.	Uncle has something to use for talking.
ngolo	Ngwankazi ke na ngolo <u>y</u> ^a kutubila.	

Note 9.3 The days of the week - Ordinal Numerals

All the names of days of the week occurred in the dialogue of this unit as follows:

Sunday	kilumbu ya lumingu	day of [the] week
Monday	kilumbu ya lendi	day of Lundi
Tuesday	kilumbu ya zole	day of two (i.e. second day)
Wednesday	kilumbu ya tatu	day of three (third day)
Thursday	kilumbu ya iya	day of four (fourth day)
Friday	kilumbu ya tanu	day of five (fifth day)
Saturday	kilumbu ya sabala	day of Sabbath

The names for the days known in English as Tuesday through Friday illustrate the ordinal numeral construction /ya/ + number, which is, of course, exactly parallel to the general adjectival construction with /ya/. Recall the comparison between /ya fioti/ 'small' and /fioti/ 'few'. This ordinal construction occurred also in the sentence:

Tala kuna, luta babalabala tatu,
ina¹ ya iya ke Balumbu.

Look there, cross
three streets the
fourth is Balumbu.

The concept of 'first' is expressed by /ntete/ rather than by an ordinal numeral construction.

The months of the year are popularly called by their French names although ordinal numeral construction is also used.

Drill 9.3 Grammar Drill - Ordinal Numerals

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

	Muntu ya <u>sambanu</u> ke kwiza kana ya tanu me kwenda.
zole	Muntu ya zole ke <u>kwiza</u> kana ya tanu me kwenda.
kuzaula	Muntu ya zole ke zaula kana ya <u>tanu</u> me kwenda.
mosi	Muntu ya zole ke zaula kana ya ntete me <u>kwenda</u> .
kutuba	Muntu ya <u>zole</u> ke zaula kana ya ntete me tuba.
nana	Muntu ya nana ke <u>zaula</u> kana ya ntete me tuba.

1

Note here the use of /ina/ functioning like a definite article 'the'.

	Muntu ya nana ke <u>zaula</u> kana ya ntete me tuba.
kuyobila	Muntu ya nana ke yobila kana ya <u>ntete</u> me tuba.
nsambodia	Muntu ya nana ke yobila kana ya nsambodia me <u>tuba</u> .
kumanisa	Muntu ya <u>nana</u> ke yobila kana ya nsambodia me manisa.
tatu	Muntu ya tatu ke <u>yobila</u> kana ya nsambodia me manisa.
kudia yau	Muntu ya tatu ke kudia yau kana ya <u>nsambodia</u> me manisa.
zole	Muntu ya tatu ke kudia yau kana ya zole me <u>manisa</u> .
kuzola	Muntu ya <u>tatu</u> ke kudia yau kana ya zole me zola.
sambanu	Muntu ya sambanu ke <u>kudia</u> yau kana ya zole me zola.
kwiza	Muntu ya sambanu ke kwiza kana ya <u>zole</u> me zola.
tanu	Muntu ya sambanu ke kwiza kana ya tanu me <u>zola</u> .
kwenda	Muntu ya sambanu ke kwiza kana ya tanu me kwenda.

Note 9.4 Some Further Verbal Extensions

1. The 'Causative' Extension, /is-/:

We have previously noted that, while /kusala/ is 'to work, to do', /ku-sad.is-a/ is 'to help (to do).' This extension is usually called a 'causative' and it does often carry a sense of 'having someone do the action'. In effect this form denotes that the subject has added his efforts to those of the object, either as a casual agent or as a supplementary agent. Note these examples:

Mu ke monisa nge. I'll show you. ('Help you to see' or
'Cause you to see.')

Nge ke sukudisa munu malonga. Will you help me wash the dishes?

Note also /ku-ped.is-a/ 'to ignite, to cause to burn', and /ku-man.is-a/ 'to finish, to cause to come to an end' which are examples of the causative extension to intransitive verbs making corresponding transitive ones.

One further example has occurred -/ku-vut.uk.is-a/ 'to return from' which seems to be idiomatic. Compare:

Yandi vutukaka na kisalu. He returned to work.

Yandi vutukisaka na kisalu. He returned from work.

2. 'Reversive' Extensions /.uk-/ and /.ul-/

Note the forms

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------|
| 1. ku-long-a | to teach |
| 2. ku-long.uk-a | to learn |
| 3. ku-kang-a | to tie, to wrap |
| 4. ku-kang.uk-a | to be untied, to be opened |
| 5. ku-kang-ul-a | to untie, to unwrap |
| 6. ku-vut.uk-a | to return, to come/go back |
| 7. ku-vut.ul-a | to return, to make restitution,
to answer |
| 8. ku-bal.uk-a | to turn (of oneself) |
| 9. ku-bal.ul-a | to turn (something) |

These forms illustrate the verbal extensions /.uk-/ which commonly have the effect of reversing the action of the verb and of producing respectively an intransitive and a transitive verb. The examples above illustrate a variety of distribution of these

suffixes:

In 1 and 2 we see the verb without extension and with the /uk-/ reversive extension but no member of the set with /ul-/ extension. Note that /ku-long.uk-a/ 'to learn' is not really a reversive of /ku-long-a/ 'to teach' and is not intransitive since it can have a direct object. This illustrates the element of unpredictability which is characteristic of derived forms in Kituba as in many languages. Often the student will find it simpler to learn an extended verb as a new word rather than try to rely on analysis of its elements. It is, however, generally useful to be aware of the extensions which occur and their most general functions.

In 3, 4, and 5 we see all three - the root and both transitive and intransitive reversive extensions.

In 6, 7, 8, and 9 we note that transitive and intransitive forms may occur with these extensions when there is no verb extant illustrating the root alone.

3. The 'Potential' Extension /.akan-/

In the clause:

ina ke bulakanaka which are able to be broken

we see an extension indicating the potentiality to undergo the action of the verb. The resultant verb is always intransitive (takes no direct object). Another example is:

bana ya kuzolakana lovable children

This extension is quite restricted.

Note 9.5 The Indefinite-Passive Construction with Subject /bau/

Note the sentence:

Na inki kima bau ke sukudilaka malonga...?

What does one ('do they') use to wash dishes...? What are dishes washed in?

In this sentence we see an example of /bau/ 'they', used as an indefinite subject much as we use 'one' or 'you' in English sentences like:

How do you fold this map?

Where does one get an application form?

As in English (with 'you') the Kituba is capable of two interpretations. This is a favorite form in Kituba for the avoidance of a passive form of the verb. The pronoun used is invariably /bau/. The form of the main verb or auxiliary in such a sentence is commonly in the habitual form, but other forms occur:

Bau ke na kukomba inzo. 'They are sweeping the house',
or 'The house is being swept.'

Bau lenda komba inzo. 'They can sweep the house.' or
'The house can be swept.'

If a past or future form is used the impersonal passive construction is normally signalled by putting the 'object' first in the sentences as a topic for emphasis:

Inzo, bau ke komba yau. 'The house will be swept.' or
'They'll sweep the house.'

In contrast to the English analogy this construction sometimes occurs with a statement of the person performing the action, preceded by /na/ (here translatable 'by'):

Mukanda, bau tangaka yau na	The book was read by my
mpangi na munu.	brother. ('Book, they
	read it by my brother.')

This latter construction has a decidedly novel ring to a speaker of English and, as it is not very common, the drills below contain few examples of it.

Drill 9.4 Grammar Drills on Verbal Extensions

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

Cue

Pattern

Kisadi ke zengisa nge matiti ya inda.

The worker will help you cut up long grass.

ngolo	Kisadi ke zengisa nge <u>matiti</u> ya ngolo.
bilele	Kisadi ke zengisa <u>nge</u> bilele ya ngolo.
Madi	Kisadi ke <u>zengisa</u> Madi bilele ya ngolo.
kumona	<u>Kisadi</u> ke monisa Madi bilele ya ngolo.
Polo	Polo ke monisa Madi bilele ya <u>ngolo</u> .
nene	Polo ke monisa Madi <u>bilele</u> ya nene.
fidigo	Polo ke monisa <u>Madi</u> fidigo ya nene.
benu	Polo <u>ke monisa</u> benu fidigo ya nene.
nataka	<u>Polo</u> natisaka benu fidigo ya nene.
nani	Nani natisaka benu fidigo ya <u>nene</u> ?

Nani natisaka benu fidigo ya nene?
 inda Nani natisaka benu fidigo ya inda?
 matiti Nani natisaka benu matiti ya inda?
 nge Nani natisaka nge matiti ya inda?
 ke zenga Nani ke zengisa nge matiti ya inda?
 kisadi Kisadi ke zengisa nge matiti ya inda.

b) Simple Substitution Drill

Na bilumbu lutaka	tiya pelaka na inzo.	A fire burned in the house in past days.
	Piele pedisaka tiya na inzo.	Peter lit a fire...
	maza manaka na kisangala.	the water in the demi- john ran out.
	nge manisaka maza na kisa- ngala.	You finished the water...

c) Sample Sentence Drill: (The verbs here illustrated do not easily lend themselves to substitution one for the other. The sentences, therefore, are offered merely as examples of the use of these verbs):

1. kulonga, kulonguka, kulongulula, kulongakana:

Nani ke longa munu Kituba?	Who will teach me Kituba?
Nani zona longuka Kituba?	Who wants to learn Kituba?
Nani ke longulula munu Kituba?	Who will reteach me Kituba?
Polo ke zoba, yandi ke longa- kanaka ve.	Paul is stupid, he can't be taught.

2. kukanga, kukanguka, kukangula, kukangulula:

Kwenda kanga fidigo yina. Go and shut that refrigerator.

Kwenda kanga nsinga yina. Go and tie that rope.

Fidigo me kanguka diaka. The refrigerator has gotten opened again.

Nsinga me kanguka diaka. The rope has gotten untied again.

Meka kangula yau ve. Don't try to untie it/open it.

Kwenda kangulula yau. Go and tie/shut it again.

3. kuvutuka, kuvutula:

Vutuka kuna diaka ve. Don't return there again.

Kwenda vutula yau ve. Don't go give it back.

4. kutambula, kutambusa, kutambudisa:

Mu ke na kutambula. I am walking.

Za ke tambudisaka kamio yai. John starts this automobile.

Za ke tambusa kamio yai. John will drive this truck.

d) The 'impersonal' bau with the 'instrumental' extension /.il-/in-/

Minimal Dialogue Drill: (The student is to respond to the (A) utterances below with a question about the instrument or the place of the action):

StimulusResponse

A. Za, kwenda tekila munu maza. B. Na inki kima bau ke teki-laka maza?

A. Bosi betu ke kwenda sakana. B. Na inki palasi bau ke sakaninaka?

- A. Nge zona sukula malonga ve? B. Na inki kima bau ke sukudi-
laka malonga?
- A. Kwenda zengila munu sabuni. B. Na inki kima bau ke zengilaka
sabuni?
- A. Bosi nge kwenda na maza. B. Na inki kima bau ke kwendi-
laka na maza?
- A. Mu ke na kusonika mukanda. B. Na inki kima bau ke soni-
kinaka mukanda?
- A. Vingila, mu ke monisa nge B. Na inki kima bau ke lambi-
kulamba mampa. laka mampa?

Drill 9.5 Controlled Dialogue Drill (The Student takes part A):
unrecorded

(You meet your friend, Zile:)
You have been looking for him
from Saturday until now and
wonder where he has been.

- A. Zile, mu vwandaka sosa nge
katuka kilumbu ya sabala
ti malumalu yai, inki
ndambu nge vwendaka?

- B. Mu vwandaka vwanda na inzo
ya mpangi na munu Zozefu.

Remind him that his brother's
house is near the house of
your maternal uncle and that
during the whole past week you
have been visiting (seeing)
his family. You wonder why
you didn't see him (Zile).

- A. Inzo ya mpangi na nge ikele
penepene na inzo ya ngwa-
nkazi na munu; bosu mpe na
lumingu yonso lutaka mu
vwandaka kwenda tala
famili na yandi. Samu na
inki mu monaka nge ve?

You have been teaching your uncle's three daughters the numbers and cutting the grass in his yard while your uncle has been making a bed for one of his daughters. His wife also has been planting some flowers.

You have been looking for him in order to go fishing because you (both) have vacation. You wonder if he doesn't enjoy (like) to fish.

B. Mu zaba ve. Inki nge vwandaka sala kuna?

A. Mu vwandaka longa bantalu na bana na yandi tatu ya bakento, kuzenga matiti na lupangu ntangu ngwankazi vwandaka sala mfulu ya mwana na yandi mosi ya nkento. Mpe nkento na yandi vwandaka kuna bafololo yankaka.

B. Samu na inki nge vwandaka sosa munu?

A. Mu vwandaka sosa nge samu mu kuyufusa nge betu kwenda loba bambisi samu betu ikele na congé. Nge ke zonaka kuloba ve?

B. Ve, mu ke zonaka kuloba mingi. Kansi mu ke na bima ya kulobila ve.

That is not a big matter. First you will seek a good day for both of you and then you will think about the fishing equipment (thing). If he is not too tired now, you can talk (about) a day and a place to fish. Ask him what day he wants and where he wants you (both) to go.

A. Ina ke diambu yanene ve.

Ntete betu ke sosa kilumbu ya mbote na betu zole, bosi betu ke banza samu ya bima ya kulobila.

Kana nge me lemba mingi ve malumalu yai betu lenda solula kilumbu na palasi ya kulobila. Inki kilumbu nge zola? Na inki palasi nge zola betu kwenda?

B. Kilumbu ya lumingu ke kwiza ke vwanda kilumbu ya mbote na munu samu mu ke kwendaka na Inzo ya Nzambi ve. Samu ya kifulu mu zaba na ndambu yai ve. Kana nge lenda zaba kifulu ya mbote, mu ke kwenda.

You are sorry (but) you regularly go to worship in church on Sunday. If he has no other day [when he can go] you will ask your family about going to fish on Sunday. As for a place, you don't know any place in this area.

A. Kiadi, mu ke kwendaka sambila na Inzo ya Nzambi na kilumbu ya lumingu. Kana nge ke na kilumbu yankaka ve, mu ke yufusa famili na munu samu

ya kwenda loba na kilumbu ya
lumingu. Samu ya kifulu ya
kulobila, mu zaba palasi ve
na ndambu yai.

DIALOGUE: A FABLE

Mimi

di-săpu (ma-)

fable, story

kitoko (ba-)

beauty

Mama, nlongi na betu tubilaka

Mama, our teacher told us one

betu disapu mosi ya kitoko.

lovely tale.

Mama

Yau vwandaka na kati ya nani

Between whom (and whom) did it

na nani?

take place ('was it')?

Mimi

m.fwenge (ba-)

a small civet-like predat-
ory animal

Na.m.fwenge (ba-)

Mr. Civet

koko (ba-)

cock, rooster

Na.koko (ba-)

Mr. Rooster

Yau vwandaka na kati ya Na-

It was between Mr. Civet and

mfwenge na Nakoko.

Mr. Rooster.

Mama

ku-w-a

to listen, hear; to sense,
understand

Nge kuwaka yau mbote?

Did you understand it well?

Mimi

E, mu kuwaka yau yonso.

Yes, I got it all.

Mama

Betu ke tala kana ina ke ya We shall see if that is true.
tieleka.

kamaladi (ba-)

Fr: camarade; friend

Na ntete Namfwenge na Nakoko At first were Mr. Civet and
vwandaka kamaladi? Mr. Rooster friends?

Mimi

Ve, bau vwandaka kamaladi ve. No, they weren't friends.
Namfwenge vwandaka tina Mr. Civet was afraid of
Nakoko. Mr. Rooster.

ku-tub.an-a

to talk together

Kasi kilumbu mosi Nakoko But one day, Mr. Rooster wanted
zonaka ke bau tubana. them to talk together.

Mama

Inki Nakoko tubilaka Namfwenge? What did Mr. Rooster say to
Mr. Civet?

Mimi

Nakoko tubaka: 'Mpangi na Mr. Rooster said: 'My brother
munu Namfwenge, samu na inki Civet, why do you avoid me?'
nge ke tinaka munu?'

Mama

Inki Namfwenge vutulaka? What did Mr. Civet reply?

Mimi

intu (ba-)

head

Yandi vutulaka: 'Kima ke tini- He answered: 'What scares me is
saka munu ke tiya ina nge that fire which you carry on
ke nataka na yulu ya intu top of your head.'
na nge.'

Mama

Inki Nakoko tubilaka yandi? What did Mr. Rooster say to him?

Mimi

Nakoko tubilaka yandi: 'Nge ke He told him: 'You're stupid.
zoba. Yau ke tiya ve. That's not a fire.'

lwinda (ba-)

cockscornb

ku-simb-a

to touch

ku-yok.am-a

to be burned

Yau ike lwinda na munu ya That's my red comb. Come touch
mbwaki. Kwiza simba yau; it; you won't get burned.'
nge ke yokama ve.'

Mama

Namfwenge kwendaka? Did Mr. Civet go?

Mimi

E, yandi kwendaka simba yau, Yes he went and touched it, then
bosi yandi tubaka: 'Melesi he said: 'Thanks a lot. I
mingi. Mu ke tina nge diaka won't fear you anymore.'
ve.'

Mama

Bosi inki diambu Namfwenge Then what (matter) did Mr. Civet
zonaka Nakoko sadila yandi? want Mr. Rooster to do for him?

Mimi

ku-yimb-a to sing

mu-yimbu (mi-) song

Yandi yufusaka Nakoko: 'Nge He asked him: 'Can you sing me
lenda yimbidila munu mu- a song?'
yimbu?'

Mama

Na ntangu Nakoko manisaka yi- When Mr. Rooster finished singing,
mbila, inki mayele Namfwe- what smart trick did Mr. Civet
nge monisaka yandi? play on ('show') him?

Mimi

mu-n.gõngo (mi-) voice, throat

Yandi tubilaka yandi: 'Nge He told him; 'You have a lovely
ke na mungongo ya kitoko voice.
mingi.

di-(i)so (ma-) eye
[ma+iso - meso]

ku-w.am-a to be heard

n.toto (ba-) world, earth, ground, soil .

m.vimba () whole entire

Kana nge ke kanga meso na If you will close [your] eyes
ntangu ya kuyimbila, nge ke when singing, you will be
kuwama na ntoto ya mvimba.' heard by the whole world.'

Mama

Ntangu Nakoko mekaka yimbi- When Mr. Rooster tried to sing
dila mpidina inki Namfwe- like that what did Mr. Civet
nge salaka? do?

Mimi

n.singu (ba-) neck

Yandi kangaka Nakoko na nsingu He took ('bound') Mr. Rooster by
mpe nataka yandi na inzo the neck and carried him to
n'andi. Kuna yandi ku- his house. There he ate him.
diaka yandi.

Mama

balavo! bravo!

Balavo! Nge ke na mayele Bravo! You're very smart; you know
mingi; nge zaba yau mbote it very well.
mbote.

GRAMMAR NOTES AND DRILLS

Note 10.1 The Extension /.am-/ 'Passive'

Note these sentences from the dialogue of this unit:

Nge ke yokama ve.

You will not be burned.

Nge ke kuwama na ntoto
ya mvimba.

You will be heard by the
whole world.

The extension /.am-/ forms a passive verb stem. Note that /ku-yok-a/ 'to burn' is intransitive and that the passive extension forms /ku-yok.am-a/ 'to be burned' also intransitive, while /ku-w-a/ 'to hear' is transitive and the passive stem /ku-w.am-a/ 'to be heard' is intransitive.

In certain parts of the Kituba speaking area an extension /.w-/ is heard making a passive. The equivalent form with this extension is /ku-yok.w-a/ but /ku-w-a/ does not occur with /.w-/ extension.

Actually in areas where both passives occur there is a shade of difference. Thus /ku-yok.am-a/ means 'to get burned' from no clear cause while /ku-yok.w-a/ means 'to be burned' by some active agent. For example, /ku-yok.w-a/ is used of brick which has been burned but /ku-yok.am-a/ is not. The brick didn't just get burned it was burned by somebody. This subtle distinction probably does not apply equally throughout the Kituba area.

Examples of this extension are:

/ku-sos.am-a/ to be looked for /ku-sos.w-a/

/ku-mon.am-a/ to be seen /ku-mon.w-a/

Further examples appear in the drills below.

Drill 10.1 Grammar Drill on the Extension /.am/

a) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill

Cue

Pattern

Kana nge simba tiya nge ke yokama.

If you touch fire you'll get burned.

Namfwenge Kana Namfwenge simba tiya yandi ke yokama.

kwenda

penepene Kana Namfwenge kwenda penepene yandi ke yokama.

bulama

Kana Namfwenge kwenda penepene yandi ke bulama.

Sofi

Kana Sofi kwenda penepene yandi ke bulama.

zaula

Kana Sofi zaula yandi ke bulama.

monama

Kana Sofi zaula yandi ke monama.

benu

Kana benu zaula benu ke monama.

lamuka

Kana benu lamuka benu ke monama.

kangama

Kana benu lamuka benu ke kangama.

nge

Kana nge lamuka nge ke kangama.

simba tiya

Kana nge simba tiya nge ke kangama.

yokama

Kana nge simba tiya nge ke yokama.

Note 10.2 The Extension /*.an-*/ 'Reciprocal', /*asan-*/ 'continuous reciprocal'

Note the sentence:

Nakoko zonaka ke bau tubana. Mr. Rooster wished that they
talk together.

This sentence illustrates the extension /*.an-*/ which forms a stem denoting that the action of the verb took place reciprocally or mutually among the subjects (the grammatical subject is usually plural or compound). It often translates 'each other' Other examples:

ku-sad.is.an-a	to help one another
ku-zon.an-a	to love one another
ku-tal.an-a	to look at one another
ku-pes.an-a (kima)	to give each other (something)

A singular subject is possible in some cases:

Yandi ke na kutubana na Polo. He is talking (together)
with Paul.

The extension /*asan-*/ is also reciprocal and carries the additional denotation of 'continuously'.

Za na Madi ke zolasanaka. John and Mary love one
another always.

Drill 10.2 Reciprocal Extensions /.an-/ and /.asan-/

a) Progressive Substitution Drill

CuePattern

Nzambi zona ke bantu yonso zolasana.

God wants all men to love one another (always).

nani Nani zona ke bantu yonso zolasana?

tubaka Nani tubaka ke bantu yonso zolasana?

Who said that we love one another?

benu Nani tubaka ke benu zolasana?

sadisana Nani tubaka ke benu sadisana?

Who said that you help one another?

nlongi Nlongi tubaka ke benu sadisana.

zengaka Nlongi zengaka ke benu sadisana.

Teacher decided that you help one another.¹

bau Nlongi zengaka ke bau sadisana.

¹

A smooth English translation here after a verb like 'decide' requires 'are to help', 'ought to help' or some such. However, there is nothing in the Kituba to express any concept of necessity or compulsion. This is merely 'Teacher decided that your helping each other was appropriate.'

Nlongi zengaka ke bau sadisana.

landana Nlongi zengaka ke bau landana.

Teacher decided that they follow one another.

bapodisi Bapodisi zengaka ke bau landana.

tubaka Bapodisi tubaka ke bau landana.

Za na Zile Bapodisi tubaka ke Za na Zile landana.

yufusana Bapodisi tubaka ke Za na Zile yufusana.

The police said that John and Julius question one another.

Nzambi Nzambi tubaka ke Za na Zile yufusana.

zona Nzambi zona ke Za na Zile yufusana.

bantu yonso Nzambi zona ke bantu yonso yufusana.

zolasana Nzambi zona ke bantu yonso zolasana.

b) Progressive Substitution-Correlation Drill

Cue

Pattern

Mbasi Nakoko na Namfwenge ke tubana.

Tomorrow Mr. Rooster and Mr. Civet are going to talk together.

mazono Mazono Nakoko na Namfwenge tubanaka.

nani na nani? Mazono nani na nani tubanaka?

kutala Mazono nani na nani talanaka?

Who (and who) saw one another yesterday?

ntangu yonso Ntangu yonso nani na nani ke talanaka?

Za na Madi Ntangu yonso Za na Madi ke talanaka.

Ntangu yonso Za na Madi ke talanaka.

kukuta

Ntangu yonso Za na Madi ke kutanaka.

John and Mary always meet (one another).

na nkokila yai

Na nkokila yai Za na Madi ke kutana.

John and Mary will meet (one another) this evening.

benu na betu

Na nkokila yai benu na betu ke kutana.

kutina

Na nkokila yai benu na betu ke tinana.

You and we will avoid each other this evening.

mbasi

Mbasi benu na betu ke tinana.

Nakoko na
Namfwenge

Mbasi Nakoko na Namfwenge ke tinana.

kutuba

Mbasi Nakoko na Namfwenge ke tubana.

GROUP A: VISITING FRIENDS AND RELATIVES (Home, Family and Work)

DIALOGUE: A FAMILY

Polo

ku-sans-a

to raise, bring up,
care for

Nani ke sansaka nge?

Who takes care of you?

Zile

Mu ke na tata na munu.¹

I am with my father.

Polo

Bantu ikwa ke vwandaka na
inzo na benu?How many people live in your
home?

Zile

ku-vwam-a

to get rich

m.vwama (ba-)

a rich one, a wealthy
personSamu tata na betu ke mvwama,
yandi ke sansaka bantu
mingi.Since our father is wealthy, he
takes care of a lot of people.

Polo

nani na nani?

who and who?(i.e. who is
included?)

1

From this point on the special conventions commonly employed in the Primer to represent elisions are abandoned in favor of standard orthography. In the Primer this phrase was /tat_a na munu/.

Nani na nani yandi ke sansaka? Whom does he take care of?

Zile

leke/leki (ba-) younger sibling

Mu ke na leke mosi ya bakala, I have a younger brother and two
na baleke zole ya bakento. younger sisters.

Polo

Bantu yankaka ikele? Are there other people?

Zile

tata ya bakala paternal uncle

tata ya nkento paternal aunt

E, bau ke mingi; betu ke na Yes, lots; we have my uncles and
batata na munu ya babakala, my aunts.
mpe ya bakento.

ku-kat.ul-a to remove, subtract

katula less, besides ('subtracting')

n.kazi (ba-) brother (used by female of
her own brothers - a term
denoting a special rela-
tionship and rôle in the
family)

mwana nkazi / mwan_a
y_a nkazi/ child of the sister of a
male

Katula tata, bampangi n'andi, Besides Father, his brothers and
mama na betu bana, betu ke sisters, Mother and us children
mpe na mwana nkazi mosi ya we have also a nephew (or niece)
tata. of Father's.

Polo

Benu ke na muntu ve na ndambu Don't you have anybody from your
ya mama na benu? mother's side?

Zile

Ikele ve; kasi ntangu yankaka There aren't; but sometimes our
bangwankazi na bamama ke maternal uncles and aunts come
kwizaka tala betu. to see us.

Polo

n.kaka (ba-) [nk'aaka]¹ grandparent, relative of
older generation

Nge ke na nkaka ve? Haven't you anyone from the
older generation?

Zile

Mu ke na bankaka mingi kasi I have lots of relatives in the
mu zaba bau ve. older generation but I don't
know them.

Polo

lau (ma-) luck

Nge ke na malau ya kuvwanda You're lucky to belong to a
na famili ya nene. large family.

1

For the distinction between the /nk/ of this word and that
of /yankaka/ see Note 1.7.

Note 11.1 Kinship Terminology: (Reference Note)

Supplementary Vocabulary

kuluntu (ba-)	older sibling
ya kuluntu	older
n.kwezi (ba-) semeki (ba-)	sibling in-law in one's own generation
n.sanga (ba-)	sister (term used by male to his own sisters)
n.tekolo (ba-)	grandchild

In the dialogue of this unit occur a variety of kinship terms. Others have appeared in various units of the primer. The list above gives some other useful ones.

In the absence of detailed ethnographic information concerning the relationship terminology of Kituba speakers, and in the face of the probability that there is no consistent usage, since speakers of Kituba come from various tribal backgrounds, it is not the intention at this time to do more than point up certain useful facts about the kinship terms used by the Congolese collaborator in this text, whose usage probably reflects aspects of his Bakongo tribal affinity.

He calls and addresses all his siblings /mpangi/ (plural /bampangi/) and applies the same term to his cousins in his own generation. Younger siblings and cousins are also called but not addressed as /leke/ and older ones /kuluntu/ with /ya bakala/ or

/ya nkento/ appended when sex designation is appropriate. His own sisters are called but not addressed directly as /nsanga/ which is a term reflecting his special protective rôle relative to his sisters. The spouse of /mpangi/ is /nkwezi/ or /semeki/.

Sisters and female cousins of his mother are called /mama/ with /leke/ and /kuluntu/ added as modifiers where appropriate to indicate that the relative is younger or older than his own mother. The wives of his father's brothers (no biological relation to him) are called by the same terms.

Siblings and cousins of his father, of either sex, are called /tata/ with /ya nkento/ or /ya bakala/ added to distinguish sex where appropriate. Their children, as mentioned above, are his cousins and are called /mpangi/. In some Bakongo tribes, however, these cousins are also called /tata/. This seems to reflect variety in the incest taboo - marriages with /tata/ is possible but not with /mpangi/. The same tribes seem to apply the term /tata/ to the wives of fathers' brothers whom our informant calls, as mentioned above, /mama/.

A girl calls her brother but does not address him directly /nkazi/ reflecting the special rôle which a girls' brother plays. A maternal uncle is thus the /nkazi/ of /mama/ and this individual bears to his sister's children a special rôle relationship. They call and address him /ngwankazi/ which means /nkazi ya mama/. Our

informant also applies this term to the husbands of paternal aunts but this is apparently a term of respect and implies no special rôle or relationship. It varies in usage with /tata ya bakala/.

A man calls and addresses as /bana/ his own children, those of his brothers and sisters (/bampangi/ - however far he extends that term among his cousins). His sister's children are in a special rôle relationship to him (he is their /ngwankazi/) and he calls them but does not often address them /mwana nkazi/. The children of all /bana/ are called /ntekolo/.

All relatives of the generation older than the father and mother are /nkaka/¹ whether grandparents, granduncles or grand-aunts by English usage. /ya nkento/ and /ya bakala/ distinguish sex when appropriate.

1

The pronunciation of /nkaka/ in isolation is, in the speech of the Congolese collaborator, different from the 'same' syllables of /yankaka/ 'other'. He gives the first /-ka-/ syllable more length in /nkaka/ and subordinates the /n-/ more. The resultant pronunciation is approximately [ɲká:ka]; compare [yaɲkáka].

In summary, the system of kinship reflects a matrilineal system with the brothers of one's mother bearing a special relationship to one (and also being looked to as the source of one's inheritance). The terminology applied to the relative of one's father is much less diverse and seems to vary a great deal - with conservative usage favoring /tata/ for all the father's side and more modern practice using /mama/, /ngwankazi/ and /mpangi/ to refer to the appropriate relatives.

NARRATIVE

Polo vwandaka yufusa Zile samu ya famili n'andi. Yandi tubilaka yandi ke tata n'andi ke mfwama. Samu na ina, yandi ke sansaka bantu mingi. Katula leke n'andi mosi ya bakala na zole ya bakento, tata n'andi ke sansaka batata n'andi ya babakala mpe ya bakento. Bosi mpe, mwana nkazi mosi ya tata n'andi ke vwandaka na bau. Muntu mosi ve na ndambu ya mama n'andi ke vwandaka na bau; bangwankazi na bamama n'andi ke kaka kwizaka talu bau. Yandi ke na bankaka mingi, kasi yandi zaba bau ve. Polo tubilaka yandi ke, yandi ke na malau ya kuvwanda na famili ya nene.

DIALOGUE: A WEDDING INVITATION

Maligeliti

nsuka (ba-)

end, final part

ku-kwel-a

to get married

Piele, bakala ya munu, nge

Pierre, my husband, do you know

zaba ke leke ya munu ya

that my younger sister is get-

nkento ke na kukwela na

ting married at the end of

nsuka ya imvu yai?

this year?

Piele

talatala (ma-)

glass; spectacle(s);
mirror

Ina ke nsangu ya kiese mingi.

That's good news.

Inki leke na nge, yina ke

Which younger sister of yours, the

vwataka matalatala kana

one who wears glasses or another?

yankaka?

Maligeliti

Ve, ina ve. Mu banza ke nge

No, not that one. I think you

zaba yandi mbote mbote ve;

don't know her very well; she

yandi ke vwandaka kuna

doesn't stay there very much.

mingi ve.

Piele

Inki ndambu yandi ke kwendaka

Where does she go when we go to

ntangu betu ke kwendaka

visit your family?

tala famili ya nge?

Maligeliti

Yandi ke vwandaka na mama She stays with her mother, I
n'andi mu banza. suppose.

Piele

na ndambu apart; away; on the side
O? Nge zona tuba ke mu ke na Oh? You mean to say that I have
bankwezi yankaka na ndambu other in-laws (apart) that I
ina mu zaba ve? don't know?

Maligeliti

E, nge ke zabaka ve ke nge Yes, don't you know you have a
ke na bankwezi mingi? lot of in-laws?

Piele

mapasa (ba-) twins
Mu zaba kaka bampangi ya nge I know only your three sisters:
tatu ya bakento: ina ke the one who wears glasses, and
vwataka matalatala, na zole the two who are twins (those
ina ya mapasa. two (of) twins).

Maligeliti

ku-bok-a to shout, cry out, scream
ku-bok.il-a to address, call someone,
invite
Kató (a street name)

Kasi inki nge ke bokidilaka	But what do you call ('what you
bana ya mama leke ina ke	use to call') the children of
vwandaka na balabala ya Kato.	the aunt ('younger maternal
	aunt') who lives on Kato street?

Piele

Kasi mu zaba ata yandi?	But do I even know her?
-------------------------	-------------------------

Maligeliti

awa

when, while, as

Inki mutindu nge lenda zabila	How can you know her, when you
yandi, awa nge ke zonaka	don't like to go see other
kwenda tala bantu yankaka	people of the family?
ya famili ve?	

Piele

di-kulu (ma-)

leg

Nani zengaka yandi makulu ya	Who cut off her legs for coming
kwizila kwaku?	here?

Maligeliti

lu.zitu (ba-)

respect, worth, value

m.pamba

nothingness, uselessness

toko (ma-/bama-)

young man, youth

n.dumba (ba-)

young woman, unmarried
woman, maiden; prosti-
tute

Ata muntu zengaka yandi maku-
 lu ve; nge zaba ve ke baku-
 luntu ya luzitu ke kwendaka
 mpamba mpamba ve na bainzo
 ya bamatoko na bandumba?

Although nobody cut off her legs;
 don't you know that respected
 elders don't come for nothing
 at all to the homes of young
 gentlemen and ladies?

Piele

ku-fwand-a

to suffice

fwanda

must, should, ought to,
have to

fwanda vwanda

to have to be

ku-zit-a

to be heavy, carry weight

ku-zit.is-a

to respect, give weight
to

kana...ve

if not, unless

E, kasi betu mpe, bamatoko na
 bandumba, betu fwanda kwenda
 kuna ve kana diambu me kubwa
 ve; betu fwanda vwanda mpe
 kukizitisa.

Yes, but we too, young men and
 women, we don't have to go
 there unless something occurs;
 we have to keep our self-respect
 too ('we have to be also re-
 specting ourselves').

Maligeliti

nie

quiet, still

Bika betu vwanda nie malumalu
 yai.

Let's be quiet now.

ku-komase

Fr: commencer; start, begin

ma.kwele (ba-)

wedding, marriage

Mu ke tala kana nge ke kwenda
ntangu bau ke komase mambu
ya makwele na ngonda ke
kwiza.

I'm going to watch whether you
will go when they start the
wedding celebrations ('affairs')
next month.

Piele

ku-zab.is-a

to inform, let (one) know

silitú

Fr: surtout; above all,
especially

bague (ba-)

(fr:) ring

Betu ke kwenda kana bau ke
zabisa betu; silitu ntangu
mwana ya bakala ke pesa
bague.

We'll go when they let us know;
especially the time when the
boy gives the ring.

Maligeliti

feti (ba-)

Fr: fête; celebration

fasó (ba-)

Fr: façon; manner, way

mu-săpi (mi-)

finger, thumb, toe

Nge zona kwenda na feti ina
samu nge mona faso nge
tudilaka bague na musapí
na munu?

Do you want to go to the cele-
bration so you [can] see how
you placed the ring on my
finger?

Piele

ki-uvu (bi-)

question

E, nkento munu, ina ke kiuvu
ya mbote. Nge ke na mayele.

Yes, my wife that's a good ques-
tion. You're smart.

mu-tima (mi-/bami-)

heart

n.tinu (ba-)

speed

Nge zaba ke ata mu vwandaka
na kiese, mutima na munu
vwandaka tambula na ntinu
yonso?

Do you know that, although I was
happy, my heart was beating
('walking') at great speed?

Maligeliti

e-lõngi (bi-)

face

ku-basik-a

to get out, come out, go
out

ku-tõk-a

to perspire

mu-tõki (mi-/bami-)

perspiration

kubasika mutoki

to break out in a sweat

Mu zabaka; samu elongi ya
nge vwandaka basika mutoki.

I know because your face broke
out in perspiration.

Note 12.1 'Indirect Discourse' following ke 'that'

Note the following sentences from dialogues to date:

Vandi tubilaka yandi ke tata n'andi ke mvwama.

He told him that his father is rich.

Polo tubilaka yandi ke yandi ke na malau ya kuvwanda na famili ya nene.

Polo told him that he was lucky to belong to a large family.

Mu banza ke nge zaba yandi mbote mbote ve.

I don't think that you know her very well.

Nge zona tuba ke mu ke na bankwezi yankaka na ndambu ina mu zaba ve?

You mean to say that I have other in-laws (apart) that I don't know?

E, nge ke zabaka ve ke nge ke na bankwezi mingi?

Yes, don't you know that you have a lot of in-laws?

Nge zaba ve ke bakuluntu ya luzitu ke kwendaka mpamba mpamba ve na bainzo ya bamatoko na bandumba?

Don't you know that respected elders don't come for nothing at all to the homes of young gentlemen and ladies.

Nge zaba ke ata mu vwandaka na kiese, mutima munu vwandaka tambula na ntinu yonso?

Do you know that, although I was happy, my heart was beating at great speed?

Maligeliti monisaka yandi ke ina ke kwela ke mwana ya mama na yandi ya leke ina ke vwandaka na Kato.

Margaret explained to him that [the one] who was going to get married was the child of her younger maternal aunt who lived in Kato.

Maligeliti zonaka ke bau vwanda nie.

Margaret wanted that they become quiet!

Note that the conjunction ke in these sentences follows immediately or often the object of the verbs: /kuzona/, /kutubila/, /kuzaba/, /kutuba/, /kumonisa/, /kubanza/, all of which have to do with the words, the thoughts, the ideas, the understandings of the actors or speakers. Other verbs, like /kulongisa/ 'to instruct', /kuvutula/ 'to reply' and the like may also occur with this structure.

The conjunction ti which has not yet been introduced in these units varies freely with ke in this construction with the same meaning. It is mainly used in the Eastern region.

In all the examples given ke is followed by a clause with subject and verb. This is the commonest pattern although it is not impossible for ke to be followed by a noun phrase, in which case the context makes clear that yau ke 'it is' could be inserted preceding such phrase.

Note that ke in these sentences, although it has the same shape as the auxiliary verb ke 'be', is clearly identified by the intonation pattern and its syntactic environment as a conjunction and there is no confusion caused by this identity of form.

NARRATIVE

Maligeliti tubilaka bakala na yandi Piele ke leke na yandi mosi ya nkento ke kwela na nsuka ya imvu yau. Piele zaba yandi ve. Yandi zaba kaka bankwezi na yandi tatu ya bakento: mosi ke vwataka matalatala, mpe zole ke bamapasa. Maligeliti monisaka yandi ke, ina ke kwela, ke mwana ya mama na yandi ya leke, ina ke vwandaka na Kato. Piele zaba ata yandi ve; samu yandi ke kwendaka tala bantu yankaka ya famili ve. Ata yandi zaba ke bakuluntu ya luzitu ke kwendaka mpamba mpamba na bainzo ya bamatoko to ya bandumba ve, yandi ke zonaka mpe ke bamatoko na bandumba kukizitisa.

Maligeliti zonaka ke bau vwanza nie, mpe zonaka tala kana bakala na yandi ke kwenda ntangu bau ke komase mambu ya makwela. Piele tubilaka yandi ke bau ke kwenda, silitu na ntangu mwana bakala ke pesa bague. Yandi ke zonaka kwenda na feti yina samu ya kumona diaka faso yandi tudilaka bague na musapi ya Maligeliti. Na ntangu ina, ata yandi vwandaka na kiese mingi, mutima na yandi vwandaka tambula na ntinu yonso. Maligeliti tubilaka yandi ke, yandi zabaka samu elongi na yandi vwandaka basika mutoki.

DIALOGUE: A VISIT TO A CONGOLESE HOME

Andele

Ko...ko...ko...ko...

Knock, knock...

Samiele

palad6 (ba-)

pardon

Palado...Benu vingila fioti,

Pardon...Wait a bit, we're

betu ke na kwiza kotisa

coming to let you in.

benu.

Benu kota ya benu. Betu

Come in please ('You enter of

vwandaka vingila benu na

you' i.e. at your pleasure).

kiese yonso.

We have been awaiting you with

great pleasure ('all joy').

Yai ke nkento na munu Lucie...

This is my wife, Lucy. Lucy,

Lucie, yai ke Tata Andele

this is Mr. Andrew Dadié and

Dadié na nkento n'andi.

his wife.

Andele

nsoni (ba-)

shyness, reticence

Melesi mingi. Yai ke nkento

Thank you very much. This is my

ya munu, Odette; yandi ke na

wife Odette; she is quite re-

nsoni mingi.

tiring.

Lucie

vwanda na nge

pay no attention

meso ya ngolo

bold eyed, wide awake,
aware, outgoing, ex-
troverted

ki-fu (bi-)

habit, custom

ku-sok.us-a

to tease

Vwanda na nge mpangi ya munu

Pay no attention my sister

Odette, nge ke na meso ya

Odette. You're outgoing

ngolo; yau ke kifu ya ba-

(i.e. not shy). It is a

bakala ya kusokusa bakento.

custom of men to tease women.

Odette

lezó (ba-)

Fr: raison · right

ku-sěk-a

to laugh

ku-sěk.is-a

to make laugh, amuse

Nge ke na lezo. Bakala na

You're right. My husband al-

munu ke zonaka sekisa bantu

ways likes to amuse people.

ntangu yonso.

ku-bumb-a

to hide, secrete

Yandi tubilaka munu ke benu

He told me you have children.

ke na bana. Na inki ki-

Where have you hidden them?

fulu benu me bumbila bau?

Lucie

ku-kos-a

to lie, fib

Vana yandi kosaka nge ve.

There he didn't lie [to] you.

Betu ke na bana zole ya ba-

We have two boys but they have

bakala, kasi bau me kwenda-

gone (some time ago) for

ka na congè na bwala ya

vacation in the village of a

kamaladi ya betu mosi.

friend of ours.

Odette

menga (ba-)

blood

menga ya mbote

good luck

Bau ke na menga ya mbote ya

They are lucky to go rest

kwenda vundila kuna.

there.

n.gonda (ba-)

month

ki-ozi (bi--baki-)

coldness, a cold, fever

ku-kos.ul-a

to cough

kosúkosu (ba-)

cough

Betu mpe ke na bana zole,

We too have two children, boy

bakala na nkento, kasi

and girl, but since last

banda ngonda lutaka bau

month they have had ('been

vwandaka vwanda na kiozi,

with') colds, and now they

mpe malumalu yai, bau ke na

have coughs.

kosukosu.

Yau ina betu bikaka bau na

That's why we left them at home.

inzo.

Samiele

Betu ke na kiadi mingi ya We're very sorry to hear that.

kuwa nsangu yina.

kaka mpila ina/ kaka
mpidina

always thus ('that way
only')

n.sungi (ba-)

season

ki-sivu (bi-)

winter, dry season

Yau ke kaka mpidina na nsungi

It is always like that in this

yai ya kisivu.

season of winter.

mu-tima (mi-)

heart

kutula mutima

to hope ('place heart')

kumona mbote

to recover ('see goodness'),
get well, be well

Betu ke na kutula mutima ke,

We hope that they recover quickly.

bau ke mona mbote malu-

malu.

Lucie

ku-tel.am-a

to get up, stand up, be
standing

ku-ted.im.is-a

to have/help/make get up,
keep (one) standing

Mu zona tedimisa benu mingi

I don't want to keep you standing

ve. Benu vwanda ya benu.

longer. Please be seated

('You sit of you' i.e. as you
please)

ku-kubik-a	to put in order, arrange
n.guba (ba-)	peanuts
ki-sikiti (bi-babi-)	Fr: biscuit; pastry, biscuit, cookie
gató (ba-)	Fr: gâteau; cake
fonó (ba-)	phonograph
kubula fono	to play the phonograph

Na ntangu mu ke na kumanisa	While I'm finishing arranging
kubika bima, benu lenda	things, you may begin to drink
banda kunwa coca cola,	coca cola [or] lemonade; to
limonadi...kudia nguba,	eat peanuts, cookies, cake
bisikiti, gato...na kubula	[and] to play the phonograph.
fono.	

Odette

di-boko (ma-)	hand, arm
kupesa maboko	give hands i.e. help

Melesi mingi...Kasi kana nge	Thank you very much...But if you
zona mu lenda kwiza pesa	wish, I can come give you a
nge maboko, ntangu babakala	hand while our husbands are
ya betu ke vwanda solula.	chatting ('will be talking').

Lucie

Mambu ve.	OK.
-----------	-----

NARRATIVE

Andele na nkento n'andi Odette, vwandaka na inzo ya Samiele na nkento n'andi, Lucie. Samu ya kusekisa bau, yandi tubilaka bau ke Odette ke na nsoni mingi; kasi Lucie tubaka ke yandi ke na meso ya ngolo.

Samu Odette zaba kifu ya bakala n'andi ya kusokusa bantu, yandi zonaka zaba kana baSamiele ke na bana, kome Andele tubilaka yandi. Awa, yandi kosaka yandi ve. Bana babakala zole ya Samiele na Lucie, kwendaka na congé na bwala ya kamaladi ya bau mosi; bau ke na menga ya mbote ya kwenda vundila kuna; samu, bana ya Andele na Odette vwandaka ntete na kiozi pe malumalu yai, bau ke na kosukosu; yau ina, bau bikaka bau na inzo.

Samiele na nkento n'andi, vwandaka na kiadi ya kuwa mambu ina. Kasi, ata yau ke kaka mpidina na nsungi ya kisivu, bau tubilaka bau ke, bau tulaka mutima ke bau ke mona mbote malumalu.

Lucie zonaka mona bau kutelama ntangu ya inda ve. Yandi vwandisaka bau. Yandi tubilaka mpe bau kubanda kunwa coca cola, limonadi...kudia nguba, bisikiti, gato...na kubula fono; ntangu yina yandi zonaka manisa kukubika bima. Kasi Odette zonaka pesa yandi maboko, ntangu babakala na bau vwandaka banda solula. Lucie zonaka ngindu ina.

DIALOGUE: TALK ABOUT THE HOUSE

Andele

e-sěngo (bi-)

joy, happiness

Mu ke na esengo mingi ya ku-
mona inzo na benu.

I'm very happy to see your house.

penzá

very, extremely

Yau ke kitoko penza. Bau
tungaka yau ntama mingi?

It's very lovely. Was it built
a long time ago?

Samiele

wapi!

No! Not at all.

Wapi! Ntama mingi ve.

No! Not very long.

dayele

Fr: d'ailleurs; besides

ku-tom.is-a

to beautify, decorate

velandá (ba-)

Fr: véranda; porch

Dayele bau me manisa kutomisa
velanda kaka na nsuka ya
ngonda lutaka.

Besides, they finished decorating
the porch only at the end of
last month.

Andele

mongo (ba-)

mountain

fimongo mongo (ba-)

little hill

mu-pěpe (mi-)

breeze, wind

Samu ya fimongo mongo yai, Don't the winds blow ('come')
mupepe ke vwandaka ngolo strongly in the rainy season
ve na ntangu ya bamvula? ('time of rains') on account
of this little hill?

Samiele

Ve, yau ke vwandaka ngolo ve. No, they're not strong.
m.finda (ba-) woods, forest

Kome yau ke katukaka na nima As they are from the back of the
ya inzo na ndambu ke velanda house on the side [where] is
bainti ya mfinda ina ke the veranda, the trees of the
na ndambu ina ke sadisaka woods which are on that side
betu. help us.

Andele

molūnge (ba-) heat
Mu banza ke na ntangu ya I imagine that in hot times that
molunge, velanda ina ke porch is a good place to get
palasi ya mbote ya kuba- cool breezes.
kila mupepe ya kiozi.

Samiele

Ata na ntangu ya molunge ve. Not only in times of heat.
ku-pem-a to rest, relax, breathe
mw.ini (ba-) sunlight, daylight, light
nuni (ba-) bird

Mu ke zonaka pemina kuna, I like to rest there especially
silitu na mwini, samu ya in the daytime to hear the
kuwa banuni kuyimbila. birds sing.

Andele

n.ganda (ba-) outside
ku-mon.ik-a to appear, seem

Na ntangu betu vwandaka na When we were outside your house
nganda, inzo ya benu looked ('was appearing') very
vwandaka monika nene penza. large.

étage (ba-) (Fr.) upstairs

Benu ke na masuku ikwa na How many rooms have you up-
étage? stairs?

Samiele

Na étage betu ke na masuku On the upper floor we have four
iya. rooms.

kabiné (ba-) Fr: cabinet; water closet,
toilet

Masuku tatu ke na kabine, Three rooms have toilets, wash
kifulu ya kusukudila elongi, basins, and bathtubs. ('places
na kifulu ya kuyobidila. to wash the face and places to
bathe').

Andele

Masuku ina yonso ke ya inki? What are all those rooms for?

Samiele

n.zenza (ba-)

guest, stranger

Disuku mosi ke ya betu, mosi
ya bana, mpe mosi ya ba-
nzenza.

One room is for us, one for the
children, and one for guests.

ku-lund-a

to store, keep

Bosi betu ke na disuku mosi
ya kulundila mikanda, yau
ke mpe bilo.

Then we have a room for storing
books, it is also the study.

Andele

Yau ke mbote na kuvwanda na
masuku mingi.

It's good to live in many rooms.

n.dé

then, in that case

sikalie (ba-)

Fr: escalier; stairs

ku-tomb.uk-a

to rise, go up

Ina nde ke sikalie ya
kutombukila kuna?

That then is the stairs to go up
there?

Samiele

ku-sol.ul-a

to find

E, yau ike ina. Kusolula
yau ke mpasi.

Yes, that's it. It's hard to
find it.

Bantu ke banzaka ke yau ke
kaka mwelo ya disuku.

People think that it's only the
door of a room.

Andele

benu mosi

you yourselves

ku-mes.ǎn-a (na)

to be used to

Mu banza ke ata benu mosi,

I suppose that even you yourselves

fwanda mesana na yau, samu

must be used to it to know that

ya kuzaba ke yau ke kuna.

it is there.

Samiele

ku-kĩt-a

to go down, descend

Ina ke ya tieleka...Kuna mpe

That's true...There also we have

betu ke na sikalie ya ku-

a staircase to go down to the

kitila na insi.

ground.

ku-yum-a

to get dry

ku-yum.is-a

to dry, make dry

ku-wom-a

to iron, press

ki-seng-wa (bi-)

steel, tool

Na ndambu ina, betu ke suku-

There we wash, dry and iron

dilaka, kuyumisa, na kuwoma

clothes; we also store some

bilele; mpe betu ke lundilaka

tools there.

bisengwa yankaka kuna.

Andele

ku-kab.ul-a

to divide, share

to /too/

or

Bau kabulaka yau na masuku Is it divided into rooms or is
to yau ke kaka disuku mosi? it only one room?

Samiele

fi.ki.fulu (ba-)	little place
imbwa (ba-)	dog
ku-but-a	to give birth
n.ganzi (ba-)	anger

Yau ke kaka disuku mosi; kasi It is only one room but we made
betu tungaka fikifulu ya a little place to tie the dog;
kukangila imbwa; samu banda because since she had puppies,
yandi butilaka, yandi ke na she is very touchy.
nganzi mingi.

ku-tatik-a	to bite
------------	---------

Yandi ke zonaka tatika ata She wants to bite even me.
munu.

Andele

makelele (ba-)	noise
----------------	-------

Ina ke kifu ya imbwa ya That's the habit of female dogs,
nkento;¹ yau ina nkento na that's why my wife doesn't
munu ke zonaka kuwa ata like even the noise of dogs.
makelele ya imbwa ve.

1

For the pronunciation of this form referring to animals see
Note 1.7.

n.kutu

even, besides, in addition

m.bumba (ba-)

cat

ku-zak.am.is-a

to cause to tremble

Ata nkutu bambumba yai lenda
zakamisa yandi.

Even these cats can set her
trembling.

Samiele

wonga (ba-)

fear

Lezo ya ngolo ikele ve ya
kuvwanda na wonga ya mpidina.

There's no strong reason to
have fear like that.

saló (ba-)

Fr: salon; large room

Kwaku betu ke na masuku iya;
salo ya kusoludila, disuku
ya kudila, kikuku, na ki-
fulu ya kusukudila maboko.

Here we have four rooms: a
living room ('parlour for
conversation'), a dining room,
a kitchen and a place to wash
up ('place to wash hands').

m.baimbai

after awhile

Kana nge zona, mbaimbai mu ke
monisa nge inzo yonso.

If you like, after awhile I'll
show you the whole house.

NARRATIVE

Samiele na Andele wandaka solula. Na nganda ti na kati inzo ya Samiele ke monikaka nene mpe kitoko mingi. Andele wandaka na esengo mingi ya kumona yau.

Bau tungaka yau ntama mingi ve. Dayele, bau manisaka kutomisa velanda na nsuka ya ngonda lutaka. Ata inzo ya Samiele ke na zulu ya fimongo mongo, mupepe ke wandaka ngolo ve na ntangu ya bamvula, samu ya bainti ya mfinda ina ke na ndambu ya velanda, kuna mupepe ke katukaka.

Na ntangu ya molunge, velanda ina ke palasi ya mbote ya kubakila mupepe ya kiozi. Ntangu yankaka Samiele ke zonaka pemina kuna, silitu na mwini, samu ya kuwa banuni kuyimbila.

Andele yufusaka yandi ntalu ya masuku wandaka na étage. Kuna bau ke na masuku iya: ya bau, ya bana, ya banzenza mpe ya kulundila mikanda - yau ina ke mpe bilo. Masuku tatu ke na kabine, kifulu ya kusukudila elongi na kifulu ya kuyobidila.

Yau ke mpasi ya kusolula sikalie ya kutombukila na zulu. Yau ke na mwelo mpila mosi ya disuku; kuna mpe ke sikalie ya kukitila na insi. Kuna na insi ke palasi ya kusukudila, kuyumisa, na kuwomina bilele mpe ya kubumbila bisengwa yankaka.

Bau kabulaka ndambu ina na masuku yankaka ve, kasi bau tungilaka imbwa na bau fikifulu ya kukangila yandi; samu banda yandi butilaka, yandi ke na nganzi mingi. Yandi ke zonaka tatika

ata Samiele.

Andele tubilaka yandi ke, ina ke kifu ya imbwa ya nkento; nkento n'andi ke zonaka kuwa ata makelele ya imbwa ve; ata nkutu bambumba yai ke zakamisaka yandi.

Samiele tubilaka Andele ke Odette vwandaka na lezo mingi ve ya kuvwanda na wonga ya mpidina.

Na nsuka yandi tubilaka mpe yandi ke, kuna bau vwandaka vwanda ke masuku iya: salo ya kusoludila, disuku ya kudila, kikuku mpe kifulu ya kusukudila maboko.

DIALOGUE: TO BUY OR TO RENT

Andele

Samiele, mpangi na munu, nge	Samuel, my good friend ('brother'),
salaka diambu ya mbote ya	you did a good thing ('matter')
kusumba inzo yai.	in buying this house.
lu.zingu (ba-)	life
ku-los-a	to throw away, waste, re- ject
ata...kasi	even though...still
kasi...ve	but...not, and...not, than
Ata yau ke ntalu, kasi na	Even though it is expensive, still
luzingu yau kuluta mbote ya	it is better in life to buy a
kusumba kima ya luzitu na	worthy thing with much money
mbongo mingi, kasi kulosa	than to waste a little money
mbongo fioti na kima ya	on a useless thing.
mpamba ve.	

Samiele

di-banza (ma-)	thought, idea
ku-lung-a	to suffice, fit, be enough
bosi mpe	besides (= nkutu), then too

Melesi mingi. Mu ke na ma- Thank you. I haven't any thought
banza ya kusumba inzo of again buying another house;
yankaka ve; yai me lunga, this is suitable ('has suf-
bosi mpe betu ke zonaka yau ficed'), besides we like it
mingi. very very much.

Andele

Inki mutindu nge soludilaka How did you find this house?
inzo yai?

ku-zing-a to live, live long, last
Samu mu mpe mu ke na kubanza Because I too am thinking of
sumba inzo mosi ya nene, buying a big house where we
kuna betu lenda zingila can live for many years.
baimvu mingi.

Samiele

Ina ke diambu ya mpasi mingi That's not a very difficult
mingi ve. matter.

kompani (ba-) Fr: compagnie; firm,
company, corporation

keledi (ba-) Fr: crédit; terms, instal-
lations

Muntu mosi pesaka munu nkumbu Somebody gave me the name of a
ya kompani mosi ya nene, ina big company which builds
ke tungaka bainzo, mpe houses and sells then on
kuteka yau na keledi. credit.

Andele

di-baya (ma-)

board, lumber, wood

Nge banza ke bau lenda vwanda

Do you think they might have

na bainzo ya mabaya?

frame houses ('houses of wood').

Samiele

Mu banza ke yau ke mpasi fioti

I think that it is a bit diffi-

ya kumona bainzo ya mpidina;

cult to find ('see') houses

samu bainzo ya mutindu yina

like that; because houses of

ke zingaka baimvu mingi

that type don't last here very

kwaku ve.

many years.

Andele

kuluta zona

to like better, prefer

Mu ke lutaka zona inzo ya

I prefer a house of wood because

mabaya, samu mu me mesanaka

I got used to houses like that

na bainzo ya mutindu ina na

in America.

Amelike.

n.sunga (ba-)

aroma, fragrance

kuwa nsunga

to smell (transitive)('to
sense odor')

Bosi mpe diaka, mu ke zonaka

Besides I like (to sense) the

kuwa nsunga ya mabaya.

aroma of wood.

Samiele

Mu me mona.

I see ('I have seen').

ti	that (conjunction)
ku-tung.w-a	to be built
bidiki (ba-)	Fr: brique; brick
simé (ba-)	Fr: ciment; cement, concrete

Mu banza ti kana nge ke na	I think that if you're lucky
menga ya mbote, nge lenda	you can find a house built
solula inzo ya kutungwa na	of wood and brick or concrete.
mabaya, na bidiki to sime.	

Andele

Ina ke vwanda diambu ya mbote.	That would be (a) good (thing).
--------------------------------	---------------------------------

ku-yok.w-a	to be burnt
------------	-------------

Kasi banda betu kwizilaka kwaku,	But since we came here, we've
betu vwandaka mona kaka	been seeing only houses built
bainzo ya bidiki ya kuyokwa,	of burnt brick or of concrete
to ya bidiki ya sime, to ya	blocks or of bricks of
bidiki ya ntoto.	earth [unburnt].

Samiele

E, yau ke mpidina.	Yes, it's like that.
--------------------	----------------------

nianga (ba-)	thatch
--------------	--------

Bosi mpe na babwala nge lenda	Then, too, in the villages you
mona bainzo ya matiti mpe ya	can see houses of grass and
nianga.	of thatch.

ku-fut.il-a	to rent
-------------	---------

Inki ntalu benu ke futilaka For how much do you rent the
inzo ina benu ke na yau? house which you have (it)?

Andele

mile (ba-) Fr: mille; thousand

n.kama (ba-) hundred

Betu ke futilaka yau na mile We rent it for 1500 francs ('two
zole katula nkama tanu ya thousand less five hundred of
falanka na ngonda. francs') per month.

ekonomi (ba-) Fr: économie; saving

Betu zona vwanda na inzo ya We want to have a house of our
betu mosi, kasi ntete betu own but first we are saving
ke na kusala baekonomi fioti. a little ('effecting a few
economies').

Samiele

ku-def-a to borrow

Kasi kana benu zona vingila But if you don't want to wait
ntama mingi ve, benu lenda a very long time, you can get
baka inzo ya keledi mpila a house on credit as we did
mosi betu salaka, to kudefa or borrow money.
mbongo.

Andele

ku-zeng-a (mambu) to decide (matters)

Betu vwandaka banza mpila	We've been thinking like that
mosi, kasi betu ke ntete	but we have first some matters
na mambu yankaka ya ku-	to decide.
zenga.	

NARRATIVE

Samiele salaka diambu ya mbote ya kusumba inzo ina. Na luzingu, yau kuluta mbote ya kusumba kima ya luzitu na mbongo mingi, kasi ya kulosa mbongo fioti na kima ya mpamba ve. Yandi ke mpe na mabanza ya kusumba inzo yankaka ve: ina me lunga. Yandi sumbaka yau na kompani mosi ya nene, ina ke tungaka bainzo mpe kuteka yau na keledi.

Yau ke mpasi fioti ya kumona bainzo ya kutungwa na mabaya, samu yau ke zingaka baimvu mingi kwaku ve. Andele ke zonaka mutindu ya bainzo ina. Yandi me mesanaka na yau na Amelike. Yandi ke mpe zonaka kuwa nsunga ya mabaya. Samiele banzaka ke, kana yandi ke vwanda na menga ya mbote, yandi lenda solula inzo ya kutungwa na mabaya na bidiki to sime.

Banda Andele na famili n'andi kwizilaka, bau vwandaka mona kaka bainzo ya kutungwa na bidiki ya kuyokwa, to ya bidiki ya sime, to ya bidiki ya ntoto. Samiele mpe tubilaka yandi ke, na babwala bau lenda mona bainzo ya matiti mpe ya mianga.

Malumalu yai, baAndele ke futilaka inzo na mile zole katula

nkama tanu ya falanka na ngonda. Kasi bau zona sumba inzo ya bau mosi: bau ke na kusala baekonomi fioti. Samiele longisaka yandi ke, bau lenda baka inzo ya keledi mpila mosi bau salaka, to ku-defa mbongo. Andele na nkento n'andi vwandaka banza mpila mosi, kasi bau ke na mambu yankaka ya kuzenga.

DIALOGUE: IN THE KITCHEN

Odette

Kongolé (ba-)

Fr: Congolais; Congolese

Yai ke kilumbu ya munu ya

This is the first time ('day')

ntete ya kukota na kikuku

for me to enter a Congolese

ya Kongole.

kitchen.

Lucie

O? Yau ke mpidina?

Oh, is that so ('is it thus')?

Odette

restaurant (ba-)
/restorã/

restaurant

E, samu banda betu kwizilaka

Yes, because since we came here,

kwaku, baKongole ina

Congolese who have been invi-

vwandaka bokila betu,

ting us have been taking us

vwandaka nata betu na ba-

to restaurants.

restaurants.

Lucie

petétele

Fr: peut-être; perhaps

Kasi samu na inki bau vwa-

But why have they been behaving

ndaka sala mpidina? Pete-

like that? Perhaps they have

tele bau ke na mbongo mingi.

a lot of money.

Odette

Wapi, yau ke samu ya mbongo

No, it's not on account of

ve.

money.

m.bāla (ba-) occasion, time

mbāla mosi once

leponse (ba-) Fr: réponse; response,
answer

Mbala mosi betu yufusaka Once we asked a family; but the
famili mosi; kasi leponse answer they gave us caused us
bau pesaka betu salaka betu much sorrow.
kiadi mingi.

Lucie

Ina ke diambu ya kiadi. That's too bad. What did they
Inki bau tubilaka benu? tell you?

Odette

mu-n.dele (mi-) white person

Bau vwandaka banza ke, samu They thought that because we
betu ke mindele, na mpe are white people and also
banzenza kwaku, petetele strangers here perhaps we
betu vwandaka zona kudia wouldn't want to eat their
madia ya bau ve. food.

Lucie

Mu zaba mbote ina bau tubi- I know well that which they
laka benu. told you.

Ntama, betu mpe vwandaka sala Formerly we also were behaving
mpidina; kasi na manima betu like that; but afterwards we
banzaka ke, muntu ya nzenza thought that a stranger should

fwanda mesana kudia madia
ya insi, kana yandi zona ku-
zaba insi ina, mpe kuzona
yau.

get used to eating the food of
the country if he wants to
know that country and like it.

Odette

na zula ya ina

on top of that, in addi-
tion to that

ku-sob-a

to change, differ

peléseke

Fr: presque; nearly, al-
most

Ina ke ya tieleka; bosu na
zulu ya ina, madia na bainsi
mingi ke peleseke mutindu
mosi; mutindu ya kulambila
yau kaka ke sobaka.

That's true; then in addition to
that, the food of many countries
is almost the same ('one kind');
only the ways of cooking it
differ.

Lucie

Ina ke ya tieleka penza; mu
zaba ke ntangu mosi, tata
na mama ya kamaladi ya
nkwezi na munu ya bakala,
zonaka meka kudia madia ya
insi.

That's very true. I remember
('know') that one time the
father and mother of a friend
of my brother-in-law wished
to try to eat native food.

sakasaka

manioc leaves

fũfu (ba-)

manioc flour (and various
staple dishes)

Betu lambilaka bau madia ya
mutindu na mutindu; na kati
ya bima ina yonso, bau lu-
taka zona madezo, sakasaka
na fufu.

We cooked them all kinds of
food; among all those things
they liked best ('exceeded
to like') beans, manioc leaves
and fufu.

Odette

nzo!

Oh! So! Aha!

Nzo, mpidina?

Is that so?

Lucie

Bika mama!

And how! Boy oh boy!, etc.
(exclamation - to a lady)

Bika mama! Banda ntangu ina
betu ke soludilaka kaka
madia ina.

And how! Since that time we
discuss only that food.

Mu monisaka nkutu nkento
mutindu ya kulambila yau.

Besides, I've shown the lady
how to cook ('manner of cooking')
it.

Odette

Yau ke mpasi ve na kulamba?

Isn't it hard to cook?

Lucie

lu-zolo (ba-)

will, desire, motivation;
love

Ata fioti ve, kana nge ke Not at all ('even a little not')
na luzolo. if you have the desire to.

Odette

Inki ntangu nge lenda longisa When can you teach it to me?
munu yau?

Lucie

konso every, any
Konso ntangu nge zona. Any time you wish.

NARRATIVE

Odette na Lucie vwandaka solula na kikuku. Yau vwandaka kilumbu ya ntete ya Odette ya kukota na kikuku ya Kongole. Ba-Kongole ina vwandaka bokila famili n'andi, vwandaka nata bau na ba-restaurants.

Mbala mosi bau yufusaka famili mosi, samu na inki bau vwandaka sala mpidina. Mvutu ya bau pesaka bau kiadi mingi. Bau banzaka ke, samu bau ke bamindele na banzenza, petetele bau vwandaka zona kudia madia ya bau ve.

Lucie zabaka mbote ina bau tubilaka bau. Yandi mpe na bakala n'andi vwandaka sala pidina; kasi na manima bau sobaka samu bau banzaka ke muntu ya nzenza fwanda mesana kudia madia ya insi, kana yandi zona zaba insi ina mpe kuzola yau. Ina ke ya

tieleka. Bosi mpe na zulu ya ina, madia ya bainsi mingi ke pele-seke mutindu mosi; mutindu ya kulambila yau kaka ke sobaka.

Nkwezi ya Lucie vwandaka na kamaladi n'andi. Ntangu mosi tata na mama ya kamaladi ina zonaka meka kudia madia ya insi. Lucie lambilaka bau madia ya mutindu na mutindu. Na kati ya bima ina yonso bau lutaka zona madezo, sakasaka na fufu. Yandi monisaka nkutu nkento mutindu ya kulambila yau.

Odette zonaka zaba kana yau ke mpasi ve na kulamba. Ve, yau ke mpasi ve kana yandi ke na luzolo. Lucie tubilaka yandi ke yandi lenda longisa yandi konso ntangu yandi zona.

DIALOGUE: DINNER IS SERVED

Samiele

di-sŏlo (ma-)

chat, conversation,
discussion

ku-bw-a tiya

to become animated, to
get warm ('fall fire')

Palado. Mu zaba ke disolo

Excuse me. I know that your

na benu me kubwa tiya,

conversation has gotten inter-

kasi benu lenda tubila

esting but can you tell us

betu inki betu lenda

what we can [do to] help you

sadila benu, samu ya kudia

in order to eat as soon as

malumalu?

possible?

Lucie

ti (ba-)

Fr: thé; tea

ku-tok-a

to boil (intransitive)

ku-bak-a kiozi

to get cold, take cold

Maza ya ti pe ya kafe ka na

The water for tea and coffee is

kutoka; bosi mpe mu banza

boiling; then too I think

ke madia ke na kubaka

that the food is getting cool.

kiozi.

Benu lenda tula bima ya

Can you put the things to eat

kudila na meza?

with onto the table?

Samiele

Ina ke diambu ya mpasi ve.

That's not a difficult matter.

propre(s)

(fr.) clean

Na inki palasi ke malonga ya
propres?

Where are the clean dishes?

Lucie

tiliwale (ba-)

Fr: tiroire; drawer

lalemmwale (ba-)

Fr: l'armoire; cupboard

kwe (ba-)

Fr: coin; corner

Yau ke na tiliwale ya lale-
mmwale ina ke na kwe ina.

They're in the drawer of the
cupboard which is in that
corner.

Samiele

Melesi. Mu banza ke Andele
ke zona kwiza sadisa munu
kutula malonga na meza.

Thanks. I think Andrew will
want to come help me put the
dishes on the table.

Yau ke mpidina ve, Odette?

Isn't that so, Odette?

Odette

ina mpe

there!

E, yau ke pidina. Yandi ina
mpe ke na kwiza.

Yes, that's so. There - he's
coming.

Samiele

Andele, nge zaba ke na ntama
kwaku kisalu ya kutula
bima ya kudila na meza

Andrew, did you know that in
the past here the job of
setting the table ('putting

vwandaka kisalu ya bakento?

the things to eat with on the
table') was woman's work?

Andele

E, mu zaba; ata na Amelike
yau vwandaka mpe pidina.

Yes, I know; even in America
it was also like that.

Lucie

Ata ti malumalu yai, ba-
bakala mingi ke zonaka
sadisa bakento ya bau ve.

Even up to now many men don't
like to help their wives.

ku-sal.asan-a

to help one another

Mu banza ke, yau ke mbote ya
kusalasana; samu tala malu-
malu yai, ntangu betu
vwandaka nata banzungu ya
madia na meza, benu vwandaka
tula bima ya kudila. Ina ke
mbote ve?

I think that it's good to work
together; because look! now,
while we're bringing the pots
of food to the table you are
setting - isn't that good?

Odette

nzalu (ba-)

spoon

nsoma (ba-)

fork

kopo (ba-)

cup

Ina ke mbote kana bau zabaka That would be good, if they knew
bapalasi ya kutula banzalu, the places to put the spoons,
bansoma, bambele na bakopo. forks, knives, and cups.

Andele

potopoto confusion, disorder, mud
Mu banza ke potopoto me kubwa, I suspect the confusion has
samu benu monisaka betu occurred because you didn't
mutindu ya kutudila yau ve. show us how to set them.

Lucie

foti (ba-) Fr: faute; fault
Yau ke kaka kisalu ya babakala It's always the way ('work') of
ya kupesa foti na bakento. men to attribute the fault to
the ladies.

mungwa (ba-) salt
sukadi (ba-) sugar

Samiele, na ntangu mu ke Samuel, while I look for the
sosa mungwa, pidipidi na salt, pepper and sugar, can
sukadi, nge lenda natina you bring us tea and coffee?
betu ti na kafe?

Samiele

E, mambu ve. Benu vwanda ya Yes, sure. Sit yourselves down
benu na meza, bampangi ya at the table, friends ('sib-
betu. lings of us').

Lucie

Mpangi na munu Odette, nge (My sister) Odette, could you
lenda sambila samu ya madia? offer grace? ('prayer about
food').

lu.sambu (ba-)	prayer, blessing
ku-tomb.ul-a	to raise
ku-ki.tomb.ud.il-a (madia)	to serve yourself (food)

Na manima ya lusambu, Samiele After the prayer, Samm will put
ke tula mbisi na malonga meat on the plates, while we
ntangu betu ke kukitombu- help ourselves to the other
dila madia yankaka. food.

NARRATIVE

Samiele zabaka ke disolo ya Lucie na Odette na kikuku
kubwaka tiya. Kasi yandi zonaka ke bau kudia malumalu; yau ina,
yandi zonaka sadisa bau. Bau vwandaka tokisa maza ya ti pe ya
kafe. Na ntangu madia vwandaka baka kiozi, bau zonaka babakala
kutula bima ya kudila na meza.

Na lalemwale na kwe vwandaka tiliwale ya malonga ya propres.
Samiele vwandaka tula yau na meza. Andele kwizaka sadisa yandi.

Na ntama kuna, kisalu ya kutula malonga na meza, vwandaka
kisalu ya bakento. Yau vwandaka mpila mosi ata na Amelike.

Lucie tubaka ke yau ke mbote ya kusalasana; ntangu bau vwandaka nata banzungu ya madia na meza, babakala na bau vwandaka tula bima ya kudila.

Ina vwandaka mbote; kasi bau zabaka bapalasi ya kutula banzalu, bansoma, bambele na bakopo ve. Andele tubaka ke poto-poto ina kubwaka, samu bakento monisaka bau mutindu ya kutudila yau ve. Ina kè kisalu ya babakala ve ya kupesa foti na bakento?

Na ntangu Lucie zonaka sosa mungwa, pidipidi na sukadi, yandi yufusaka bakala na yandi kunatina bau ti na kafe. Na meza yandi yufusaka mpe Odette kusambila samu ya madia. Na manima ya lusambu, Samiele vwandaka tula mbisi na malonga, ntangu bau vwandaka kukitombudila madia yankaka.

DIALOGUE: TABLE TALK

Odette

Andele, nge zaba ke yai ke Andrew, do you know that this
kilumbu ya betu ya ntete is our first time to eat fufu
ya kudia fufu na sakasaka? and sakasaka [manioc leaves]?

Andele

ki-lěngi (bi-) flavor, taste

E, yau ke mpidina ata madezo... Yes, it's the same even with the
samu yai ke na elengi ya beans...since they have a
mutindu yankaka. different sort of flavor.

Odette

Lucie me tubila munu ke, Lucy just told me that she will
yandi ke longisa munu mu- teach me how to cook it.
tindu ya kulambila yau.

Lucie

E, konso ntangu nge zona, Yes, anytime you wish, madame,
mama, kwiza kaka. just come.

Samiele

Kana yandi zona kaka ve, kasi Not just when she wants but
mpe kana yandi ke vwanda rather if she has ('will
na ntangu, samu na kisalu have') time on account of her
n'andi. job.

Lucie

Nge ke salaka, Odette?

Do you work Odette? Sam didn't

Samiele tubilaka munu ve.

tell me.

Odette

ndinga (ba-)

language

Angelé

Fr: Anglais; English

sodá (ba-)

Fr: soldat; soldier

avió (ba-)

Fr: avion; airplane

E, mu ke longisaka ndinga

Yes, I teach the English language

ya Angele na basoda ina ke

to the soldiers who are

na kulonguka kutambusa

learning to pilot planes.

baavio.

Andele

ku-tat.am.an-a

to continue

Kasi betu zaba ntete ve,

But we don't know yet if she will

kana yandi ke tatamana ku-

continue to teach in the months

longa na bangonda ke na

ahead.

kwiza.

Samiele

Samu na inki? Yandi ke ku-

Why? Doesn't she like that job?

zonaka kisalu ina ve?

Andele

Yandi ke zonaka yau, kasi	She likes it but after work
katuka na kisalu, yandi ke	('from at work') she hasn't
vwandaka na ntangu mingi	much time to look after the
ya kutala mambu ya famili,	affairs of the family and to
mpe ya kuvunda ve.	rest.

Odette

sekeletele (ba-)	Fr: secretaire; secretary
E, ina ke ya tieleka. Mu ke	Yes, that's true. I am thinking
na kubanza kwenda vwanda	of going to be a secretary
sekeletele na kompani ya	in my husband's company; be-
bakala na munu; samu mu ke	cause I won't have to work
fwanda sala na inzo ve	at home like a teacher.
mpila mosi nlongi.	

Samiele

lesanse	Fr: l'essence; gasoline
Andele, bilo ya kompani ya	Andrew, is the office of your
nge ya lesanse ke kaka	oil company still there on
vana na zulu ya mongo ina?	top of that hill?

Andele

tanki (ba-)	Fr: tank; tank
kubaka tiya	to catch fire
ya impa	new

talié / tadié (ba-)

Fr: atelier; shop, factory

Chanic

Chanic (Chantier Naval de
l'Intérieur du Congo =
a Company)

Ve, banda batanki bakilaka

No, since the tanks caught fire,

tiya, mu tungisaka biko ya

I had a new office built near

impa penepene na talie ya

the shop of Chanic.

Chanic.

Lucie

masuwa (ba-)

ship, river boat

di-běnde (bi-/ba-)

metal, steel

Inki talie ya Chanic? Ina ya

Which shop of Chanic? The ship

kutunga masuwa to ina ya

yard or that which fabricates

kuzenga bibende?

('cuts') metals?

Andele

Ina ya masuwa. Penepene vana

The shipyard ('that for ship').

mpe bau ke na kutunga inzo

Near there they're building a

mosi ya nene.

large building.

Kasi mu zaba ntete ve kana

But I don't know yet what it is

yau ke ya inki.

for ('if it is for what').

mfumu (ba-)

chief

sántela (ba-)

Fr: centre; center

Lucie

Mu banza ke yau ke inzo ina I think that it's that building
mfumu ya kompani na betu which our company manager told
tubilaka betu, ke vwanda us will be a center for storing
santele ya kulundila bi- medicine.
longo.

Odette

falamasí (ba-) Fr: pharmacie; drug store
Nge ke salaka na falamasi? Do you work for a drug company?

Lucie

infirmiele, infirmière Fr: infirmière; nurse
(ba-)
E; kasi kisalu ya munu ke penza Yes, but my profession is
infirmière ya bana ya fioti. actually ('more') a nurse of
little children.

Odette

Kasi samu na inki nge sobaka But why did you change jobs?
kisalu?

Lucie

ku-dil-a to cry
Samu mu ke monaka kiadi mingi I experienced a lot of grief
ya kumona bana ke na kudila. in seeing crying children.

NARRATIVE

Madia vwandaka mingi mpe ya mutindu na mutindu. Ina vwandaka kilumbu ya ntete ya Odette na Andele ya kudia fufu na sakasaka. Yau vwandaka mpe pila ina samu na madezo: elengi na yau vwandaka ya mutindu yankaka. Konso ntangu Odette ke zona, yandi lenda kwenda longuka mutindu ya kulambila madia ina na Lucie.

Na Odette ina ke diambu ya luzolo kaka ve, kasi mpe ya ntangu. Yandi ke longisaka ndinga ya Angele na basoda ina ke na kulonguka kutambusa baavio. Katuka na kisalu, yandi ke vwandaka na ntangu mingi ya kutala mambu ya famili mpe ya kuvunda ve. Petetele na ntangu ke kwiza, yandi ke vwanda sekeletele na kompani ya bakala n'andi. Mpidina, yandi ke fwanda vwanda sala na inzo ve mpila mosi nlongi.

Bakala n'andi, Andele, ke na kompani ya lesanse. Bilo n'andi vwandaka na zulu ya mongo; kasi banda batanki bakilaka tiya, yandi tungisaka bilo ya impa penepene na talie ya Chanic, ina ya bibende ve, kasi ya masuwa.

Penepene na Chanic ina mpe bau ke na kutunga inzo mosi ya nene. Yau ke vwanda santele ya kulundila bilongo. Bau tubilaka Lucie mpidina na mfumu n'andi ya kompani. Ntete yandi vwandaka infirmière ya bana ya fioti kasi malumalu yai yandi ke salaka na falamasi. Yandi ke monaka kiadi mingi ya kumona bana ke na kudila; yau ina, yandi sobilaka kisalu.

DIALOGUE: THE END OF THE EVENING

Odette

Samiele, nge ke kaka na ku- Samuel, are you still working
sadila na palasi ina Andele at the place which Andy showed
monisaka munu? me?

Samiele

Juillet

Fr: Juillet; July

E, kasi na ngonda ya Juillet Yes, but in July we're going to
betu ke basika na inzo ina. move out of that building.

finances /finans/

Fr: finances; finance

ku-fut.is-a

to make (someone) pay,
collect

buludingi (ba-)

building

mpaku (ba-)

tax

Bau zona ke bantu yonso ke They want all the people who
salaka na bilo ya Finances, work in the Finance office to
fwanda vwanda na buludingi be in the same building with
mosi na bantu ya bilo ya the people of the tax collec-
kufutisa mpaku. tion office.

Lucie

Benu ke monaka imbi ya ku- Don't you feel ('see') bad(ness)
sadila na inzo ina ve? to work in that building?

boloko (ba-)

Fr: bloc; jail, prison

fenétele (ba-)	Fr: fenêtre; window
na zulu zulu	high up
ki-baka (bi-)	wall
ku-pas.uk-a	to crack (intransitive)
ma-lembe ()	slowness
malembe malembe	slowly, gradually, softly
Yau ke mpila mōsi boloko;	It's just like a jail; all the
bafenetele yonso na zulu	windows high up like that; and
zulu mpidina; bosi pe	then the walls are cracking
bibaka ke na kupasuka	gradually.
malembe malembe.	

Samiele

E, ina ke ya tieleka.	Yes, that's true.
ku-la.uk-a	to go crazy
ki-lau (bi-)	crazy one, insane person; foolish one
Bantu yankaka ke sokusaka	Other people tease us that we're
betu ke betu ke bilau, yau	crazy and for that reason they
yina bau kangilaka betu	shut us up there.
kuna.	
kuna na kati	inside there
Benu zaba inki betu ke tubi-	Do you know what we tell them?
laka bau? Bau ke mpe bilau,	They're crazy too because they

samu bau ke kwizaka kuna

come inside there.

na kati.

Lucie

Nani ke na nsatu ya kima

Who wants something more to

yankaka ya kudia?

eat?

ku-los.am-a

to be thrown away

Kana betu ke manisa madia yai

If we don't finish this food,

ve, yau ke kaka losama,

it will just be thrown away

samu bantu ya kudia yau ke

because there will be nobody

vwanda ve.

to eat it.

Odette

Ina ke kiadi mingi; madia

That's too bad - such delicious

ya elengi mpila yai.

food ('food of this kind of
flavor').

ki-vumu (bi-)

stomach, abdomen, preg-
nancy

zole zole

to be filled up

ku-ful.us-a

to fill up, cause to be
full

Kiadi ke betu ke na bivumu

Too bad that we don't have two

zole zole ve...melesi mingi,

stomachs apiece...thanks a

mu me fuluka mingi.

lot, I am very full ('have
gotten very full').

Lucie

desele (ba-)

Fr: dessert; dessert

Ata gato ya desele?

Even cake for dessert?

Odette

Mu banza ke mu ke diaka na

I'm afraid ('I think') that I

kifulu ve. Melesi mingi.

have no more room. Thanks a
lot.

Andele

vela (ba-)

Fr: verre; glass, tumbler

Mu zona kaka vela mosi diaka

I just want another glass of

ya maza.

water.

Samiele

Konso ntangu benu zona kwenda,

Any time you wish to go (then)

bosi benu tubila betu; samu

tell us because we know you

betu zaba ke benu bikaka

left sick children at home.

bana ya maladi na inzo.

Andele

Ina ke ya tieleka.

That's right.

suka suka

early in the morning

Mu banza ke, betu fwanda kwenda

I think that we must go right

malumalu yai, samu mpe

now also because I'll go to

mbasi mu ke kwenda na

work very early in the morning

kisalu na suka suka.

tomorrow.

Odette

Betu ke na kiadi ke betu	We're sorry that we couldn't
lenda solula mingi mingi ve;	chat very much; also that we
bosi mpe, betu fwanda kwenda	have to leave ('go to return')
vutuka na ntinu; kasi melesi	in a hurry; but thank you very
mingi na mambu yonso.	much for everything.
ki-vuvu (bi-)	hope
wikende (ba-)	weekend

Betu ke na kivuvu ke betu ke	We hope that we will see each
monana na wikende ke kwiza.	other next weekend.

Lucie

Betu ke mpe na kiese ya	And we are happy to be with you.
kuvwanda na benu. Benu	Go along and sleep well.
kwenda lala mbote.	

Andele

E, melesi mingi.	Thank you very much.
------------------	----------------------

NARRATIVE

Samiele ke kaka na ku sadila na palasi Andele monisaka Odette. Kasi yandi tubilaka bau ke na ngonde ya Juillet, bau ke basika na inzo ina. Yau ke mpidina, samu bantu yonso ke salaka na bilo ya Finances, fwanda vwanda na buludingi mosi na bantu ya bilo ya kufutisa mpaku.

Bantu ke sadilaka na bilo ya Finances ke monaka imbi ya kusadila na inzo ina, samu yau ke kome boloko: bafenetele na zulu Zulu. Bosi mpe bibaka ke na kupasuka malembe malembe.

Bau ke sokusaka bau na bantu yankaka ke bau ke bilau, yau yina bau kangilaka bau kuna. Bau ke vutudilaka bau ke bau mpe ke bilau, samu bau ke kotaka na inzo ina.

Ata madia ke na elengi mingi, petetele yau ke losama, samu banzenza fulukaka mingi. Kiadi ke, bau vwandaka na bivumu zole zole ve, samu ya kudia ata gato ya desele. Andele kaka muntu zonaka vela mosi ya maza.

Banzenza fwanda kwenda malumalu, samu bau bikaka bana ya maladi na inzo; bosi pe Andele ke kwendaka na kisalu na suka suka.

Ata ke bau fwanda kwenda vutuka na ntinu, bau ke na kiese mingi na mambu yonso. Bau ke mpe na kivuvu ke bau ke monana na wikende ke kwiza.

Lucie na bakala n'andi vwandaka na kiese mingi ya kuvwanda na bau.

GROUP B: MONEY, COUNTING AND BARGAINING

DIALOGUE: BUYING CLOTHES

-A-

pantaló (ba-)

Fr: pantalon; trousers

ndombe (ba-)

blackness, Negro

Ntalu ikwa na pantalo ina
ya ndombe?

How much for those black
trousers?

-B-

Yau ke pata makumi zole na
tanu.

It's 125 francs (25 five franc
units).

mezile (ba-)

Fr: mesure; size

Nge zona mu pesa nge ina
ke na mezile ya nge?

Do you want me to give you [one]
which is your size?

-A-

bulé (ba-)

Fr: fleu; blue

Vingila fioti. Mu banza ke
mu zona ina ya bule. Yau
ke ntalu mosi?

Wait a bit. I think I want
[one] which [is] blue. Is it
the same price?

-B-

E, yonso ke ntalu mosi.
ata...ata

Yes, all are the same price.
either...or

Ata ya ndombe ata ya bule,
ke kaka pata makumi zole
na tanu.

Either the black or the blue is
only 125 francs.

-A-

ku-kít-a descend, go down, diminish
Nge ke na bapantalo yankaka Don't you have other pants which
ve ina ya kukita na ntalu? are lower in price?

-B-

ki-baka (bi-) wall
ku-sol.ul-a to find
E, kuna na kibaka ina, nge Yes, there on that wall you can
lenda solula ya pata kumi find 95 franc [ones].
na ivwa.

-A-

kalité (ba-) Fr: qualité; quality
Mu banza ke ina ke ya kalite I think those are not of very
ya mbote mingi ve; monisa good quality; show me a blue
munu pantalo mosi ya bule, one [at] 125 francs.
ya pata makumi zole na
tanu.

-B-

nimeló (ba-) Fr: numero; number, size
Nge zaba nimelo nge ke Do you know the number you wear?
vwataka?

-A-

Sosila munu ntete nimelo ya Find me first size sixteen.
kumi na sambanu.

-B-

ku-fwand-a	to suffice
fwanda	must, have to, should
ku-kũk-a	to fit
lu.keto (ba-)	waist

Kiadi nimelo ina me manisa. Sorry, that size is out of
 Kasi ata kumi na nsambodia, stock ('has finished'). But
 ata kumi na nana, ke fwanda either seventeen or eighteen
 kuka nge na luketo. should fit you in the waist.

-A-

Mambu ve; pesa munu nimelo Never mind, give me size seven-
 kumi na nsambodia. teen.
 simisi Fr: chemise; shirt
 Pesa munu mpe simisi ya bule, Give me also a blue shirt, size
 nimelo makumi tatu na zole 32 neck.
 na singu.

-B-

Nge zona diaka kima yankaka? Do you want something else
 besides?
 sentile (ba-) Fr: ceinture; belt
 soseti (ba-) Fr: chausette; socks
 impu (ba-) hat
 fêtele (ba-) Fr: feutre; felt

sengelé (ba-)	Eng: singlet; undershirt
kalesó (ba-)	Fr: caleçon; underdrawers
Betu ke na basentile, ba- soseti, basampatu, baimpu ya fetele, basengele, bakaleso na bima yankaka nkaka.	We have belts, socks, shoes, felt hats, undershirts, under- pants and various other things.

-A-

ku-bĩm-a	to come out
ku-bĩm.is-a	to withdraw, take out
banki (ba-)	Fr: banque; bank
Kiadi ke mu bimisaka mbongo mingi na banki ve.	Too bad I didn't take a lot of money out of the bank.
totale (ba-)	Fr: totale; sum total
Pesa munu totale.	Give me the total amount.

-B-

na...na	both...and
ku-kat.ul-a	to remove, subtract, less
katula	less; besides, in addition to ('subtracting')
Na simisi na pantalo, ke pata makumi iya katula pata mosi.	Both shirt and pants [together] are 195 francs ('forty five franc units minus one').

-A-

sanzé (ba-)

Fr: échange; change

mile / midi (ba-)

Fr: mille; thousand

falá (= falanka)

franc

Nge ke na sanze ya mile fala?

Have you change of a thousand
francs?

-B-

fwete

must, should (fwanda)

kiliyá / kidiyá (ba-)

Fr: client; customer

E, betu fwete vwanda na yau.

Yes, we should have it. We

Betu ke na bakidiya mingi.

have lots of customers.

nkama (ba-)

100

Yai ke mbongo na nge: nkama
zole, tatu, iya na tanu.Here's your money: two hundred,
three, four and five.

-A-

lu.kaya (ba-)

banknote, bill, leaf

Mu pesaka nge lukaya ya
mile fala ve!I didn't give you a thousand
franc note!!!!?

-B-

ku-zimb.an-a

to make a mistake, get
lost or mixed upE, palado, mu me zimbana.
yai ndeYes, excuse me, I made a mistake.
here then

biye (ba-)

Fr: billet; bill

Yai nde biye ya nkama mosi
ya pata.

Here then, a five hundred franc
bill ('bill of one hundred
five franc units').

-A-

matabisi (ba-)

Port: matabiche; gratuity,
tip, thirteenth of the
baker's dozen, bonus

Nge ke pesaka ata matabisi
ve?

Don't you even give a bonus?

-B-

Kwiza diaka mbasi kamaladi;
mu ke pesa nge matabisi ya
nene.

Come back again tomorrow,
friend, [and] I'll give a big
bonus.

NARRATIVE

Muntu mosi kwendaka na magazini. Kalaka tubilaka yandi ke, bapantalo ina yandi yufusaka, ata ya ndombe ata ya bule, vwandaka pata makumi zole na tanu. Yandi monisaka mpe yandi bapantalo yankaka ya pata kumi na ivwa. Yau vwandaka ya kukita na ntalu samu kalite vwandaka ya imbi.

Yau ina kidiya zonaka sumba pantalo ya bule ya mutindu ina yandi yufusaka ntete. Nimelo ya mezile n'andi vwandaka kumi na sambanu; kasi kiadi yau manisaka. Kasi ata nimelo kumi na

nsambodia ata kumi na nana, zonaka vwanda kuka yandi na luketo. Yau ina yandi bakaka nimelo ya kumi na nsambodia. Yandi sum-baka mpe simisi ya bule, ya nimelo makumi tatu na zole na singu.

Kalaka ya magazini, zonaka mpe tekila yandi basentile, basoseti, basampatu, baimpu ya fetele, basengele, bakaleso na bima yankaka nkaka. Kasi yandi sumbaka kima mosi diaka ve samu, kome yandi tubaka, yandi bimisaka mbongo mingi na banki ve.

Totale ya simisi na pantalo vwandaka pata makumi iya, katula pata mosi. Yandi pesaka lukaya ya mile fala na kalaka. Kome sanze, yandi vutudilaka yandi biye mosi ya pata na biye tatu ya nkama nkama. Kiadi yandi zimbanaka, na manima, yandi pesaka yandi diaka biye mosi ya nkama mosi ya pata.

Kidiya yufusaka matabisi na kalaka ya magazini. Kasi yandi pesaka yandi kima mosi ve; yandi tubilaka yandi kwenda diaka kilumbu vwandaka landa samu ya kubaka matabisi ya mbote.

DIALOGUE: GETTING SOME CURIOS

Kidiya

Mbote mbuta muntu!

Greetings sir!

Muteki [mu-teki (mi-/bami-)'seller']

Mbote kidiya!

Greetings customer!

komande (ba-)

Fr: commande; order

Nge zona sumba malumalu yai,

Do you wish to buy now or do you

kana nge zona pesa komande?

wish to place an order?

Kidiya

Mu ke lutaka zona pesa

I prefer to place orders but I

komande, kasi mu ke na

don't have time.

ntangu ve.

e-kěko (bi-/babi-)

sculpture, statue, carving

n.zau (ba-)

elephant

m.pembe ya nzau (ba-)

ivory, tusk

Ntalu ikwa na ekeko yina ya

How much for that ivory sculp-

mpembe ya nzau?

ture?

Muteki

Yau ke kaka nkama mosi na

That's just 150 [francs].

pata kumi.

Kidiya

ku-tamb.ul-a

to accept; walk

Nge lenda tambula nkama na Can you accept 125?
pata tanu?

Muteki

Mu lenda ve. Kasi kana nge I cannot. But if you will buy
ke sumba mpe bima yankaka, other things I can take that
mu lenda baka ntalu ina. price.

Kidiya

touriste (ba-)	tourist
souvenir (ba-)	souvenir
kwenda mvimba	to go for good, go per- manently

Mu ke touriste ve, kasi mu I'm not a tourist, but I want
zona sumba basouvenirs to buy lots of souvenirs from
mingi ya Congo; samu mu ke the Congo, because I am going
na kwenda mvimba na Mputu. for good to Europe.

Muteki

Kana mpidina mu lenda kakudila In that case ('If thus') I can
nge mingi. discount a lot for you.
Bima ya ntalu ikwa nge zona What price things do you want
sumba? to buy?

Kidiya

Mu zaba ntete mbote mbote ve. I don't yet know very well.
ki-kunku (bi-) group

Kasi kana nge zona mu lenda
sumbila na bikunku.

n.dēke (ba-)

n.goma (ba-)

cendrier (ba-)

nioka (ba-)

But if you like I can buy in
groups.

bird

tom-tom, drum

(fr.) ash tray

snake

Ntete bikeko: pesa munu ndeke
ina ya mpembe ya nzau, intu
ya nkento ina ya inti,
muntu ina ke na kubula
ngoma, na cendrier ina ya
intu ya nioka.

First sculptures: give me that
ivory bird, that wooden head
of a woman, that man who is
beating a drum and that ash
tray [in the shape] of the
head of a snake.

Muteki

ki-timba (bi-)

pipe

Mu ke mpe na kitimba mosi ya
kitoko ya mpembe ya nzau.

I have also a lovely ivory pipe.

Yai kaka me bikala.

It's all that's left ('it only
has remained').

Nge zona sumbila yau ata
tat'a nge ve?

Don't you want to buy it perhaps
('even') for your father?

Kidiya

tabaka (ba-)

Fr: tabac; tobacco

sigaleti (ba-)

cigarette

Tat'a munu ke kunwaka tabaka	My father doesn't smoke ('drink')
ve, kasi sigaleti.	[a pipe] ('tobacco') but
	cigarettes.

Muteki

ku-n.gěng-a to shine

Kana mpidina, nge zona kitimba In that case do you want this
yai ya sigaleti? Tala yau cigarette holder? Look, it
ke na kungenga. is shining.

Kidiya

Mambu ve, pesa munu yau. Nge O.K., give it to me. Can you
lenda pesa munu totale? give me the total (for these
things)?

Muteki

wonqa (ba-) fear

ku-yib-a to steal, cheat

Mona wonga ve kidiya, mu ke	Have no fear, [sir] ('customer'),
yiba nge ve.	I won't cheat you.

ku-sol-a to choose

Inki bima yankaka nge zona What else do you want to choose?
sola?

Kidiya

sakosi (ba-) Fr: sacoché; handbag

m.pusu (ba-) raffia, palmetto, palm
fiber

kulele (ba-)

Fr: couleur; color

Mu zona basakosi ina, samu ya
 mwan'a munu ya nkento, ina
 ke mvula kumi na zole, impu
 ina ya bampusu, mpe kitunga
 ina ya basinga ya kulele ya
 mutindu na mutindu.

I want those handbags for my
 daughter who is twelve years
 old, that palmetto hat and
 that basket with strings of
 different colors.

Muteki

di-kulu (ma-)

leg, foot

di-papa (ma-)

sandals

samó (ba-)

Fr: chameau; camel

Mu ke mpe na makulu ya mapapa,
 ya mikanda ya ngombe mpe ya
 samo. Nge zona tala yau?

I also have pairs ('feet') of
 sandals of calf leather ('skin')
 and of camel. Do you wish to
 see them?

Kidiya

dwani (ba-)

Fr: douane; customs duty

Ve, melesi. Mu zona sumba
 bima ina mu lenda sumbila na
 Mputu ve, samu ntalu ya dwani
 ke mingi.

No, thanks. I don't want to buy
 things I can buy in Europe
 because the customs are
 high.

po (ba-)

Fr: pot; pot

ku-men-a

to grow

Nge ke na bapo ya kumenisina Don't you have pots for growing
bafololo ve? flowers in?

Muteki

Kiadi mu ke na yau ve, samu Sorry, I don't have because I
mu vwandaka na ntoto ya didn't have clay to make them
kusadila yau ve. with.

ntwala

front

Hotel Regina

(a hotel in Leopoldville)

Kana nge zona, nge lenda If you wish you can buy them in
sumbila yau na ntwala ya front of the Hotel Regina.
Hotel Regina.

Kidiya

Melesi mingi penza. Ntalu Thank you very much. How much
ikwa mu ke futa nge na bima must I pay you for all the
yonso? things?

Muteki

Vingila fioti...Samu na nge, Just a moment...Since it's you,
pesa munu mile zole na give me 2500 francs.
nkama tanu.

Kidiya

ku-beb-a

to spoil, turn bad

ku-beb.is-a

to waste, spend, spoil
(tr.)

Kuwa kamaladi: nge zaba ke
mu ke bebisa mbongo mingi
na dwani.

avió (ba-)

ku-n.dĩm-a

kilo (ba-)

Bonso nge zaba kwendila na
avio, bau ke ndimaka kaka
bima ya bakilo makumi zole
na muntu muntu.

Katudila munu nkama tanu ina:
mu me sumba mingi.

Listen friend: you know that I
will spend a lot of money for
customs.

Fr: avion; airplane

to permit

kilogram

Similarly you are permitted only
things of twenty kilograms per
person.

Discount those five hundred for
me: I've bought a great deal.

Muteki

kukangila (muntu)
mutima

to be hard on someone
('to close for someone
the heart')

Mambu ve, mu zona kangila
nge mutima ve.

O.K., I don't want to be hard
on you.

Pesa munu mile zole, nkama
zole na pata kumi.

Give me 2250 francs.

Kidiya

Melesi. Wapi matabisi ya
munu?

Thanks. Where's my bonus?

Muteki

Matabasi diaka?

Bonus too?

ku-pas.ul-a

to split, divide, crack
(c.f. ku-pas.uk-a)

n.suki (ba-)

hair

ki-sanu / ki-sanunu
(bi-)

comb

Inki nge zona - nsoma ya

What do you want - a hair parter

kupasudila nsuki to kisanu?

('fork for parting the hair' -
a single pronged device) or
a comb?

Kidiya

Pesa munu yonso zole.

Give me both.

Muteki

di-bāndi (ma-)

baldness

Kasi nge ke na dibandi ve?

But aren't you bald? What are

Inki nge ke sadila yau?

you going to do with them?

Kidiya

Mu ke pesa yau na mwan'a munu

I'm going to give [them] to my

ya bakala, ina ke na imvu

fifteen year old son.

kumi na tanu.

Muteki

Baka yau.

Take them.

Kidiya

Melesi kamaladi. Mbongo ya Thanks, friend. Here's your
nge yau yai. money.

NARRATIVE

Muntu mosi kwendaka sumba basouvenirs mingi ya Congo. Yandi
vwandaka touriste ve. Yandi vwandaka kwenda mvimba na Mputu.
Yandi vwandaka ata na ntangu mingi, samu ya kupesa komande ve.

Ntalu ya ekeko mosi ya mpembe ya nzau yandi zonaka sumba
vwandaka nkama mosi na pata kumi. Yandi zonaka pesa nkama mosi
na pata tanu. Muteki tubilaka yandi ke, kana yandi zonaka sumba
bima yankaka, yandi zonaka tambula ntalu ina. Ina vwandaka
ngindu ya mbote na kidiya; yandi zonaka sumbila na bikunku.

Na kikunku ya ntete, yandi solaka bikeko na bikeko: ndeke
ya mpembe na nzau, intu ya nkento, muntu ke na kubula ngoma, na
cendrier ya intu ya nioka ya inti. Muteki sumbisaka yandi mpe
kitimba mosi ya sigaleti; yau vwandaka ngenga.

Yandi yufusaka totale, kasi muteki tubilaka yandi kumona
wonga ve; yandi zonaka vwanda kuyiba yandi ve.

Na kikunku ya zole, yandi sumbaka basakosi samu ya mwan'andi
ya nkento ina ke na mvula kumi na zole. Yandi sumbaka mpe impu ya
bampusu, na kitunga ya basinga ya bakulele ya mutindu na mutindu.

Samu ya ntalu ya dwani ke mingi, yandi zonaka sumba bima ina

yandi lendaka sumbila na Mputu ve; bonso makulu ya mapapa, ya mikanda ya ngombe, mpe ya samo. Yandi zonaka mpe sumba bapo ya kumenisina bafololo, kasi muteki vwandaka na yau ve; samu yandi vwandaka na ntoto ya kusadila yau ve: yandi tubilaka yandi kwenda na ntwala ya Hotel Regina.

Na totale muteki yufusaka mile zole na nkama tanu. Kasi kidiya monisaka yandi ke, yandi vwandaka kwenda babisa mbongo mingi na dwani; bosu mpe, kwendila na avio, bau ke ndimaka kaka bakilo makumi zole na muntu muntu. Yandi zonaka yandi katudila yandi nkama tanu. Muteki zonaka kangila yandi mutima ve: yandi yufusaka yandi mile zole na nkama zole na pata kumi.

Kome matabisi, muteki zonaka pesa yandi ata nsoma ya kupasudila nsuki, to kisanunu. Kidiya ata yandi vwandaka na dibandi, yandi zonaka baka yonso zole: samu na yandi mosi ve, kasi samu na mwana na yandi ya bakala, ina ke na imvu kumi na tanu.

DIALOGUE: TALKING SHOP

Mingiedi

Nge zaba, Luvwalu?

You know [something], Luvwalu?

Luvwalu

E.

Yeah [what?]

Mingiedi

lekenzi (ba-)

Fr: la quinzaine; fif-
teenth of the month

ku-kit-a

to trade, stock up

Thysville

(City SW of Leopoldville)

Mu banza ke na kati ya

I think that between the fif-

lekenzi ti na nsuku ya

teenth of the month (until)

ngonda ke kwiza, mu ke

[and] the end of next month

kwenda kitila na Thysville.

I'll go to trade in Thysville.

Luvwalu

m.fuka (ba-)

debt

wēnze (ba-)

small market, village
market

Nge banza ke bantu mingi ya

Do you think that a lot of

mfuka ke futa nge bubu na

debtors are going to pay you

wenze?

today in the small market?

Mingiedi

ku-def-a

to borrow

ku-def.is-a

to lend, cause to borrow,
sell on credit

n.gonda (ba-)

month

E mu ke na kubanza mpidina;
 bosì mpe mu defisaka bantu
 mingi ve na ngonda lutaka.
 E nge?

Yes, I think so; besides I didn't
 lend to many people ('cause
 many people to borrow') last
 month. And you?

Luvwalu

depi

Fr: depuis; since

ku-komase

Fr: commencer; begin

paké (ba-)

Fr: paquet; package

bulé (ba-)

Fr: bleu; bluing (for
laundry use)

twaleti (ba-)

Fr: toilette; grooming

ku-bend-a

to pull, attract

Depi mu komaseneke tekila
 kuna bima ya fioti fioti,
 kome bapake ya sigaleti,
 ya mafofolo, ya bule na
 bima ya twaleti, mu ke
 bendaka diaka bantu ke
 zonaka defa ve.

Since I started to sell there
 little things like packages
 of cigarettes, of matches, of
 bluing and toilet articles, I
 no longer attract people [who]
 want to borrow.

Mingiedi

avant /avã/, ava

(Fr.): before

Kasi ava, inki nge vwandaka	But what were you selling there
tekila kuna ina vwandaka	before which was attracting
benda bau?	them?

Luvwalu

Bika!	(an exclamation) Let be! Don't ask! stop!
-------	----------------------------------------------

Bika mpangi'a munu Mingiedi!	Oh boy, my friend Mingiedi!
------------------------------	-----------------------------

métele (ba-)	Fr: mètre; meter, length of cloth
--------------	--------------------------------------

ki-m.bundi (bi-)	dress-length of cloth for woman's dress
------------------	--------------------------------------------

pantúfule (ba-)	Fr: pantoufle; tennis shoe
-----------------	-------------------------------

di-boko (ma-)	hand, arm
---------------	-----------

buteye (ba-)	Fr: bouteille; bottle
--------------	-----------------------

mananasi (ba-)	perfume
----------------	---------

púdele (ba-)	Fr: poudre; powder
--------------	--------------------

Na ntangu ina mu vwandaka	At that time I was selling trouser
tekisa bametele ya bapantalo,	goods, shirts, dress goods,
basimisi, bimbundi, bapantu-	tennis shoes; other times when
fule; ntangu yankaka, kana	I had a man to help me I used
mu ke na muntu ya kupesa	to take also bottles of perfume,
munu maboko, mu vwandaka	packages of powder and other
nata mpe babuteye ya	toilet goods.
mananasi, bapake ya pudele,	
na bima yankaka ya twaleti.	

Mingiedi

pélete (ba-)

Fr: perte; loss

kubaka pelete

to take a loss

Nge vwandaka baka pelete ve
ya kudefisa bau bima yina?

Weren't you taking a loss to
trust them for things like
that?

Luvwalu

Ata fioti ve.

Not a bit.

kudia mfuka

to go into debt

Malumalu yai yau ikeke ve ke,
mu ke nataka kaka bima ina,
samu ya kutina bantu ke
kudiaka mfuka.

Now it is not the case that I
take those things in order to
avoid people who get into
debt.

Mingiedi

Kasi samu na inki?

But why?

Luvwalu

butiki (ba-)

Fr: boutique; shop

Samu mu me bakaka muntu ya
kubika na butiki, ntangu
mu ke na zandu to na wenze.

Because I have hired ('gotten')
a man to leave in the shop
when I am in the big market or
the village market.

komelesa (ba-)

Fr: commerçant; business
man

mu-n.kita (mi-)

business, trade

kusala munkita

to carry on business

Yandi vwandaka ntete komelesa; He was originally a business

kasi banda yandi bwilaka,

man; but since he failed ('fell'),

yandi zona sala fioti, ava

he wants to work a little before

ya kukomase diaka kusala

starting again to carry on a

munkita.

business.

Mingiedi

lítele (ba-)

Fr: litre; liter

peteló (ba-)

Fr: pétrole; kerosene

mafuta (ba-)

oil, fat, grease

sans

(Fr.): without

potopoto (ba-)

confusion, disorder, mud

konti (ba-)

Fr: compte; accounts

Ina ke mayele ya mbote; samu

That's very smart because when

kana nge me kwenda na babwala

you go to the villages to

samu ya kukita, nge ke vwanda

stock up you'll have a man to

na muntu ya kutekila nge,

sell for you even liters of

ata balitele ya petelo, ya

kerosene [or] of oil without

mafuta, sans kusala nge

making you any trouble in

potopoto na konti.

[your] accounts.

Luvwalu

Putuluké (ba-)

Fr: Portuguais; Portuguese

dese (ba-)

Fr: dessin; embroidery

má.m.vwemvwe/ ma.m.vwemvwe

cheap, inexpensive

Mu tubilaka nge ke mu kwendaka Did I tell you I went to that
 na magazini ya Putuluke ina Portuguese store which sold
 tekilaka nge basinga ya you embroidery thread so
 dese ya mamvwemvwe? cheaply?

Mingiedi

Ve, nge tubilaka munu ve. No, you didn't tell me. Did
 Nge kutaka yau? you find ('encounter') it?

Luvwalu

ku-pöl-a

to get wet

ku-pöd.is-a

to wet, dampen, soak

E, kasi basinga ya mbote Yes, but the good thread has
 kukimanisinaka; ina bika- all been sold ('finished it-
 laka, vwandaka kome bau self'); that which remained
 podisaka yau na maza. was as if it had been soaked
 in water.

Yau ina mu bakaka kima mosi That's why I didn't get a
 ve. thing.

Mingiedi

ku-pön-a

to choose

Nge ke na lezo. Ntangu mu You're right. When I bought
 sumbaka ya munu, mu zabaka mine I didn't know that I
 ve ke mu ponaka mpe yankaka also chose some of the bad.
 ya imbi.

ku-sob-a

to differ

ku-sob.is-a

to change (transitive),
exchange

meya (ba-)

Port: meya; half franc

Kasi samu mu vwandaka na But because I didn't have time
 ntangu ya kwenda sobisa yau to go change it, I am selling
 ve, mu ke na kutekila yau, it from two and a half francs
 katuka falanka zole na meya, to five francs.
 ti na pata mosi.

Luvwalu

ku-funt-a

be thrown out, be unable
to be sold, go to waste

Kasi kana yau ke funta, nge But won't you take a loss if it
 ke baka pelete ve? can't be sold ('goes to waste')?

Mingiedi

deja

(Fr): already

Yau ke vwanda mingi ve, samu It won't be very much because
 mu me tekaka deja mingi... I have already sold a lot...

ku-kos-a

to lie, cheat, take ad-
vantage of

kuzibula meso

open [ones] eyes, be
smart, watch out

Yau ina, kana komelesa zona

That's why if a trader doesn't

kosama ve, yandi fwenda

want to be cheated he must

zibula meso na kusumba

look sharp in buying cheap

bima ya mamvwemvwe.

things.

NARRATIVE

Petetele na kati ya lekenzi ti na nsuka ya ngonda ke kwiza, Mingiedi ke kwenda kitila na Thysville. Yandi ke na kubanze ke, bubu na wenze, bantu mingi ya mfuka ke futa yandi; bosu mpe yandi defisaka bantu mingi ve na ngonda lutaka.

Kasi Luvwalu defisaka bantu mingi? Ikele ve. Depi yandi komaseke tekila bima ya fioti na wenze, yandi ke bendaka diaka bantu ke zonaka kudefa ve. Malumalu yai, yandi ke tekaka kaka kome bapake ya sigaleti, ya mafofolo, ya bule na bima ya twaleti.

Na ntama, yandi vwandaka benda bantu, samu yandi vwandaka tekisa bametele ya bapantalo, basimisi, bimbundi, bapantufele; na ntangu yankaka kana yandi ke na muntu ya kupesa yandi maboko, yandi vwandaka nata mpe babuteye ya mananasi, bapake ya pudele na bima yankaka ya twaleti.

Yandi vwandaka baka ata pelete fioti ve na kudefisa bantu ina. Malumalu yai, ikele ve ke yandi ke nataka diaka bima ina

ve samu ya kutina bantu ke zonaka kudia mfuka, kasi samu yandi ke na muntu ya kubika na butiki ntangu yandi ke na zandu to na wenze. Muntu ina ke komelesa ya kubwa; yandi zona sala fioti, ava ya kukomase kusala diaka munkita.

Mingiedi zaba ke ina ke mayele ya mbote; Luvwalu lenda kwenda kitila na babwala, yandi ke vwanda na muntu ya kutekila yandi ata balitele ya petelo, ya mafuta, sans kusala yandi potopoto na konti.

Ntangu mosi Mingiedi monisaka Luvwalu magazini ya Putuluke mosi, ina tekilaka yandi basinga ya dese ya mamvwemvwe. Luvwalu kwendaka kuna, kasi basinga ya mbote kukimanisinaka; yandi kutaka yau ve. Ina bikalaka, vwandaka kome bau podisaka yau na maza. Yandi bakaka kima mosi ve.

Luvwalu ke na lezo. Ntangu Mingiedi sumbaka ya yandi, yandi zabaka ve ke yandi ponaka mpe yankaka ya imbi. Yandi vwandaka na ntangu ya kwenda sobisa yau ve. Kana yau me funta, yandi ke baka pelete ve, samu yandi me tekaka deja mingi; malu-malu yai, yandi ke na kutekila yau katuka falanka zole na meya, ti na pata mosi.

Komelesa fwanda zibula meso, ntangu ya kusumba bima ya mamvwemvwe, kana yandi zona kosama ve.

GROUP C: GETTING ABOUT: DIRECTIONS, GEOGRAPHY AND CAR TROUBLES

DIALOGUE: DIRECTIONS IN TOWN

Anderson

dit

Fr: dite; say! (polite
prelude to a request)

ku-kum-a

to reach, arrive

Ambassade Américaine

(Fr.): American Embassy

Dit, mbuta muntu, inki nzila

Say, sir, which [is] the short

ya nkufi ya kukumina na

road to reach the American

Ambassade Americaine?

Embassy?

Lutete

fasó (ba-)

Fr: façon; means, method

Na inki faso nge ke kwendila

How are you going to go there?

kuna?

Anderson

di-kulu (ma-)

leg, foot

Mu ke na makulu. Yau ke

I'm on foot. Is it far?

ntama?

Lutete

Ve, yau ke ntama mingi ve.

No, it's not very far.

posita

Post Office (= posita
ya mikanda)

Katuka kwaku na Posita, landa From here to the post office just
 kaka Boulevard Albert Premier. follow Albert First Boulevard.

monima

Fr: monument; monument

Nge zaba monima ya Albert Do you know the Albert First
 Premier? monument?

Anderson

n.kulu

age, oldness

E. Ina ke penepene na gale Yes. That [which] is near the
 ya nene ya nkulu? large old station?

Lutete

E, kwenda na ndambu ina. Yes, go there ('to that side').

ava

Fr: avant; before

kubwa na (balabala...)

to run into (encounter) a
 street or place (not a
 person)

ku-zimb.is-a

to forget, confuse (with)

Ava ya kukima kuna, nge ke Before reaching there you will
 kubwa na balabala ya... run into the street...Sorry
 Kiadi mu me zimbisa nkumbu I've forgotten its name...Wait.
 na yau...Vingila.

Anderson

n.twala (ba-)

front

Yau ke lutaka na ntwala ya It passes the front of what?
 inki?

Lutete

lotele (ba-)

Fr: l'hôtel; hotel

buludingi (ba-)

building

Otraco

Fr: Office de Transports
du Congo

Yau ke lutaka na kati kati ya It passes between the Hotel
lotele Regina na buludingi Regina and the Otraco Building.
ya Otraco.

Anderson

Fima

a company operating on
the Congo River

Mu me mona. Yau ke kwendaka I see. It goes all the way to
ti na dibungu ya Fima? the Fima wharf?

Lutete

Inki ke 'dibungu ya Fima'? What's the Fima wharf?

Anderson

masuwa (ba-)

boat, ship

Balazavile, Brazzaville

Brazzaville

Dibungu ya masuwa ke nataka The port of the boat which takes
bantu na Balazavile. people to Brazzaville.

Lutete

O? Mu zabila yau kaka na Oh? I know it only by the
nkumbu ya 'dibungu ya name of 'Brazzaville Wharf'.
Balazavile'.

Mambu ve; landa kaka balabala Anyway; follow that very street
ina ti nge ke kuma na until you reach the Avenue des
Avenue des Aviateurs. Nge Aviateurs. Do you know it?
zaba yau?

Anderson

wi, oui (Fr.); yes
modidi, molili (ba-) shade, shadow, obscurity,
darkness
ku-kab.ul-a to divide
E, mu banza ke wi. Ina ke Yes, I think so. That which is
molili fioti samu ya bainti a little shaded on account of
ke kabulaka badalakisio? the trees which divide the
lanes?

Lutete

ku-sab.uk-a to cross (intransitive)
E, yau ina. Sabuka yau. Yes, that's it. Cross it.
kwe (ba-) Fr: coin; corner
di-boko (ma-) hand
diboko ya bakala right hand
Na kwe ya diboko ya bakala, On the right hand corner you'll
nge ke mona inzo mosi ya see a large building: it's
nene: yau ke Ambassade the American Embassy.
Americaine.

Anderson

ya impa

new

Yau ke kome ya impa to kome

Is it like new or old?

ya nkulu?

Lutete

Yau ke kome ya impa.

It's like new.

dalapó (ba-)

Fr: drapeau; flag

ku-pěp-a

to flap, wave (intr.) in
the wind

n.ganda (ba-)

outside

Nge ke mona mpe dalapo ya

You'll also see the American

Amelike kupepa na nganda.

flag waving outside.

Anderson

donc

(Fr.); therefore, thus,
so

diboko ya nkento

left hand

Donc: katuka kwaku, luta

So: from here, pass the Regina,

Regina, baluka na diboko

turn left, cross the Avenue

ya nkento, sabuka Avenue

des Aviateurs, on the right

des Aviateurs, na kwe ya

hand corner is the American

diboko ya bakala ke

Embassy.

Ambassade Americaine.

Lutete

juste

(Fr.); exactly

E; nge ke kuma juste vana. Yes; you will arrive exactly
there.

Anderson

penzá very, extremely
Melesi mingi penza mbuta Thank you very very much, sir.
muntu.

Lutete

Mambu ve, mwana. You're welcome, my boy.

NARRATIVE

Kilumbu mosi, Anderson vwandaka na Posita. Samu ya kubaka
nzila ya nkufi ya kukumina na Ambassade Américaine, yandi yufusaka
Lutete.

Mbuta muntu Lutete tubilaka yandi kulanda kaka Boulevard
Albert Premier, kwenda na ndambu ya monima Albert Premier, ina
ke penepene na gale ya nkulu. Avant ya kukuma na palasi ina,
yandi vwandaka vwanda kubwa na balabala mosi. Kasi, kiadi!
Lutete zimbisaka nkumbu na yau, Anderson mpe zabaka nkumbu na
yau ve. Diambu ya kiese vwandaka ke bau zole zabaka ke balabala
ina ke lutaka na kati kati ya lotele ya Regina, na buludingi ya
Otraco.

Anderson zabaka ke balabala ina vwandaka kwenda na ndambu ya
'dibungu ya Fima'; Lutete zabilaka yau na nkumbu ya 'dibungu ya

Balazavile', samu masuwa ke nataka bantu na Balazavile, ke katukaka kuna.

Kulanda balabala ina, kome Lutete tubilaka yandi, Anderson vwandaka kwenda kubwa na Avenue des Aviateurs; yau ke molili fioti samu ya bainti ke kabulaka badalakisio ke na kati. Kusbuka yau na kwe ya diboko ya bakala, ke Ambassade Americaine: yau ke inzo mosi ya nene kome ya nkulu ve kasi kome ya impa; dalapo ya Amelike ke pepaka na nganda na yau.

Lutete monisaka yandi nzila ya mbote, mpe ya nkufi na makulu; katuka na Posita, luta Regina, baluka na diboko ya nkento, sabuka Avenue des Aviateurs, na kwe ya diboko ya bakala ke Ambassade Americaine. Anderson vwandaka kwenda kuma juste vana.

DIALOGUE: ON THE TRAIN

Anderson

Mu banza ke lukalu ya bubu I suppose today's train is a
ke na letale fioti. bit late.

Kontololele (conductor)

Fioti ve kasi mingi. Not a little, a lot.

Anderson

ku-bak-a to get, obtain, take

takisi (ba-) taxi

Yau ke vwanda mpasi ya kubaka Is it going to be hard to get a
takisi na gale? taxi at the station?

Kontololele

silitú Fr: surtout; especially

Petetele yau ke vwanda mpasi, Perhaps it will be, especially
silitu kome lukalu ke na as the train is very late.
letale mingi.

Bantu ke mwanina takisi samu People fight for taxis on ac-
ya mpimpa. count of the darkness.

Anderson

mwayé (ba-) Fr: moyen; means

Mwaye yankaka ikele ve ya Isn't there another way to go?
kwendila?

Kontololele

otobisi (ba-)

bus

Kana nge zona nge lenda baka If you wish you can take a bus.
otobisi.

Yai ke nkumbu ya nge ya ntete Is this your first time in Leo?
na Léó?

Anderson

Ve, kasi na nkumbu ya ntete No, but the first time people
bantu kwizaka kuta munu came to meet me at the station.
na gale.

ku-sung-a

to aim

ku-sung.am-a

to be straight, go
straight

ku-sung.am.an-a

to remember

Mu lenda sungamana diaka I can't remember the way anymore.
nzila ve.

Kontololele

pelesé

Fr: pressé; rushed, in a
hurry

Kiadi ke mu ke vwanda pelese, Too bad that I'm going to be in
mpe mu ke kwendila na a hurry and that I'll go on
otobisi ya bakontololele. the conductors' bus.

Inki ndambu nge ke zona What direction will you want to
kwenda? go?

Anderson

Yolo Sud (a section of Leopoldville)

simitiele (ba-) Fr: cimeti re; cemetery

Wando (a street name)

nimel  (ba-) Fr: numero; number

Mu zona kwenda na Yolo Sud, I want to go to Yolo Sud, which
 ina ke penepene na simitiele is near (to) the old cemetery,
 ya nkulu, balabala Wando, Wando street, number 39.
 nimelo 39 (makumi tatu na
 ivwa).

Kontololele

ku-k t-a to get down, descend, get
 off

ku-b m-a to get out, come out

p lote (ba-) Fr: porte; door

Kana nge ke zona vingila If you don't want to wait for
 takisi ve, ntangu nge ke a taxi, when you get off the
 kita na lukalu, bimina na train, go out the door on the
 polote ya ndambu ya Prince Prince Baudouin side.
 Baudouin.

Anderson

tik  (ba-) ticket

tik  dek  (ba-) Fr: ticket de quai; plat-
 form pass

Na ndambu ina bau ke tekilaka On the side where they sell
 batike na batike deke? tickets and platform passes?

Kontololele

Isoki (name of a street)

E, na ndambu ina. Baluka na Yes, on that side. Turn left
 diboko ya nkento kwenda ti and go to Isoki street.
 na balabala Isoki.

Anderson

ku-tel.am-a to stand, remain

Vana bantu ke bakaka batakisi Where people who get taxis
 ke telamaka? stand?

Kontololele

E; kuma vana, baluka na Isoki, Yes; arrive there, turn into
 kwenda na balabala Prince Isoki and go to Prince
 Baudouin. Baudouin street.

Anderson

simé (ba-) Fr: ciment; concrete

to or

gudoló (ba-) Fr: goudron; asphalt

Prince Baudouin ke ya sime Is Prince Baudouin concrete
 to ya gudolo? or asphalt?

Kontololele

Yau ke ya sime. Nge ke It's concrete. You won't get
zimbala ve. lost.

dayele	Fr: d'ailleurs; besides
--------	-------------------------

Dayele nge ke zenga to kuluta Besides you won't cross or pass
balabala yankaka ve. any other street.

Anderson

minda (ba-) lamp, light

Yau ke na minda? Does it have lights?

Kontrololele

E, yau ke na minda mingi. Yes, it has lots of lights.

aré (ba-)	Fr: arret; stop
-----------	-----------------

ku-măť-a to climb, get in

Na kwe ya diboko ya bakala, On the right hand corner is a
ke are nge ke matina na stop [where] you will get on
otobisi. the bus.

Anderson

línie / línje / (ba-)	Fr: ligne; line
-----------------------	-----------------

Inki linie ke kwendaka na Which line goes to Yolo Sud?

Yolo Sud?

Kontololele

Linie 4 to 5 ke nata nge ti Line 4 or 5 will take you to
na Yolo. Yolo.

pont (ba-) (Fr.); bridge

Pont Cabu (a place name)

Kana nge zona vingila balinie If you don't want to wait for
ina ve, baka nimelo 6, 7 to those lines, take number 6,
10; yau ke nata nge ti na 7 or 10. They will take you
Pont Cabu. to Pont Cabu.

Anderson

Inki ke vana na Pont Cabu? What is there at Pont Cabu?

Kontololele

Ki.n.sasa (also spelled Leopoldville
Kinshasa)

M.boka ya Sika new town (Lingala)

Yau ke kaka pont ya nene ina That's just the big bridge
ke kabulaka Kinsasa ya which divides old Leopoldville
nkulu, na Mboko ya Sika, and the new town, or Nouvelle
to Nouvelle Cite. Cité.

Anderson

Palado, vingila fioti, mu Pardon, wait a little, I wish
zona sonika mambu ina yonso to write all those things on
na fipapie... a scrap of paper.

papié (ba-)

Fr: papier; paper

ku-tat.am.an-a

to continue

Tatamana ya nge tata kontolo- [Please] continue Mr. Conductor.
lele.

Kontololele

Kana nge me kita na Pont Cabu, When you have gotten off at
baka linie 4 to 5 samu ya Pont Cabu, take line 4 or 5 to
kwenda na Yolo. go to Yolo.
Nge lenda zaba nzila ya Do you know the road to take in
kulanda na Yolo? Yolo?

Anderson

di-baya (ma-)

board, signboard

Ve; kasi mu ke meka yufusa No, but I'll try to ask people
bantu, to mu ke tanga kaka or I'll just read the signs.
mabaya.

tólosi (ba-)

Fr: torche; flashlight

Kana bau me tula ntete minda If they haven't installed lights
na balabala ve, mu ke na yet on the street, I have my
tolosi ya munu. flashlight.

Kontololele

zielo (ba-)

sand

Nge zaba kana Wando ke na Do you know whether Wando is
gudolo to yau ke kaka na asphalted or still sand?
zielo?

Anderson

ku-komas-é

Fr: commencer; to begin

Na ntangu mu vwandaka kuna,

When I was there, they were

bau vwandaka komase kutula

going to start to put down

gudolo.

asphalt.

Kontololele

sofele (ba-)

Fr: chauffeur; driver

Kana yau ke na gudolo, yau

If it's asphalt it could be

lenda vwanda ke baotobisi

that buses go on to that

ke lutilaka na ndambu ina.

place.

ku-kit.ĩs-a

to let out, send down

Yufusa sofele yandi kitisa

Ask the driver to let you out

nge na are ke penepene na

at the stop nearest to Wando.

Wando.

Anderson

Melesi mingi, mbuta muntu.

Thank you very much, sir.

Kontololele

mu-tima (mi-)(bamu-)

heart

ku-kit.ĩs-a mutima

to relax, cease worrying
('to put down the heart')

Mambu ve. Kitisa mutima; nge

You're welcome. Don't worry;

ke simbana ve.

you won't get lost.

NARRATIVE

Anderson ke na lukalu. Yandi ke na kwenda na Leopoldville. Na nkumbu n'andi ya ntete ya kwenda kuna, bantu kwendaka kuta yandi na gale. Malumalu yai, yandi lenda sungamana diaka nzila ata fioti ve.

Samu lukalu ya bubu ke na letale mingi, yandi yufusaka kontololele kana yau ke vwanda mpasi ya kubaka takisi na gale. Kontololele tubilaka yandi ke, yau ke vwanda mpasi, samu bantu ke nwanina takisi na mpimpa; kasi mwaye yankaka ikele: kubaka otobisi.

Anderson zona kwenda na Yolo Sud na balabala Wando nimelo 39; yau ke penepene na simetiele ya nkulu. Na gale, kontololele ke vwanda pelesi, mpe yandi ke kwendila na otobisi ya bakontololele. Kasi malumalu yai, yandi lenda monisa yandi nzila ya kulanda ti na Yole.

Kontololele tubilaka Anderson ke kana yandi ke zona vingila takisi ve, yandi lenda bimina na polote ya ndambu ya Prince Baudoin, na ndambu ina bau ke tekilaka batike, na batike deke.

Bima kuna, yandi ke kwenda na balabala Isoki, vana ke telamaka bantu ke bakaka batakisi. Katuka Isoki, yandi ke kwenda na balabala ya Prince Baudoin; balabala yai ke ya gudolo ve kasi ya sime; yau ke na minda; yau ke mpasi ve ya kumona yau, samu balabala yankaka ya kuzenga to kuluta ikele ve.

Yandi ke matina na otobisi na are ina ke na kwe ya dibolo

ya bakala, na Prince Baudoin. Linie 4 to 5 ke nata yandi ti na Yolo. Kasi kana yandi ke zona vingila yau ve, yandi lenda baka linie 6, 7 to 10; yau ke nata yandi ti na Pont Cabu ina ke kabulaka Kinsasa ya nkulu, na Mboka ya Sika to Nouvelle Cité. Samu kontololele tubaka mambu mingi, Anderson zona ntete sonika yau na fipapie. Na manima kontololele tatamana ke yandi ke kita na Pont Cabu, samu ya kubaka linie 4 to 5 ya Yolo.

Ata Anderson zaba nzila ya kulanda na Yolo ve, yandi lenda yufusa bantu yankaka, to kutanga mabaya; kana minda ke vwanda ve, yandi ke na tolosi n'andi.

Balabala Wando ke diaka ya zielo ve. Na ntangu ya ntete Anderson vwandaka na Yolo, bau vwandaka komase kutula yau gudolo. Kana mpidina, yau lenda vwanda ke baotobisi ke lutilaka na ndambu ina; yandi lenda yufusa sofele, yandi kitisa yandi na are ina ke penepene na Wando.

Kontololele ke mbuta muntu ya mbote; yandi tubilaka Anderson: 'Kitisa mutima, nge ke zimbana ve.'

DIALOGUE: GETTING SET FOR A CAR TRIP

Anderson

litele (ba-)	Fr: litre; liter
lesanse (ba-)	Fr: l'essence; gasoline
bido / bidon (ba-)	Fr: bidon; gasoline or oil can
lezelevwale (ba-)	Fr: reservoir; storage tank

Tudila munu balitele 10 ya Put 10 liters of gas in the tank
lesanse na lezelevwale, mpe for me and 20 in this can.
20 na bido yai.

Alphonse

Inki diaka nge zona? What else do you want?

Anderson

ku-tad.il-a	to look at/after for (someone), check
tiya (ba-)	fire, heat, electric power
bateli (ba-)	Fr: batterie; battery

Nge lenda tadila munu tiya Can you check for me the power of
ya bateli? the battery?

Alphonse

Kiadi, yau ke na ngolo mingi Unfortunately it hasn't much
diaka ve. power left ('has not much
strength still').

Anderson

ku-lung-a	to suffice, be enough
voyage (ba-)	(Fr.); trip
Matadi	(name of a port city in Congo)

Inki nge banza; ngolo ina me	What do you think; has it enough
lunga na voyage katuka kwaku	power for a trip from here to
na Matadi ti na Kinsasa?	Matadi and on to Leopoldville.
	('has that power sufficed for...')

Alphonse

matata (ba-)	trouble
ku-būt-a	to climb
monté (ba-)	Fr: montagne; mountain

Mu banza ke yau ke sala nge	I think that it will give you a
matata fioti, silitu na ku-	little trouble, especially in
buta bamonte.	climbing mountains.

Anderson

ku-charg-é	Fr: charger; to charge
ku-charg-el-é	to charge for (someone)
Mambu ve, chargele munu yau.	No matter, charge it for me.
yangó (ba-)	the one(s) referred to, that those
imbi (ba-)	badness, evil

Nzila yango ya Matadi - Leo Is that Matadi-Leopoldville road
ke imbi? bad?

Alphonse

kwandi fairly, quite
Ve, yau ke kwandi mbote malu- No, it's fairly good now on ac-
maly yai, samu na gudolo. count of the asphalt.
lesole (ba-) Fr: ressort; spring
kiló (ba-) kilogram, weight
Na ntama, samu yau vwandaka Formerly, because it was (of)
ya ntoto, mabulu vwandaka earth, the holes used to destroy
kufwa bakamio mingi, silitu ('kill') a lot of trucks es-
kuzenga balesole, kana kilo pecially to break ('cut') the
me lutisa. springs if the weight was too
great ('has exceeded').

Anderson

déja (Fr.); already
Kome nge mona deja, mu zona As you already see, I'm about
kwendila na Leo na vwatile to go to Leo in my own car.
ya munu.
sanduku (ba-) box
valise (ba-) (Fr.); suitcase

kana bafele ke ngolo ve, slope, if the brakes are not
nge lenda vutuka na manima. strong, you can slip ('return')
back.

accident (ba-) (Fr.); accident

ku-bw-a to fall, happen, befall

Baaccidents mingi ke kubwaka Many accidents have happened
mpidina. that way.

kuluta mbote to be better, be best
('to exceed [in] good-
ness')

Kasi tubila munu, kamaladi, But, tell me, friend, what time
inki ntangu kuluta mbote ya is best for travelling that
kwendila na nzila ina? road?

Alphonse

kuluta zona to prefer

ku-zeng.ul.uk-a to twist and turn

nzenguluka (ba-) curve, bend

kúlube (ba-) Fr: courbe; curve

Mu ke lutaka zona na mpimpa, I prefer at night because,
samu kome banzenguluka to since bends or curves are nu-
bakulube ke mingi, nge merous, you can see the lights
lenda mona baminda ya kamio of other vehicles which are
yankaka ina ke na kwiza. coming.

bosi mpe then too, in addition

madidi (ba-)

coldness

motele (ba-)

Fr: moteur; engine

Bosi mpe, na mpimpa samu ya
madidi, motele ke tambulaka
mbote mingi.

In addition in the evening, on
account of the coolness, the
engine runs much better.

Anderson

ku-tampon-é

Fr: tamponner; to run
into, run down

ki-bulu (bi-)

animal, beast

mfinda (ba-)

woods, forest

Mu kuwaka ke na mpimpa, nge
lenda tampone bibulu ya
mfinda, ina ke ya tieleka?

I heard that at night you can
run into wild animals, is
that correct?

Alphonse

E, ina ke ya tieleka.

Yes, that's true.

mbulu (ba-)

jackal

mbölöko (ba-)

antelope

ku-finam-a

to approach

kufwa meso

to blind

Na ntangu yankaka, bibulu
kome mbulu, mboloko, kana
bau ke na nzila, ata kamio
ke na kufinama, bau ke tinaka
ve, samu minda ya kamio

Sometimes animals such as
jackal and antelope, if they
are on the road, won't get
out of the way ('escaps,
flee'), even though an auto-

ke kufwaka bau meso.

mobile is approaching because
the auto's lights will blind
them.

Anderson

kudia ntangu

to waste time; to take
/use/ require time

Mu ke na kudia ntangu na nge
ve?

Am I not taking up your time?

ki-uvu (bi-)

question

kufwa kisalu

to disturb [ones] work,
spoil a job

Mu ke na biuvu yankaka ya
kuyufusa, kasi mu zona
kufwa kisalu na nge ve.

I have some other questions to
ask, but I don't want to dis-
turb your work.

Alphonse

wonga (ba-)

fear

kumona wonga

to have fear, be afraid

Mona wonga ve, mu ke na bantu
yankaka ke sadilaka munu.

Don't worry, I have other people
who work for me.

ku-bok-a

to shout, cry out, scream

ku-bok.il-a

to address, call (someone)

Kasi malumalu yai, kisadi na
munu mosi ke na kubokila
munu.

But right now one of my workmen
is calling me.

miniti (ba-)

Fr: minute; minute

Kana nge lenda vingila baminiti If you can wait a few minutes

fioti, mu ke vutuka. I'll return.

Anderson

Mambu ve. Mu ke vingila. OK, I'll wait.

NARRATIVE

Anderson zonaka kwendila na vwatile n'andi katuka Matadi ti na Kinsasa. Yandi kwendaka sumba lesanse na palasi ya Alphonse: balitele 10 na lezelevwale na 20 na bido.

Alphonse tadilaka yandi tiya ya bateli. Ngolo ina lungaka ve samu ya kusala voyage ina; yau vwandaka zona sala matata fioti na nzila, silitu na kubuta bamonte. Anderson zabaka nzila ina ve. Yandi vwandaka yufusa Alphonse mambu yankaka ya nzila ina, ntangu yandi vwandaka chargele yandi bateli.

Na ntama, nzila ya Matadi-Leo vwandaka ya ntoto. Yau vwandaka kufwa bakamio mingi, silitu kuzenga balesole kana kilo me lutisa. Kasi na manima samu na gudolo, yau kwizaka mbote. Ata mpidina, kome Anderson zonaka nata bima ya kilo mingi; basanduku, bavalises na bima yankaka nkaka, yau zonaka vwanda diambu ya imbi ya kuvwanda na bafele ya ngolo ve; bapalasi yankaka vwandaka na bamonte mpe na musielolo; baaccidents mingi ke kubwaka samu na yau.

Ntangu kuluta mbote ya kwendila na nzila ina ke mpimpa,

samu na ntangu ina kome banzenguluka to bakulube ke mingi, muntu lenda mona minda ya kamio yankaka; bosu mpe, motele ke tambulaka mbote samu ya madidi.

Mambu ina Anderson kuwaka déja ke, yau ke mpasi ve ya kuta-mpone bibulu ya mfinda na ntangu ina, vwandaka ya tieleka. Ata ke kamio ke na kufinama, bibulu kome mbulu, mboloko ke tinaka ve; minda ke kufwaka meso na bau.

Anderson vwandaka na biuvu yankaka ya kuyufusa. Kasi ata Alphonse vwandaka kamaladi ya mbote, yandi vwandaka mona wonga ya kufwa kisalu n'andi. Bau vwandaka bokila Alphonse na kisadi n'andi mosi. Yau yina, yandi tubilaka Anderson kuvingila yandi baminiti fioti.

DIALOGUE: ADVICE FOR THE ROAD

Alphonse

Inki diaka nge zona zaba? What else do you want to know?

Anderson

ingo (ba-) leopard

Diaka na mambu ina ya kuta- More on those matters of running
mpone bibulu: bau ke into animals: do bad animals
tamponeke mpe bibulu ya like leopards get run into?
imbi kome ingo...?

Alphonse

Mu me kuwa ntete na ndambu I haven't yet heard [of such]
yai ve. in this place.

petétele Fr: peut être; perhaps

esõbe (ba-) prairie, savanna, grass-
land

Petetele, samu betu ke na Perhaps because we have a lot
baesõbe mingi, mpe bamfinda of grasslands and our forests
ya betu ke nene mingi ve. aren't very big.

Anderson

koma Fr: comment; how?

ku-zing-a to live

n.kosi (ba-) lion

n.zau (ba-) elephant

m.pakasa (ba-)

buffalo

Koma samu ya bibulu ke zingaka How about animals[which]live
na baesobe kome nkosi, nzau, on the prairies like lions,
mpakasa? elephants, buffaloes?

Alphonse

ma.kelele

noise

Yau ke mpila mosi; bosi mpe, It's the same; in addition the
bibulu ya imbi to ya nene bad and large animals don't
ke zonaka zinga penepene na like to live near places
bifulu ya makelele ya bakamio [which have] the noises of
ve. vehicles.

ku-telam-a

to stand up, start

Nge ke telama bubu na mpimpa? Are you going to start tonight?

Anderson

ku-peze-é

Fr: peser; to weigh

Ve, mu banza mbasi na nkokila, No, I think tomorrow afternoon,
samu mbasi na suka, mu ke because tomorrow morning I
kwenda na gale kupeziša am going to the station to
bima yankaka ina ke kwendila get some things weighed which
na lukalu. are to go by train.

Alphonse

Bau me monisaka nge nzila ya Have you been shown the road
kulanda? to follow?

Anderson

Ve, ntete ve; mu vwandaka zona No, not yet. I was just about
yufusa nge yau. to ask you that.

ku-zeng-a (mambu) to decide

kálati (ba-) Fr: carte; map, chart

Na suka yai, ntangu mu zengaka This morning when I decided that
ke mu ke kwendila na vwatile, I was going to go by car, I
mu vwandaka tala kalati ya was looking at a map of the
Kongo, kasi bau monisaka Congo but the road to follow
nzila ya kulanda ve. is not shown.

Alphonse

Mu lenda pesa nge kalati na I can give you my map.
munu.

kulele (ba-) Fr: couleur; color

n.kunzu unripeness, greenness

verte (Fr.); green

Tala: kome nge lenda mona, Look: as you can see the road
nzila ya kulanda ke na to follow is the color of a
kulele ya dititi ya nkunzu, green leaf (or green).
to verte.

nord-est (Fr.); northeast

Leopoldville ke na Nord-Est Leopoldville is to the north-
ya Matadi. east of Matadi.

Anderson

besoin (ba-) (Fr.); need, necessity

boussole (ba-) (Fr.); compass

Mu me mona. Donc mu ke na I see ('have seen'). Then don't
besoin ya boussole ve? I need a compass ('have need
of a compass')?

Alphonse

Ata fioti ve. Dayele, ata Not at all. In addition even if
nge ke mona banzila yankaka, you see ('will see') other
nge ke mona mabaya ya ku- roads, you will see signboards
monisa nge inki nzila nge to show you which road you
fwanda landa. must follow.

Anderson

lepalasió (ba-) Fr: reparation; repairs

Kana mu zona lepalasio, ba- If I wish repairs, are there
palasi mingi ikele na many places on the road?
nzila?

Alphonse

garage (ba-) (Fr.); repair shop, garage

Mona wonga ve. Bagarages Have no fear. Garages are
ke mingi. plentiful.

konso every, any

mafuta (ba-) oil, grease, fat

lulu (ba-)

tire

pneu (ba-)

(Fr.); tire

Nge lenda sadisa kamio na

You can have your car fixed or

nge to kusumba konso bima

buy anything you want: gaso-

nge zona; lesanse, mafuta,

line, oil, tires (or pneus),

balulu to bapneus, ata

even food - you'll see them

madia nge ke mona yau.

[all].

Anderson

laissez-passer (ba-)

(Fr.); pass, permit

Inki nge banza, mu fwanda

What do you think, should I

baka laissez-passer to ve?

get a pass or not?

Alphonse

lu.ye

permission

bulamatadi

government¹

Yau ke vwanda diambu ya

It will be a smart thing to

mayele ya kubaka luve ya

get the permission of the

bulamatadi, samu ya ba-

government on account of the

podisi na nzila.

police on the road.

Anderson

Inki mutindu ya luve?

What kind of permission?

 1

'Rock breakers' - the first Europeans used dynamite to clear rocks for roads, hence this sobriquet for government.

Alphonse

Mukanda ya kumonisa ke nge A paper to show that you aren't
 ke na mambu ve, bima ina in trouble ('have no affairs'),
 ke vwanda na nge ke ya nge. [and that] the things which
 are with you are yours.

ku-zimb.an-a to forget, to get mixed
 up

permis de conduire (ba-) (Fr.); driver's license

passeport (ba-) (Fr.); passport

kalati ya identité (ba-) Fr: carte d'identité; iden-
 tification paper

Bosi mpe, zimbana vwanda na Then too don't forget to have
 permis de conduire na nge your driver's license and your
 na passeport na nge penepene passport near because if some-
 ve; samu, kana diambu me thing happens they can serve
 kubwa, yau ke vwanda kome as your identification papers.
 bakalati ya identite ya nge.

Anderson

Melesi mingi na lusadisu na Thanks a lot for all your help.
 nge yonso.

yau yai here it [is]

sanzé (ba-) Fr: échange; change

matabisi (ba-) Port: matabiche; tip
 gratuity, present to a
 buyer

Mbongo na nge yau yai. Sanze Here's your money. Keep the
ke matabisi na nge. change. ('The change is your
tip.')

Alphonse

bon voyage (Fr.); good trip

Melesi mingi. Bon voyage, Thanks a lot. Have a good trip,
kamaladi. friend.

NARRATIVE

Anderson zonaka zaba diaka mambu yankaka, samu ya bibulu na
nzila Matadi-Leo. Alphonse lembaka tubila yandi yau ve.

Na ndambu ina ke nzila ina, bau ke tamponeke bibulu ya imbi,
kome ingo ve; petetele samu baesobe ke mingi, mpe bamfinda ke
nene mingi ve. Ata baesobe ke mingi, bibulu yankaka ya imbi;
mpe ya nene kome nkosi, nzau, mpakasa, ke zonaka zinga penepene
na bifulu ya makelele ya bakamio ve.

Anderson zonaka telama na mpimpa ya kilumbu ina yandi
sumbaka lesanse ve. Na kilumbu landila ina, yandi vwandaka kwenda
na gale, samu ya kupezisa bima na yandi yankaka, ina vwandaka
kwendila na lukalu.

Samu ya kusadisa yandi, Alphonse pesaka yandi diaka kalati
n'andi ya Kongo. Nzila ya kulanda, vwandaka na kulele ya dititi
ya nkunzu to verte. Ata ke Leopoldville ke na Nord Est ya Matadi,

Anderson vwandaka na besoin ya boussole ve; na kalati bau monisaka nzila ina mbote mbote; dayele na nzila mpe, mabaya ke monisaka nzila ya kulanda ke vwandaka mingi.

Anderson fwanda mona wonga ve, samu ya lepalasio na nzila; bagarages ke mingi. Yandi lenda sadisa vwatile n'andi, to kusumba konso kima yandi zona: lesanse, mafuta, balulu to bapneus, madia...

Yau ke vwanda diambu ya mayele ya kubaka laissez-passer na bulamatadi, samu na bapodisi na nzila; yau ke luve ya kumonisa ke yandi ke na mambu ve. Yandi fwanda zimbana mpe kuvwanda na permis de conduire, na passeport penepene ve; samu yau ke vwanda kome bakalati ya identité kana diambu me kubwa.

Anderson pesaka Alphonse melesi mingi samu ya lusadisu yonso ina: Yandi bikilaka yandi sanze ya mbongo yandi pesaka, kome matabisi. Alphonse zodilaka yandi bon voyage.

GROUP D: HOME MANAGEMENT AND CHILD CARE

DIALOGUE: LOOKING FOR SERVANTS

Clemantine

Betu ke na kusosa kisadi ya We are looking for a household
inzo. servant ('worker').

ku-lweng-a to be wise

ku-lweng.is-a to advise

n.dwengoso (ba-) advice

Benu lenda pesa betu bandwe- Can you give us advice?
ngoso?

Pauline

Inki mutindu ya kisadi benu What sort of worker do you want?
zona?

Gautier

konso every, any

m.bāla (ba-) time, occasion

mbala mosi once

jardin (ba-) (Fr.); garden

Konso kisadi ina lenda sala Any worker who can do hard work:
bisalu ya ngolo: kukomba sweeping the house and washing
inzo mpe kusukula yau mbala it once a week; work in the

mosi na lumingu, kusala na	garden like cutting grass,
jardin kome kuzenga matiti,	planting flowers and watering
kukuna bafololo na kutula	them ('putting them water')...
yau maza...na bisalu yankaka	and other work of that kind.
ya mpidina.	

Clemantine

ku-zenz.il-a	to watch, to look after
Mpe kwenda na zandu, kusukula	And to go to market, to wash the
malonga na kuzenzila bana	dishes and to look after the
ntangu yankaka.	children sometimes.

Pauline

kũ-zw-a	to get, obtain, earn, locate
Yau lenda vwanda mpasi ya	It may be hard to find a person
kuzwa muntu ke sala bisalu	who will do all that work.
yonso ina.	

presque

(Fr.); almost

Ata benu zwa yandi, benu ke	Even if you locate him you'll
futa mbongo mingi samu	pay a lot of money because
yandi ke sala presque ki-	he will [be] work[ing] almost
lumbu ya mvimba.	all week.

Gautier

Yau ke luta mbote ya kuvwanda	How many workers is it better to
na bisadi ikwa? Zole kana	have? Two? or ('whether')
tatu?	three?

Pauline

Bantu yankaka ina ke na mbongo Some people who have a lot of
 mingi ke vwandaka na konso money have as many ('every
 ntalu bau zona. number') as they wish.

ku-kũk-a to fit, suit

n.ganda (ba-) outside

pětepěte soft, easy

ku-tānd-a to spread, set, make (bed)

Kasi ya tieleka bisadi zole But truly two workers is enough
 lenda kuka: mosi samu ya ('can suit'): one for the
 bisalu ya ngolo na kati ya hard work inside the house
 inzo mpe na nganda, mosi and outdoors, one for the
 samu ya bisalu ya petepete lighter work like dishwashing,
 kome kusukula malonga, ku- bed making, looking after
 tanda bamfulu, kutala bana... children...

Robert

E...Pauline, nge zaba kana Yes...Pauline, do you know if
 Monsieur Classen me zwilaka M. Classen has found work of
 bisadi na bau kisalu? their servants?

Pauline

idée (ba-) (Fr.); idea

ku-telephoné (Fr.); to telephone

Mu zaba ve. Ina ke idéé ya I don't know. That's a good
mbote. Bika betu meka idea. Let's try to phone
telephone bau. them.

Robert

Benu vingila fioti, mu meka You wait a little, I'll try to
yufusa bau. Mu ke na kwiza. ask them. I'll be right back.
('I'm coming.')

Clemantine

Samu na inki bau ke na kuso- Why are they looking for work
sila bisadi na bau kisalu? for their workers?
Bau zona kwenda na ndambu ya- Do they want to go to another
nkaka? place?

Pauline

E, bau ke kwenda na insi ya Yes, they're going to their
bau. country.

kosúkosu (ba-)	cough
ki-ozí (bi-)	coldness, a cold, fever
ku-bel-a	to be sick
ku-bel.uk-a	to get well, recover, be cured

Nkento ke na kosukosu mosi The wife has a bad cough; the
ya ngolo; dokotolo tubilaka doctor told them to go live
bau kwenda vwanda na insi in a somewhat cold[er] country,
ya kiozi fioti, kana bau if they want it to be cured.
zona yau beluka.

Clemantine

Ina ke diambu ya kiadi mingi. That's a very sad matter.

Pauline

penzá

very, extremely

ku-w-a

to hear, feel

silitú

Fr: surtout; especially

Kiadi mingi penza. Bakala,
nkento ata bana ke na kuwa
kiadi mingi ya kubika insi
yai, silitu ya kubika bisadi
na bau ina ke kome bampangi
ya bau.

Very sad indeed. The man, the
woman even the children are
very sorry ('feel great dis-
tress') to leave this country,
especially to leave their wor-
kers who are like their own
relatives.

ku-vum.in-a

to respect, be polite

Bau ke bakala na nkento
n'andi. Bau ke zolaka mpe
kuvumina bau mingi.

They are a man and his wife.
They love and respect them
very much.

ku-bok-a

to shout, cry out

ku-bok.il-a

to call, address

Ata bau ke bisadi, bana na
bau ke bokilaka bau tata
na mama.

Even though they are servants
their children call them
aunt and uncle.

Gautier

Yau ina bau ke na kustosila Is that why they're looking for
bau kisalu? work for them?

Pauline

di-boko (ma-) hand
ku-zit-a to carry weight, be heavy
ku-zit.is-a to respect, give weight to

E, silitu bau zona bika bau Yes, especially do they want to
na maboko ya muntu ina leave them in the hands of
lenda zitisa bau. someone who will ('can') re-
spect them.

Gautier

Kuzitisa bau na inki mutindu? Respect them in what way?

Pauline

Kome benu zaba, bantu yankaka As you know some people because
samu bau ke na mbongo they have a lot of money,
mingi, bau ke tubaka konso (they) say anything they wish
mambu bau zona na bantu ke ('any matter they like') to
sadilaka bau. the people who work for them.

Clemantine

ku-fing-a to insult
ki-fingu (bi-) insult

Tubila bau inki mutindu ya Say what kind of things to them?
mambu? Kome bifingu...? Like insults...?

Pauline

m.pamba	nothing, uselessness
mu-n.gamba (ba-)	day laborer, unskilled dolt
ku-niokol-a	to mistreat
ku-zeng.am-a	to be cut

Kufinga bau kaka ve kome zoba, Not only to insult them as stu-
 muntu ya mpamba, mungamba... pid, worthless man, unskilled
 kasi mpe kuniokola bau, dolt...but also to mistreat
 kufwemina bau: ata diambu them, to get angry at them.
 ya fioti mbongo me zengama. Even [for] a small matter
 wages ('money') have [been]
 cut.

Kisadi mosi ve ke zonaka No worker likes things like
 mambu ya mpidina. that.

Clemantine

ki-m.beni (bi-)	hatred
-----------------	--------

Ina ke nataka kaka kimbeni That just brings hatred inside
 na kati ya inzo. Mambu ina the house. Are such things
 ke vwandaka mingi? frequent ('many')?

Pauline

kizámpele (ba-)	Fr: exemple; example
-----------------	----------------------

E, mpangi na munu, yau ke Yes, my friend ('sister') they
 vwandaka mingi; kasi are frequent ('many'); but

ntangu yonso ve, kome famili not always - as the Classen
ya Classen ke kizampele ya family is a good example...
mbote...

Bakala na munu ke na kwiza. My husband is coming. I think
Mu banza ke yandi ke na that he has good news.
nsangu ya kiese.

NARRATIVE

Clemantine na bakala n'andi Gautier vwandaka sosa kisadi ya inzo. Ntangu bau vwandaka na inzo ya Pauline na Robert, bau yufusaka bandwengoso na bau.

Nge zaba mutindu ya kisadi bau vwandaka sosa? Kisadi ya kusala konso kisalu kome kusukula inzo mbala mosi na lumingu, kusala bisalu ya mutindu na mutindu na jardin, kuzenzila bana na bisalu yankaka nkaka.

Kiadi! Yau vwandaka mpasi fioti ya kuzwa kisadi ina kusadila bau bisalu yonso ina kilumbu ya mvimba. Pauline lwengisaka bau kuvwanda na bisadi zole: mosi samu ya bisalu ya ngolo na kati ya inzo mpe na nganda; yankaka samu ya bisalu ya petepete kome kutanda bamfulu, kutala bana...

Na ntangu bau vwandaka solula, Robert zwaka idée mosi ya mbote. Yandi zonaka zaba kana M. Classen me zwilaka bisadi na yandi kisalu. Yandi kwendaka telephone yandi.

Pauline bikalaka tubila Clemantine na Gautier mambu ya famili ya M. Classen. Samu nkento na yandi ke na kosukosu ya ngolo, dokotolo mosi tubilaka bau kwenda na insi ya kiozi samu ya kubelula yau. Yau vwandaka diambu ya kiadi penza ya kubika insi yina bau vwandaka vwanda; silitu kubika bisadi na bau ina vwandaka na bau kome bampangi.

Bisadi ina zole ya baClassen vwandaka bakala na nkento n'andi. Ata bau vwandaka kaka bisadi bau vwandaka zola mpe kuvumina bau. Bana vwandaka bokila bau tata na mama.

BaClassen zonaka bika bau na maboko ya konso muntu ve, kasi na maboko ya muntu ina lenda zitisa bau. Bau zabaka ke bantu yankaka ke salaka na bisadi konso mambu bau zona; kufinga bau kome zoba, muntu ya mpamba, mungamba...kuniokola na kufwemina bau...ata diambu ya fioti mbongo me zengama.

Mambu yina ke nataka kimbeni na inzo, mpidina ve? Kiese ke famili ya Classen vwandaka kizampele ya mbote. Robert vwandaka natina bau nsangu ya kiese.

DIALOGUE: AN INTERVIEW

Robert

Mu me tubila M. Classen benu	I told M. Classen who you are
ke banani na betu.	to us.
esengo (ba-)	contentment, happiness
Yau yina yandi ke na esengo	For that reason he is very
mingi ya kubika bau na	pleased to leave them in
maboko na benu.	your hands.
Yandi yufusaka munu kana	He asked me if you might have
benu lenda vwanã na	time to ask things which
ntangu ya kuyufusa mambu	you wish to know to that man
yankaka ina benu zona zaba	servant.
na kisadi yina ya bakala.	

Pauline

ku-n.dĩm-a	to permit, accept
Nge ndimaka?	Did you accept [the suggestion].

Robert

E, mu ndimaka.	
bubu yai	this very day
Yandi ke na nzila malumalu	He's on the way now; his wife
yai; nkento n'andi ke kwiza	isn't going to come because
ve samu yandi ke na bisalu	she has a lot of work today.
mingi bubu yai.	

Gautier

ku-komase

Fr: commencer; to begin

Banda inki ntangu nge komaseke
sadila na M. Classen?

How long have you worked for
M. Classen? ('beginning what
time you began to work with
M. Classen?')

François

Mu komaseke sadila na yandi
banda mu vwandaka kaka
mvula 15.

I started working for him when
I was only fifteen.

ku-tind-a

to send

Mu vwandaka na muntu ya ku-
tinda munu na kalasi ntangu
ya inua ve; mu longukaka
kaka fioti.

I didn't have anyone to send me
to school for a long time; I
only learned a little.

Mu komeseke sala banda
ntangu ina ti ntangu yai
mu ke na imvu 34.

I started to work from ('begin-
ning') that time until now
[when] I am thirty four years
old.

Gautier

Ntangu nge komaseke inki
kisalu nge vwandaka sala?

What work were you doing when
you started?

François

boyi (ba-)

houseboy

Mu vwandaka kaka kome boyi
ya fioti.

I was just a minor houseboy.

propre

(Fr.); clean

ku-pŭp.ul-a

to wipe

putŭlu (ba-)

dust

mébele (ba-)

Fr: meuble; furniture

kiti (ba-)

chair

lalemwale (ba-)

Fr: l'armoire; chest of
drawers

Mu vwandaka tala ke inzo ke
propre: kusukula yau, ku-
kombula yau na kupupula
putulu na bamebele yonso-
bakiti, balalemwale...

I was seeing that the house was
clean: washing it, sweeping
it and wiping the dust from
all the furniture - the chairs,
the chests...

n.gŭngi (ba-)

mosquito

insecte (ba-)

(Fr.); insect

n.zĩnzi (ba-)

fly

Mu vwandaka mpe kufwa bangungi
na bainsectes yankaka ya
imbi kome banzinzi.

I was also killing mosquitoes
and other harmful ('bad') in-
sects like flies.

ku-sung.ik-a

to straighten

ku-teng.am-a

to be crooked

Mu wanda mpe sadila na
jardin: kuzenga matiti,

I also was working in the garden:
cutting grass, planting flowers

kukuna bafololo na bainti	and other plants, watering
yankaka, kutula yau maza,	them, straightening crooked
kusungika bainti ya ku-	plants...
tengama...	

Clemantine

Nge vwandaka sala na kikuku	Weren't you working in the
ve?	kitchen?

François

di-kwanza (ma-)	scabies, the itch
mu-săpi (mi-)	finger, toe
Na ntete yau vwandaka mpasi	At first that was difficult
samu bisalu ya jardin vwan-	because the garden work was
daka pesa munu makwanza na	giving me scabies between
kati ya misapi ya maboko.	the fingers (of the hand).
yandi mosi kaka	alone ('himself only')
déjeuner (ba-)	(Fr.); breakfast, lunch
ku-tők-a	to perspire; to boil (intransitive)
ku-tők.is-a	to boil (transitive)
ti (ba-)	Fr: thé; tea
ku-kading-a	to fry
di-ki (ma-)	egg
Na manima kome M. Classen	Later when ('as') M. Classen
vwandaka yandi mosi kaka	was alone I used to make him

mu vwandaka sadila yandi madia breakfast: boil water for
ya déjeuner ya suka: to- tea, fry eggs...
kisa maza ya ti, kadinga
maki...

restaurant (ba-) (Fr.); restaurant
Na midi na nkokila yandi At noon and at night he used
vwandaka kudia na barestau- to eat in restaurants.
rants.

Gautier

ku-kum-a to reach, become, arrive
cuisinier (ba-) (Fr.); cook, chef
Bau tubilaka betu ke malu- They tell us that now you have
malu yai nge me kumaka become a grand chef; who
cuisinier ya nene; nani taught you that work?
longisaka nge kisalu yina?

François

pâtisserie (ba-) (Fr.); bakery, pastry shop
Na ntangu M. Classen kwendaka When M. Classen was in Europe
na Mputu samu ya kwenda in order to bring ('follow')
landa famili n'andi, yandi his family he left me at a
bikaka munu na pâtisserie bakery.
mosi.

gato (ba-) Fr: gateau; cake

ki-sikiti (bi-/babi-)

Fr: biscuit; pastry,
biscuit

Kuna mu bandaka longuka ku-
lamba mampa, bagato, bisi-
kiti...

There I began to learn to bake
('cook') bread, cake, bis-
cuit[s]...

kofitile (ba-)

Fr: confiture; preserves,
jam

Na ntangu Mme. Classen kwi-
zaka, yandi monisaka munu
mutindu ya kulambila madia
ya mutindu na mutindu ya
insi n'andi, kusala bako-
fitile mpe bima yankaka
nkaka.

When Mme. Classen came she
showed me how to cook various
kinds of foods of her country
[and] to make jam and other
things.

bosi mpe

then too, in addition

livre (ba-)

(Fr.); book

Bosi mpe kome mu zaba tanga,
mu ke na balivres yankaka
ya kulongukila kulamba
bima yankaka nkaka.

Then too, since I know [how] to
read, I have some books which
teach [how] to cook various
other things.

NARRATIVE

M. Classen vwandaka na esengo mingi ya kubika bisadi n'andi na maboko ya Gautier na Clemantine samu Robert tubilaka yandi bau ke banani na famili n'andi. Yandi yufusaka mpe Robert kana Ba-Gautier zonaka vwanda na ntangu ya kusolula fioti na kisadi ya bakala; Robert ndimaka.

François, nkumbu ya kisadi yina, komaseke sadila na M. Classen banda yandi vwandaka kaka mvula 15 samu muntu ya kutinda yandi ntangu ya inda na kalasi vwandaka ve. Yandi longukaka fioti. Yandi ke na imvu 34.

Na ntangu yandi komaseke sala, yandi vwandaka kaka kome boyi ya fioti. Yandi vwandaka tala kana inzo ke propre; kusukula yau, kukombula yau na kupupula putulu na bamebele yonso: bakiti, bala-lemwale...Yandi vwandaka mpe kufwa banzinzi na bainsects yankaka ya imbi kome bangungi.

Yandi vwandaka mpe sadila na jardin: kuzenga matiti, kuna bafololo na bainti yankaka, kutula maza, kusungika bainti ya kutengama...

Kasi yandi vwandaka sadila na kikuku ve? E, kasi na ntete yau vwandaka mpasi samu bisalu ya jardin vwandaka pesa yandi makwanza na kati ya misapi ya maboko.

Na manima yandi vwandaka sadila M. Classen kaka madia ya déjeuner ya suka, tokisa maza ya ti, kadinga maki...Na midi na

nkokila yandi vwandaka kudia na barestaurants.

Inki mutindu François kuminaka cuisinier ya nene? Na ntangu M. Classen kwendaka landa famili n'andi, yandi bikaka François na pâtisserie mosi. Kuna yandi bandaka longuka kulamba mampa, bagato, bisikiti.

Na ntangu Mme. Classen kwizaka, yandi monisaka yandi mutindu ya kulambila madia ya mutindu na mutindu ya insi n'andi; kusala bukofitile na bima yankaka nkaka. Bosi mpe kome yandi zaba tanga, yandi ke na balivres yankaka ya kulongukila kulamba bima yankaka.

DIALOGUE: ALL IN THE DAY'S WORK

Clémantine

Bau tubilaka mpe betu ke We were also told that your wife
nkento na nge ke salaka works with you.
na nge.

Nge lenda tubila betu bisalu Can you tell us what work she
yandi ke salaka? does?

François

Yandi ke salaka silitu na She works mostly with the chil-
bana. dren.

Kome Mme. Classen ke kwendaka Since Mme. Classen goes to work
na kisalu katuka na suka from morning till night, she
ti na nkokila, yandi ke looks after all the affairs
talaka mambu yonso ya of the children.
bana.

Yandi ke salaka mpe bisalu She also does other women's
yankaka ya bakento na inzo. jobs in the house.

Clémantine

Mpidina yandi ke mpila mosi Then she's just like a mother
mama na bau! to them!

Robert

E, yau ke mpidina. Yes, that's the way it is.
mwaye (ba-) Fr: moyen; means, way

Mu banza ke mbasi to kilumbu I think tomorrow or another day
yankaka betu ke sosa mwaye we'll find a way so you [can]
samu benu solula na yandi. chat with her.

Gautier

programme (ba-) (Fr.); schedule, program

Mbuta muntu, nge lenda tu- Sir, can you tell us the schedule
bila betu programme ya of your work at the Classens'
bisalu ya nge na inzo ya house?
ba Classen?

François

Bokidila munu kaka François; Call me just François; my name
nkumbu na munu ke Mundonga is Mundonga François.
François.

Programme ya munu konso My schedule each week is like
lumingu ke mpila yai: this:
ku-kat.ul-a to subtract
katula besides, in addition to
('subtracting')

Mu ke lambaka katuka kilumbu I cook from Monday till Friday;
ya lendi ti kilumbu ya but in addition to the cooking
tanu; kasi katula kisalu job, which I do mostly in
ya kulamba, ina mu ke the morning, I go to market
salaka ntangu mingi na on Monday and Friday to buy
suka, kilumbu ya lendi mpe food.

kilumbu ya tanu me ke kwendaka

sumba madia na zandu.

Clémantine

Mme. Classen ke tubilaka nge Does Mme. tell you the things
bima ya kusumba? to buy?

François

liste (ba-) (Fr.); list

sika (bi-) place

sika mosi together

E, yandi ke tubilaka munu; Yes, she tells me; but usually
kasi ntangu mingi betu ke we make a list together of
salaka liste ya bima ya things to buy.
kusumba sika mosi.

ku-wom-a to press, iron

Na kilumbu ya zole, mu ke su- On Tuesday I wash the laundry
kulaka bilele mpe kuwoma and press it on Thursday.
yau na kilumbu ya iya.

Clémantine

yangó the one referred to,
this, that

Inki bilele yango? What laundry is that?

François

saleté (ba-) (Fr.); soiled, dirty

rideau(x) (ba-)

(Fr.); curtain

drap (ba-)

(Fr.); sheet

Bilele yonso ya salete na
 inzo: bilele ya kuvwata
 barideau, badraps na
 bilele yankaka nkaka.

All the soiled laundry in the
 house: clothing ('clothes
 to wear'); curtains, sheets
 and all sorts of linens.

Mpe kilumbu ya tatu mu ke
 salaka na jardin.

And on Wednesday I work in the
 garden.

Gautier

Ina ke kisalu mingi penza.

That's a great deal of work.

Inki ntangu benu ke manisaka
 kisalu?

When do you finish work?

François

six heures

(Fr.); six o'clock

n.zenza (ba-)

stranger, guest

Betu ke manisaka kisalu na
 six heures ya nkokila
 kana banzenza ikele ve.

We finish work at six o'clock
 in the evening if there are
 no guests.

huit

(Fr.); eight

dix

(Fr.); ten

meza (ba-)

(Port.); table

Kasi kana bau ikele, ntangu
 yankaka na huit heures to

But when there are, sometimes
 at eight or ten o'clock in

Kasi kana betu zona mbongo	But if we need ('want') a lot
mingi yandi ke pesaka betu	of money they guve us some
baavances ya salele.	advances on our wages.

Clémantine

Melesi mingi na mambu yonso.	Thanks a lot for everything.
Inki ntangu betu lenda solula	When can we chat with your
na nkento na nge?	wife?
Betu ke na mambu yankaka ya	We have some other things to
kuzaba.	find out ('know').

François

ku-fwand-a	to suffice
fwanda	must, should, have to
ava / avant	(Fr.); before
Mu fwanda yufusa yandi avant	I must ask her before telling
ya kutubila benu.	you.
Kasi mu banza ke benu lenda	But I think you may chat before
solula avant nsuka ya	the end of this week.
lumingu yai.	

NARRATIVE

Gautier na nkento n'andi Clémantine mpe Robert na nkento n'andi Pauline vwandaka kaka soludisa Tata François Mundonga samu ya kisalu n'andi.

Bau zonaka zaba kisalu ya nkento n'andi. Kome Mme. Classen ke kwendaka na kisalu katuka na suka ti na nkokila, Mme. Mundonga ke talaka mambu yonso ya bana. Yandi ke kome mama na bau.

Konso lumingu programme ya François ke mpila yayi: Kulamba konso suka katuka kilumbu ya lendi ti kilumbu ya tanu. Kusumba madia na zandu kilumbu ya lendi mpe kilumbu ya tanu. Ntangu mingi Mme. Classen na yandi ke sonikaka liste ya bima ya kusumba sika mosi.

Na kilumbu ya zole yandi ke sukulaka bilele mpe kuwoma yau na kilumbu ya iya. Bilele yango ke bilele yonso ya saleté na inzo: bilele ya kuvwata, barideaux, badraps...Kilumbu ya tatu ke kilumbu ya kusala na jardin.

Yau ke kisalu mingi penza.

Inki ntangu François na nkento n'andi ke manisaka kisalu? Bau ke manisaka kusala na 6 heures kana banzenza ikele ve; kasi kana ba ikele, bau ke manisaka na 8 heures to 10 heures samu ya kusadisa Madame na meza.

Bau ke futaka bau mbala zole na ngonda: lekenzi mpe na nsuka ya ngonda. Ntangu yankaka kana bau zona mbongo mingi, bau ke

bakaka baavances ya salele na bau.

François tubilaka bau ke samu ya kusolula na nkento n'andi,
yandi zonaka ntete kuyufusa yandi avant ya kutubila bau.

DIALOGUE: CHILD CARE

Clémantine

Madame Antoinette, mazono	Madame Antoinette, yesterday we
betu solulaka na bakala na	spoke with your husband M.
nge M. François Mundonga.	François Mundonga.
Yandi tubilaka betu ke nge	He said you worked especially
ke salaka silitu na bana	with the children of M. Classen.
ya M. Classen.	
Nge lenda tubila betu ntalu	Can you tell us the ages of
ya bana na bau?	them?

Antoinette

Bau ke na bana iya.	They have four children.
Ya ntete ya bakala ke na	The first boy is 12; the second,
imvu 12; ya zole, nkento,	a girl, 8; the third, a girl,
imvu 8; ya tatu nkento,	6; and the last is a boy
imvu 6; na ya nsuka ke	aged 4.
bakala, imvu 4.	

Clémantine

kuluntu (ba-)	older sibling
Bayina ya bakuluntu ke	Do the older ones go to school?
kwendaka na kalasi?	

Antoinette

Sainte Marie

(A school in Leopoldville)

E, tatu ke kwendaka na kalasi Yes, three go to St. Mary's
ya Sainte Marie. school.

Ya fioti ke bikalaka na munu The little one stays at home
na inzo, ntangu mama ya with me while his mother goes
bau ke kwendaka na kisalu. to work.

Clémantine

Nge lenda tubila betu, Madame Can you tell us, Mme. Antoinette,
Antoinette, programme na your work schedule?
nge ya kisalu?

Antoinette

ku-bǒng-a to be in order, be
arranged

ku-bong.ĩs-a to arrange, put in order

Ntangu mu ke komaseke kisalu When I start work at eight
na huit heures, mu ke ba- o'clock I begin first to
ndaka ntete kutanda bamfulu make the beds and straighten
na kubongisa bima yankaka up various things in their
na masuku na bau. rooms.

vers (Fr.); toward

ku-lam.us-a to waken, arouse

ku-yob.is-a to wash (transitive)

Na vers dix heures mu ke Along toward ten o'clock I get
lamusaka mwana ina ya fioti, that little child up, wash

Antoinette

m.punda (ba-)	horse, mule, donkey
di-baya (ma-)	wood, board, lumber
zielo (ba-)	sand
balançoire (ba-)	(Fr.); swing
ku-māt-a	to climb

Bau ke na bakamwa mpunda They have little wodden horses,
ya mabaya, palasi ya ziello, a sand pile, swings, little
babalançoires, bakamwa kamio cars and some things to
na bima yankaka ya kumata. climb.

Bau ke mpe na bima ya kutu- They also have things to build
ngila bainzo na bima ya- houses and various other
nkaka nkaka. things.

Gautier

Kana yandi me lemba na ku- When he has tired with playing,
sakana, nge ke nataka yandi do you take him home to eat?
na inzo samu ya kudia?

Antoinette

imene	it finishes, it is done
velandá (ba-)	Fr: veranda; porch
ku-bil-a	to boil (intransitive)
ku-bid.is-a	to boil (transitive)

E, mu ke pesaka yandi madia
 n'andi; kana imene, mu ke
 bikaka yandi na velanda
 samu ya kusakana fioti, na
 ntangu mu ke bidisaka maza
 ya kunwa na ya kusukudila
 malonga na babiberons ya
 midiki.

Yes, I give him his food; when
 it's done I leave him on the
 porch to play a little while
 I boil water for drinking and
 for washing the dishes and
 the milk cups.

ku-bāmb-a

to mend, patch

soseti (ba-)

Fr: chausette; sock

ku-tob.uk-a

to be pierced, be punc-
 tured

ku-bolos-é

Fr: brosser; to brush

Na manima mu ke salaka bisalu
 yankaka ya fioti kome ku-
 bamba bilele na basoseti
 ya kutobuka, kubolose
 bansampatu...

Afterwards I do various little
 jobs like mending clothes
 and socks with holes ('pierced'),
 brush shoes...

Clémantine

l'après-midi

(Fr.); afternoon

Ina ya fioti ke lalaka ve
 na l'après-midi?

Doesn't the little one lie
 down in the afternoon?

Antoinette

mwini (ba-)

light, sunlight, heat of
sun

ku-dil-a

to cry

E, kana mwini ke ngolo mingi
mpe yandi komase kudila,
mu ke yobisaka yandi mpe
kutila yandi na mfulu.

Yes, if the day is very hot and
he starts to cry, I bathe
him and put him to bed.

sieste (ba-)

(Fr.); siesta, nap

aré (ba-)

Fr: arrêt; stop [noun]

Ntangu yandi ke na kubaka
sieste n'andi, mu ke
kwendaka na are ya otobisi
samu ya kubaka bayina ke
kwendaka na kalasi.

While he is taking his nap, I
go to the bus stop to get those
who return from school.

Gautier

Yau ke mpidina na ntangu
ya congé?

Is it like that during vacation?

Antoinette

kutambusa(muntu)intu

to make a person dizzy
('to drive a person the
head')

Na ntangu ya congé, kome bau
yonso iya ke vwandaka na
inzo, bau ke tambusaka munu
intu kilumbu ya mvimba.

During vacation, since all four
are at home, they drive me
crazy all day.

Gautier

kĩdikĩdi (ba-)	naughtiness, bickering
Kana kidikidi me luta inki	If the bickering gets too much
nge ke salaka?	what do you do?

Antoinette

punition (ba-)	punishment
ku-fuk.am-a	to kneel, prostrate one-self
Mu ke pesaka bau bapunitions:	I give them punishments, make
kufukamisa bau...	them kneel.

Clémantine

ma-tata	trouble (no singular)
Ina ya fioti mpe ke pesaka	And does the little one give
nge matata mingi?	you much trouble?

Antoinette

Ve, yandi ke salaka munu	No, he doesn't give me much
matata mingi ve.	trouble.
ki-fu (bi-)	habit, custom, practice
ku-sub-a / kusala maza	to urinate
kabiné (ba-)	Fr: cabinet; toilet
ku-nen-a /kwenda na kabiné	to deficate
ku-lokut-a	to pick up, gather, collect

di-n.zaka (ma-)

fingernail, toenail

inwa (ba-)

mouth

Kasi yandi ke pesaka munu
kisalu mingi ya kumonisa
yandi bifu yankaka, kome
kutuba kana yandi zona suba
to kunena; kulokuta konso
kima ya kudia na ntoto ve;
kutula manzaka n'andi ya
salete na inwa ve...

But he causes me a lot of work
to teach ('show') him certain
habits like to speak when he
wants to go to the toilet,
not to pick up anything to
eat from the ground, not to
put his dirty nails in [his]
mouth...

Clémantine

zwa (ba-)

jealousy, envy

Na betu, nge ke mona mpasi
fioti samu ya zwa ya mwana
betu ina ke na imvu 5.

With us you'll experience a
little difficulty on account
of the jealousy of our child
who is five years old.

n-leke (ba-)

younger sibling

Yandi ke zonaka bau natina
yandi mpe na pusu pusu kome
nleke n'andi ina ke na
imvu zole.

He wants us to take him too
in the baby carriage like his
little brother who is two.

Kasi betu ke tala mambu
yonso yina.

But we'll see [about] all
those things.

NARRATIVE

Gautier na nkento n'andi Clémantine zwaka mpe mwaya ya kusolula na Mme. Antoinette Mudonga. Yandi ke salaka silitu na bana ya Mme. na M. Classen.

Bau ke na bana iya: zole ya babakala - ya ntete ke imvu, 12, ya zole imvu 4; ya bakento mpe ke zole - mosi ke imvu 8, yankaka 6.

Tatu ina ya bakuluntu ke kwendaka na kalasi ya Sainte Marie. Ya fioti ke bikalaka na yandi ntangu mama na bau ke kwendaka na kisalu.

Programme n'andi ya kisalu ke mpila yai: na suka ntete kumanda bamfulu na kubongisa bima na masuku; bosi kulamusa mwana ina ya fioti, kuyobisa yandi mpe kupesa yandi madia na suka: maki, kwakele, kamwa mampa na biberon ya midiki.

Na manima yandi ke memaka yandi na park ya bana ya fioti. Kuna bima ya masano ke mingi: bakamwa mpunda ya mabaya, palasi ya zielo, babalançoires, bakamwa kamio na bima yankaka ya kumata.

Na ndambu ya 2 heures kana yandi me lemba, yandi ke memaka yandi na inzo; kupesa yandi madia; kana imene, yandi ke bikaka yandi na velandu samu ya kusakana fioti. Na ntangu yina yandi ke bidisaka maza ya kusukudila malonga na babiberons ya midiki. Yandi ke bambaka mpe bilele na basoseti ya kutobuka, kubolose bansampatu...

Kasi mwana ina ya fioti ke lalaka ve na l'après-midi? E, kana mwini ke ngolo mingi mpe yandi komase kudila, Mme. Antoinette ke yobisaka yandi mpe kutula yandi na mfulu.

Ntangu mwana ina ke bakaka sieste, yandi ke kwendaka na are ya otobisi samu ya kubaka bayina ke kwendaka na kalasi.

Na ntangu ya congé, bau yonso iya ke vwandaka na inzo; bau ke tambusaka Mme. Antoinette intu kilumbu ya mvimba. Kasi kana kidikidi me luta yandi ke pesaka bau bapunitions kome kufukimisa bau.

Ina ya fioti ke pesaka yandi matata mingi ve. Yandi ke pesaka yandi kaka kisalu ya kumonisa yandi bifu yankaka kome kutuba, kana yandi zona sala maza, to kwenda na kabine; kulokuta konso kima ya kudia na ntoto ve; kutula manzaka n'andi ya salete na inwa ve...

Mme. Clémantine tubilaka yandi ke na bau, yandi ke mona mpasi fioti samu ya zwa ya mwana na bau ina ya imvu 5. Yandi ke zonaka bau natina yandi mpe na pusu pusu kome nleke n'andi ina ke na imvu 2.

DIALOGUE: COOKING INSTRUCTION

Lucie

sakasaka

manioc leaves

Inki ntete nge zona mu monisa
nge kulamba? Madezo to
sakasaka?

What do you want me to show you
[how to] cook first? Beans
or manioc leaves?

Odette

petétele

Fr: peut-être; perhaps

Mu banza madezo; samu petetele
kulamba yau ke mpasi mingi
ve.

I think beans since perhaps
to cook them isn't very diffi-
cult.

Lucie

Yau ke diambu ya mbote ke mu
ke na kutokisa madezo ya ku-
dia na nkokila yai.

It's a good thing that I am
boiling beans to eat this
evening.

Kome nge lenda mona, nge
fwanda tokisa yau mbote mbote
ti yau ke kuma petepete mu-
tindu nge zona.

As you can see you must boil
them well until they become
as soft as you want [them to
be].

Odette

kudia ntangu
tiya (ba-)

to take time, waste time
fire, heat, power

Yau ke kudiaka ntangu mingi
na tiya?

Do they require a lot of time
on the fire?

Lucie

ku-bol-a

to get wet, spoil

ku-bod.is-a

to soak, cause to spoil

lele (ba-)

Fr: l'heure; hour

Ve, ntangu mingi ve; silitu

No, not much time especially if

kana nge bodisa yau ntete

you soak them first in water

na maza balele fioti ava

for a few hours before boiling

ya kutokisa yau.

them.

Kome yai, mu tulaka yau na

As for these, I put them in water

maza na suka ava ya kwenda

in the morning before going

na kisalu ti na cinq heures.

to work [and left them] until

five o'clock.

Ntangu mu kwizaka mu tulaka

When I came I put them on the

yau na tiya mpe malumalu

fire and now they are almost

yai yau ke penepene ya

soft ('near to become soft').

kukuma petepete.

Odette

Mu me mona.

I get it.

Lucie

mafuta (ba-)

oil, fat, grease

ki-kadingu (bi-)

frying pan

Kana imene, tula mafuta na

When ready, put the fat in a

kikadingu.

frying pan.

mú-dinga (mí-)	smoke
fulufulu (ba-)	froth
Kadinga yau ti yau ke manisa mudinga mpe fulufulu.	Fry it until it stops [giving off] smoke and froth.
di-tungulu (ma-)	onion
tomato / tomate (ba-)	tomato
ku-sõp-a	to pour
Tula matungulu na tomato kuna; na nsuka, sopa mafuta yango na nzungu ya madezo.	Put [in] the onions and tomatoes (there); and finally pour that fat into the bean pot.
ku-sang-a	to mix
ku-sang.an-a	to get mixed up together
Tokisa yau diaka na tiya ti mafuta na bima yonso ke sangana mbote mbote.	Boil it again on the fire until the fat and all the things get thoroughly mixed together.

Odette

O! Mu me mona; yau ke Oh, I see; it's not very hard.
mpasi mingi ve.

Lucie

E, yau ke mpasi ve kana nge Yes, it's not hard if you are
ke na kulambila yau na cooking it in fat.
mafuta.

Kasi kome nge zaba, kana nge	But, as you know, if you want
zona lambila yau kome mu	to cook it as I cooked those
lambilaka madezo yina betu	beans we ate when you came
kudiaka na ntangu benu	here, you must work a little
kwizaka kwaku, nge fwanda	more.
sala mingi fioti.	

Odette

Samu na inki?	Why?
---------------	------

Lucie

mw.amba (ba-)	sauce, gravy, stew
Samu ya kusala mwamba.	In order to make the sauce.
m.bila (ba-)	palm nuts
ku-tut-a	to pound, crush
Tokisa madezo kome mu tubi-	Boil beans as I told you; boil
laka nge; tokisa mbila,	palm nuts, crush them;
bosi tuta yau;	
ku-kamun-a	press, squeeze
supu (ba-)	Fr: soupe; soup, stock, juice
passoire (ba-)	(Fr.); sieve
Kana imene, tula yau na maza	When done put then in water
ya tiya, bosi kamuna mpe	on the fire, then crush and
lutisa supu na passoire;	pass the [resultant] juice
	through a sieve;

Na nsuka sopa supu yango na Finally pour that juice on the
madezo; tokisa na tiya ti beans; boil on the fire until
supu ke kota na madezo. the juice has been absorbed
('has entered') [by] the beans.

Odette

Kasi na inki ntangu nge But when must you add other
fwanda tula bima yankaka things like onions, tomato
kome matungulu, tomat , and pepper?
pidipidi...?

Lucie

Ntangu yau ke na tiya. When it's one the fire.
e-lěngi (bi-) flavor, good taste
ku-zimb.an-a to forget
mu-sŭni (mi-) flesh, meat
niăma (ba-) animal, beast
Kana nge zona yau vwanda If you wish it to be very de-
elengi mingi, zimbana ve licious, don't forget to put
kutula kamwa musuni ya in a little fish or meat
mbisi to ya niama. ('flesh of fish or animal').

Odette

Mu me mona. Koma samu ya I understand. How about the
sakasaka? manioc leaves?

Lucie

Sakasaka mpe ke mpasi ve na Manioc too isn't hard to cook
kulamba; kasi nge fwanda but you have to work hard and
sala mingi, mpe yau ke ku- it takes a lot of time.
diaka ntangu mingi.

ku-yonzun-a to strip of leaves

Ntete nge fwanda yonzuna yau; First you must strip it; fry
kadinga yau fioti samu it a little so that it
yau kwiza petepete. comes [out] soft.

di-bũka (ma-) mortar

Kana imene, nge ke komase When done you will start to
kututa yau na dibuka ti pound it in a mortar until
yau ke tutama mbote mbote; it has been thoroughly
pounded;

n.sunga (ba-) odor, smell

mu-bisu (mi-~bamu-) rawness

Tokisa yau na tiya ti yau Cook it on the fire until it
ke manisa nsunga ya mu- loses ('finishes') the raw
bisu. smell.

Odette

Kana imene, nge lambila yau When that's done do you cook
kaka kome madezo? it just like beans?

Lucie

- n.gazi (ba-) palm nut (~mbila)
- E, kana nge zona lambila yau Yes, if you wish to cook it in
na mwamba ya ngazi. palm nut sauce.
- besoin (ba-) (Fr.); need
- Kasi kana na mafuta, nge ke But if in oil you don't have
na besoin ya kukadinga ma- to fry that oil.
futa yango ve.
- Sopa yau kaka na nzungu ya Just pour it into the manioc
sakasaka. pot.

Odette

- Nge fwanda tokisa diaka ntangu Do you have to boil it a little
ya inda fioti? longer? ('little long time')

Lucie

- E, ti bima yonso ke sangana. Yes, until everything is mixed
together.
- Kana nge zona mpe, nge lenda If you want you can put in other
tula bima yankaka na yulu things in addition to ('on
ya matungulu, tomate, pidi- top of') onions, tomatoes and
pidi kome kamwa musuni ya pepper like a little fish or
mbisi to ya niama. meat.
- di-n.zanza (ma-) can, tin
- pidisale (ba-) Fr: pilchard; pilchard (a
type of fish)

Bantu yankaka ke zonaka sopa Some people like to pour in a
dinzanza ya mbisi kome ya can of fish like pilchard.
pidisale kuna.

Odette

ku-bimb-a to taste
Melesi mingi. Ntangu mu ke Thank you very much. When I
lamba yau, mu ke zimbana cook it I'll not forget to
bokila nge ve samu ya invite you to taste it.
kubimba yau.

Lucie

Mambu ve. Don't mention it.

NARRATIVE

Odette kwendaka na inzo ya Lucie samu yandi longisa yandi mutindu ya kulambila madia yankaka ya insi. Madia ya ntete yandi zonaka longuka vwandaka madezo, samu yau ke mpasi ve na kulamba.

Nge zona zaba mutindu Lucie longisaka Odette?

Bodisa madezo balele fioti na maza. Tokisa yau na tiya ti yau ke kuma petepete. Kana imene, kadinga mafuta na kikadingu; vingila ti mudinga na fulufulu ke manisa; bosi tula tomate na matungulu; na nsuka, sopa mafuta yango na nzungu ya madezo. Tokisa yau diaka ti mafuta na bima yankaka ke sangana mbote mbote.

Kome nge me mona, kulambila madezo na mafuta ke mpasi ve.

Kasi kana nge zona lambila yau na mwamba ya mbila, nge fwanda sala mingi fioti.

Tokisa madezo. Tokisa mbila bosi tuta yau na dibuka; tula yau na maza ya tiya; kamuna yau mpe lutisa supu yina na passoire; na nsuka, sopa mwamba yango na madezo. Tokisa yau diaka ti mwamba ke kota mbote mbote na madezo. Ntangu yau ke na kutoka, tula bima ina nge zona kome matungulu, tomate, pidipidi.

Nge zona yau vwanda elengi? Zimbana ve kutula musuni ya mbisi to ya niama.

Nge zona lamba sakasaka kome Odette? Ntete yonzuna yau; kadinga yau fioti samu ya kwiza petepete; tuta yau na dibuka ti yau ke tutama mbote mbote; samu ya kumanisa nsunga ya mubisu, tokisa yau na tiya ntangu ya inda mingi.

Na inki nge zona lambila yau? Na mwamba ya mbila? Sala kaka kome madezo. Kasi kana na mafuta nge ke na besoin ya kukadinga mafuta yango ve.

Kome madezo, kana nge zona sakasaka na nge vwanda elengi, na yulu ya matungulu, tomate, pidipidi, zimbana ve ya kutula musuni ya mbisi to ya niama; bantu yankaka ke zonaka sopa dinzanza ya pidisale kuna.

Odette samu ya kupesa melesi na Lucie, yandi tubilaka yandi ke yandi ke zimbana ve kubokila yandi, samu ya kubimba madia n'andi ntangu yandi ke lamba yau.

GROUP E: LEARNING MORE OF THE LANGUAGE

DIALOGUE: AN INFORMAL LANGUAGE LESSON

Charles (An American)

Mbote na nge, Paul.

Good morning, Paul.

Paul (A Congolese)

Mbote, Charles. Nge kwizaka
kwaku ntama?

Good morning, Charles. Have
you been here long? ('Did
you come here long ago?')

Charles

Ve, mu kwizaka kwaku ntama
ve.

No, I haven't been here long.

Kana muntu zona tuba ve
'ntama ve', inki yandi
lenda tuba?

When someone doesn't want to
say 'not long ago' what
can he say?

Paul

Yandi lenda tuba 'malumalu
yai'.

He can say 'just now'.

Charles

Mu lenda tuba: 'Mu kwizaka
kwaku malumalu yai'?

Can I say 'I came here just
now'?

Paul

E, nge lenda tuba mpidina;
kasi yau luta mbote ya

Yes you can say that; but it
is better to say: 'I've

kutuba: 'Mu me kwiza kwaku just now come here.'
malumalu yai.'

Charles

Mu me mona. I get it.
ku-bok-a to shout, cry out, scream
ku-bok.il-a to address, call; invite
Wapi mutindu bau ke bokilaka What does one call ('How do they
kima yina muntu yina ke na call') that thing that that
kudia? man is eating?

Paul

ma.kazu (ba-) kola nut (sing. di-kazu in
Kikongo)
Bau ke bokilaka yau makazu. It's called 'kola nut'.
sukadi (ba-) sugar, sweetness
Nge zaba wapi mutindu betu Do you know what we call a thing
ke bokilaka kima yina ke which is not sweet?
ya sukadi ve?

Charles

Ve, mu zaba ve. Yau ke No, I don't know. What is it?
inki?

Paul

n.dudi (ba-) bitterness
Betu ke bokilaka yau kima We call it a bitter thing. Like
ya ndudi. Kome makazu, a kola nut, it's not a sweet

yau ke kima ya sukadi ve thing but a bitter [one].
kasi ya ndudi.

Charles

citron (ba-) (Fr.); lemon

Mu me mona. Kasi koma samu I see. But what about lemons?
ya citrons? Yau ke malala Are they 'bitter oranges'?
ya ndudi?

Paul

n.găingăi (ba-) sourness, acidity

Ve, yau ke malala ya ndudi No, they're not 'bitter oranges'
ve kasi ya ngaingai. but 'sour' [ones].
Bantu mingi mpe zabila yau A lot of people know them by
na nkumbu ya citrons. the name of 'citrons'.

Charles

Inki mutindu benu ke bokilaka How do you call the kola nut
inti ya makazu? tree?

Paul

Yau ke mpidina 'inti ya It's like that - 'Kola nut
makazu'. tree'.
Kasi nge lenda kuwa bantu But you can here some people
yankaka kubokila yau call it 'nkazu'.
'nkazu'.

foti (ba-) Fr: faute; fault

Ki-tuba

the Kituba language

Ki-kongo

the Kikongo language

Yau ke foti ya nene ve;

It's not a big mistake but it's

kasi yau ke mpe Kituba ya

also not good Kituba, it's

mbote ve, yau ke Kikongo.

Kikongo.

Charles

m.bũma (ba-)

fruit

Kana mpidina, kana nge zaba

If that's the case, if you know

nkumbu ya mbuma, inti na

the name of a fruit, the tree

yau ke mpasi ve.

is not difficult.

Nge fwanda tuba kaka inti

Must you just say the tree of

ya mbuma yina?

that fruit?

Paul

n.safu (ba-)

(a tropical, deep-purple
skinned fruit)

E; kome inki ke inti ya

Yes, so what is the tree of

nsafu?

'nsafu'?

Charles

Yau ke inti ya nsafu.

It's the 'nsafu tree'.

Paul

E, yau ke mpidina.

That's right.

Charles

Inki kima mvwana yina ke na

What's the thing that child is

kusimba?

handling ('touching').

Paul

ballon (ba-)

(Fr.); ball, handball,
football, etc.

Betu ke bokilaka yau ballon.

We call it 'ballon'.

Charles

Nge lenda tuba ke bana yina

Can you say that those children

ke na kusakana na ballon?

are 'playing with a ball'?

Paul

silitú

Fr: surtout; especially,
usually

kubula ballon

to play football (soccer)

E, mu lenda tuba mpidina;

Yes, I can say that; but usually

kasi silitu betu ke tubaka

we say 'to play football'.

'kubula ballon'.

Bana yina ke na kubula ballon.

Those children are playing
soccer.

Charles

fono (ba-)

phonograph

kubula fono

to play the phonograph

miziki (ba-)

Fr: musique; music

kubula maza

to swim

Yau ke mpila mosi kubula

Is that the same as to play

fono, kubula miziki, kubula

('strike') the phonograph,

ngunga, kubula maza, ku-

to play ('strike') music, to

bula mwana?

ring a bell, to swim, to beat
a child?

Paul

E, yau ke mpila mosi.

Yes, it's the same.

Charles

Inki ke nkumbu ya kima yina

What's the name of the thing

bau ke budilaka mwana?

used for beating a child?

Paul

sikoti (ba-)

Fr: chicote; whip

Yau ke sikoti.

That's a whip.

Charles

Melesi mingi. Mu banza ke

Thank you. I suppose that we'll

betu ke kutana mbasi.

meet one another tomorrow.

Paul

Mu banza. Kwenda mbote.

I suppose [so]. Goodbye.

NARRATIVE

Paul na Charles zabana. Bau ke bakamaladi kasi bau ke bantu ya insi mosi ve. Paul ke Kongole; yandi ke tubaka Kituba. Charles ke muntu ya Amelike; yandi zaba Kituba mbote mbote ve; Paul ke sadisa yandi.

Nge ke tubaka Kituba ya mbote ve? Landa mambu Paul ke longisa Charles:

Kana muntu zona tuba 'ntama ve' ve, yandi lenda tuba 'malu-malu yai'. Yau ke foti ya nene ve ya kutuba 'Mu kwizaka kwaku

malumalu yai', kasi yau kuluta mbote ya kutuba 'Mu me kwiza kwaku malumalu yai.'

Bima yonso ya kudia to ya kunwa ke ya sukadi ve; yankaka ke ya ndudi kome makazu. Kasi tuba ve ke citron ke malala ya ndudi; bau ke bokilaka yau malala ya ngaingai.

Nge zaba wapi mutindu bau ke bokilaka inti ya konso mbumba ina nge zaba? Yau ke mpasi ve; kome betu ke tubaka makazu ke katukaka na inti ya makazu. Nge lenda kuwa bantu kubikila yau nkazu. Yau ke foti ya nene ve kasi yau ke Kituba ya mbote mpe ve - yau ke Kikongo. Tubaka 'inti ya nsafu' kasi 'nsafu' ve.

Bana ya fioti ke zonaka simba ballon. Kasi ntangu bau ke sakana na yau, betu ke tubaka 'Bana ke na kubula ballon'. Yau ke mpila mosi kubula fono, kubula miziki, kubula ngunga, kubula maza, kubula mwana...

Nge zaba nkumbu ya kima yina bau ke budilaka mwana? Yau ke sikoti.

DIALOGUE: A HEALTH LESSON FROM THE RADIO

Sarah (An American)

n.dũku (ba-)	friend, acquaintance
radio (ba-)	(Fr.); radio
programme (ba-)	(Fr.); program
tadila	concerning, about
di-longi (ma-)	instruction
mú-n.ganga (mí-) ¹	physician

Nduku Vicky! Mazono na nko-	Friend Vicky! Yesterday evening
kila mu kuwaka na radio	I heard a program on the radio
programme tadila malongi	concerning instructions about
ya munganga.	medicine.
Nge zaba programme yina?	Do you know that program?

Victorine (A Congolese)

ku-bel-a	to get well
ku-bel.ul-a	to cure, heal
E, mu zaba yau. Nkumbu na	Yes, I know it. Isn't its name
yau ke 'Munganga zola	'The doctor wants to heal
belula nge' ve?	you'?

Sarah

E, yau yina. Mu mekaka landa	Yes, that one. I tried to fol-
yau, kasi yau vwandaka	low it but it was a bit diffi-
mpasi fioti ya kuzaba mambu	cult to understand some things

yankaka bau vwandaka tu- that were talked about.

bila.

ku-enregistr-e (Fr.); to record

n.suka (ba-) end

Mu enregistreke ndambu ya I recorded the last part.

nsuka.

Victorine

ku-kũk-a to fit, suit, be able

Betu lenda kuwa yau samu We can listen to it in order to

ya kuzabisa nge mambu let you know the things you

yina nge kukaka zaba ve. weren't able to understand.

Sarah

ku-yuf.ul-a to ask, request

Melesi mingi, nduku Vicky! Thank you very much, (friend)

Mu vwandaka zona yufula Vicky! I was about to ask

nge yina. you that.

Bika betu kuwa yau. Let's listen to it.

(Recording)

ki-lēmbo (bi-) signs, marks

m.pamba nothing, uselessness

mpamba ve because, on account of,
not for nothing

bwazi leprosy

ku-tind-a	to send
luzadí (ba-)	Fr: lazaret; leprosarium, sanitarium
'Konso muntu zaba muntu yina ke na bilembo na nzutu, yandi fwanda tubila yandi kwenda na munganga; mpamba ve, kana bilembo yina ke ya bwazi, munganga ke tinda yandi na luzadi.'	'Everybody who knows someone who has marks on [his] body, (he) should tell him to go to the doctor, because if the marks are of leprosy, the doctor will send him to a leprosarium.'
bõma (ba-)	fear
kisi (ba-)	medicine, drug, fetish
n.tũnga (ba-)	needle, hypodermic syringe
ofelé	Fr: au frais; free, with- out cost
'Vwanda na boma ve. Bima yonso ata kisi ya ntunga ke ya ofele.'	'Don't be afriad. Everything, even shots, is free.'
ku-yãmb-a	to greet, welcome
'Bantu ya Nzambi ke vwandaka kuna samu ya kuyamba na kusadisa konso muntu.'	'Clergy will be there to greet and help each person.'
n.siku (ba-)	law, rule
ata...ata...ve	neither.....nor

'Bansiku ya kulanda ke ata
mpasi ata mingi ve.'

'The rules to follow are neither
difficult nor numerous.'

'Na kati na yau yankaka yau
yai:'

'These are some of them:'

di-bele (ma-)	breast
m.puta (ba-)	sore, lesion
inwa (ba-)	mouth, hole
kũ-zw-a	to get, obtain, secure
kũ-zw.ǎm-a	to be gotten, be afflicted by
maladí (ba-)	Fr: maladie; sickness, disease

'1. Bamama na bana ke pesa
mabele na bana ve; mpamba
ve, kana bana ke na bamputa
na inwa to na bapalasi ya-
nkaka, bau ke zwama maladi
yina.'

'1. Mothers of babies are not
to nurse the babies; because
if the children have sores in
the mouth or somewhere else,
they can catch that disease.'

pwelěle	uncovered
ki-zibuku (bi-)	cover, lid
n.zĩnzi (ba-)	fly
ku-pǎnz-a	to spread
mikolobi (ba-)	Fr: microbe; germ

2. Bima yonso ya kudia fwanda '2. Everything to eat should
vwanda pwelele ve; yau fwanda not be open; it should have
vwanda na kizibuku: mpamba a cover; because flies spread
ve banzinzi ke panzaka mi- germs to food.'
kolobi na bima ya kudia.'

Victorine

Inki mambu ke na kusala nge What (thing) is giving you
mpasi? difficulty?

Sarah

Yau ke mingi. Bosi mpe bau They are many. In addition they
ke na kutuba malumalu mingi. are speaking very fast.
Bika betu meka kuwila yau Let's try to listen to it in
na ndambu. parts.

(Recording)

'Konso muntu zaba muntu yina 'Everybody who knows someone
ke na bilembo na nzutu, who has marks on [his] body,
yandi fwanda tubila yandi (he) should tell him to go to
kwenda na munganga: mpamba the doctor, because if the
ve, kana bilembo yina ke ya marks are of leprosy, the
bwazi, munganga ke tinda doctor will send him to a
yandi na luzadi...' leprosarium.'

Sarah

Bwazi ke inki mutindu ya What sort of a disease is leprosy?
maladi?

Victorine

Yau ke maladi yina ke salaka It is a disease which makes
bamputa na nzutu. lesions on the body.

mu-săpi (mi-) finger, toe

di-kutu (ma-) ear

m.bombo (ba-) nose

Yau ke zengaka misapi, ma- It destroys ('cuts') the fingers
kutu, mbombo, kana bau [and toes], the ears [and] the
belula yau malumalu ve. nose if it isn't cured quickly.

Sarah

Mu me mona. Yau yina bau ke I see. Then it's what's called
bokilaka lèpre na français? 'lèpre' in French?

Victorine

E, yau yina. Yes, that's it.

Sarah

yangó that, the one referred to

Bantu mingi ke na maladi Do lots of people here have
yango kwaku? that disease?

Victorine

Na ntama; kasi na ntangu yai Formerly, but at the present
samu ya bakisi ya ngolo, time on account of powerful
yau ke na kuzimbala. drugs, it is disappearing.
ku-sw.ek-a to hide (something)

ku-sw.am-a

to hide (oneself)

Bantu yina ke na yau, yankaka

Some people who have it hide

ke swamaka kasi yankaka ke

but others go voluntarily

kwendaka bau mosi na luzadi.

('themselves') to [the]

sanitarium.

NARRATIVE

Mazono na nkokila, Sarah kuwaka na radio programme tadila malongi ya munganga; nkumbu na yau ke 'Munganga zola belula nge.' Yandi mekaka landa yau kasi yau vwandaka mpasi fioti ya kuzaba mambu yankaka bau vwandaka tuba. Kasi Sarah salaka diambu ya mbote ya kuenregistre ndambu ya nsuka.

Victorine ke nduku n'andi. Yandi ke tubaka Kituba mbote mbote. Yandi zonaka kuwa mambu yina Sarah enregistreke, samu ya kumonisa yandi mambu yina yandi kukaka zaba ve mpe samu ya kumonisa yandi mambu yankaka ya Congo.

Na manima ya kuwa mambu yina ya radio, bau bandaka solula. Sarah vwandaka banza ke mambu mingi vwandaka mpasi na kuzaba, bosi mpe na radio 'bau tubaka malembe ve kasi malumalu mingi. Yandi zonaka bau kuwila yau na ndambu.

Bosi na ndambu yina bau kuwaka, Victorine monisaka Sarah ke bwazi, ina bau ke bokilaka na français lèpre, ke maladi mosi ya imbi penza. Yau ke salaka bamputa na nzutu. Kana bau belula ya

malumalu ve, yau ke zengaka misapi, makutu, mbombo...Na ntama bantu mingi vwandaka na maladi yango. Kasi malumalu yai yau ke na kuzimbala samu ya kisi ya ngolo. Bantu yankaka yina ke na yau ke swamaka; kasi yankaka ke kwendaka bau mosi na luzadi.

1

Contrast /mu-n.ganga (ba-)/, with normal penultimate stress, meaning 'witch doctor'.

2

Note that although the form here is passive the meaning is not - maladi yina is here not the actor but the object of the action despite the passive form of zwama. Similar patterns have been seen in kutekisa bima 'cause things to be sold' meaning simply to sell things with the causative form but not its meaning and in kusadisa muntu 'to help a person' with causative form.

DIALOGUE: SOME FRENCH BORROWINGS

Sarah

Na baluzadi yango, bantu To those sanitararia, do only
ya bwazi kaka ke kwendaka lepers go there?
kuna?

Victorine

Ve, bantu ya bwazi kaka ve. No, not only lepers.

ki-lau (bi-)	insane person, fool; insanity
kosúkosu (ba-)	cough
tuberculose (ba-)	(Fr.); tuberculosis

Na baluzadi yankaka bantu In some sanitararia people who are
ya kilau, ya kosukosu ya mentally ill, with bad coughs
imbi to tuberculose ke or tuberculosis stay there.
vwandaka na bau.

ku-sang.is-a	to mix
ku-kab.ul-a	to divide

Kasi bau ke sangisaka bau ve, But they are not mixed but sepa-
bau ke kabulaka bau na rated in different ('various')
bapalasi palasi. places.

bau na bau	to themselves
------------	---------------

Na baluzadi yankaka bau ke In some sanitararia they are by
vwandaka kaka bau na bau. themselves only.

Sarah

Palado, mu me kuwa mbote ve
yina nge me tuba na nsuka.

Pardon, I didn't understand
well what you said at the
end.

ma-lembe

slowness, slowly

Tuba diaka malembe fioti.

Say [it] again a little slower.

Victorine

Mu me tuba: 'Na baluzadi
yankaka bau ke vwandaka
kaka bau na bau.'

I said: 'At some sanitararia
they are by themselves only.'

yau tuba ke...

that means (that)...

Yau tuba ke bilau na luzadi
ya bilau; bantu ya bwazi,
na luzadi ya bau...

That means mental patients in
their sanitarium; lepers in
their sanitarium...

Sarah

ku-tat.aman-a

to continue

Mu me mona. Bika betu
tatamana.

I get it. Let's go on.

(Recording)

'Vwanda na boma ve. Bima
yonso ata kisi ya ntunga
ke ya ofele.'

'Don't be afraid. Everything,
even shots, is free.'

'Bantu ya Nzambi ke vwandaka 'Clergy will be there to greet
kuna samu ya kuyamba na and help each person.'
kusadisa konso muntu.'

'Bansiku ya kulanda ke ata 'The rules to follow are neither
mpasi ata mingi ve.' difficult nor numerous.'

Victorine

n.tina (ba-) meaning, sense
Nge zaba ntina ya 'bima ya Do you know the meaning of
ofele'? 'bima ya ofele'?

Sarah

Ve, mu zaba ve. No, I don't (know).

Victorine

Ofele mu banza ke diambu I think 'ofele' is (something)
katukaka na français 'au from French 'au frais'.
frais'.

Bima ya ofele ke bakamaka Free things are gotten without
sans kufuta. paying.

Sarah

Oh, mu me mona. Yau yina Oh, I see. That's why they
bau tubaka ke 'Vwanda said (that) 'Don't be
na boma ve.'! afraid.'!

Banani yango ke bantu yina Who are those people who are
ya Nzambi? of God?

Victorine

katolike	Fr: catholique; catholic
Nge zaba Mupe? Bau ke ba-	Do you know 'Mupe'? They are
katolike.	Catholics.
Mupe katukaka na français	'Mupe' came from French 'mon
'mon père'	père'.

Sarah

ku-def-a	to borrow
mo (ba-)	Fr: mot; word
Ah...mu me mona. Kituba de-	Ah, I see. Kituba borrowed
faka bamo mingi ya français.	many words from French.

Victorine

Ina ke ya tieleka; yau yina	That's true; that's why if you
kana nge zaba français,	know French Kituba isn't
Kituba ke ngolo mingi ve.	very hard.
di-bundu (ma-)	denomination, sect, congregation
protestant (ba-)	(Fr.); Protestant
Malumalu yai, Misioni ke	Nowadays 'Misioni' is something
diambu betu ke sadilaka	we use to refer to ('call')
samu ya kubokila dibundu	the denomination of the
ya bamissionaires protes-	Protestant missionaries.
tants.	

Sarah

Mu me mona.

I see.

NARRATIVE

Banza ve ke baluzadi yonso ke kaka samu ya bantu ya bwazi. Betu ke na mutindu zole ya nene ya baluzadi. Mutindu ya ntete ke baluzadi yina ke na bantu ya bwazi, ya kilau, ya kosukosu ya imbi to tuberculose na bantu yankaka nkaka. Bau ke sangisaka bau ve; bau ke kabulaka bau na bapalasi. Na mutindu ya zole bau ke vwandaka kaka bau na bau. Yau zona tuba ke bilau na luzadi ya bau, bantu ya bwazi na ya bau.

Bau tubaka na bantu yina fwanda kwenda na baluzadi ke bau fwanda mona boma ve samu bau ke pesaka bau bima ya ofele: Yau zona tuba sans kufuta. Petetele diambu yango 'ofele' katukaka na français 'au frais.

Bantu yina ya Nzambi ke yambaka bau ke bamissionaires na bakilistu to bachrétiens. Bau yonso ke bantu ya dibundu mosi ve. Bayankaka ke bantu ya Mupe: mo yai ke nkumbu ya dibundu ya kato-like; yau katukaka na français 'mon père'. Bayankaka ke bantu ya Misioni: mo yai ke samu ya dibundu salamaka na bamissionaires protestants.

DIALOGUE: SOME HEALTH RULES

Sarah

Mu zona zaba na inki mutindu	I want to know how those
bantu ya Nzambi yango ke	clergy help the lepers who
sadisaka bantu ya bwazi ke	go to the sanitararia.
kwendaka na baluzadi.	
ku-kum-a	to become
ku-kum.is-a	to cause to become, to make
Bau ke kumisaka bau kaka	Do they just make them Christians?
bakilistu?	

Victorine

Na ndambu ya kumonisa bau	In the process ('on the side')
mambu ya Yesu, bau ke	of showing them the way of
sadisaka bau na bamambu	Jesus ('things of Jesus'),
mingi: Kulongisa bau	they help them in many things:
bisalu, kukotisa bana na	teaching them skills, entering
bau na kalasi...	their children in school...

Sarah

Letá {ba-)	Fr: l'état; the State, government
Baluzadi yango ke ya Leta	Do those sanitararia belong to
to ya bau?	the state or to them?

Victorine

Betu ke na ya mutindu na mu-
tindu.

palasi mosi

Na ina ya Leta, Mupe na
Misioni ke kwendaka kuna
samu ya kusala palasi mosi.

Kasi yina ya Mupe ke kaka ya
Mupe mpe ya Misioni ke kaka
ya Misioni.

We have [some] of both ('various')
kinds.

together ('one place')

In those of the state, Catholics
and Protestants go there to
work together.

But the Catholic ones are only
Catholic and the Protestant
ones only Protestant.

Sarah

Bika betu kuwa basiku yango.

Let's listen to those rules.

(Recording)

'Na kati na yau yankaka yau
yai:

'These are some of them:

1. Bamama na bana ke pesa
mabele na bana ve; mpamba
ve, kana bana ke na bamputa
na inwa to na bapalasi ya-
nkaka, bau ke zwama maladi
yina.

1. Mothers of babies are not
to nurse the babies; because
if the children have sores in
the mouth or somewhere else,
they can catch that disease.

2. Bima yonso ya kudia
fwanda vwanda pwelele ve;

2. Everything to eat should not
be open; it should have a

yau fwanda vwanda na kizi- cover; because flies spread
 buku: mpamba ve, banzinzi germs to food.'
 ke panzaka mikolobi na
 bima ya kudia.'

Victorine

Kome nge me kuwa, mabele As you have heard, 'mabele' is
 ike midiki ya nzutu yina the milk of the body which the
 nkento ke pesaka na mwana woman gives her little child.
 n'andi ya fioti.

Sarah

lezó (ba-) Fr: raison; reason, right
 Mu me mona. Bau ke na lezo I see. They are right to give
 ya kupesa bau basiku ya them such a rule.
 mpidina.

Inki yina ke 'pwelele'? What is that 'pwelele'?

Victorine

Pwelele ke mpila mosi ya Open is the same as not being
 kukangama ve. closed.

Sarah

donc (Fr.); therefore, thus,
 so
 ku-zib.uk-a to be opened, uncovered
 ku-zib.ik-a to be covered

Donc yau ke ya kuzibuka; mpe So it is to be uncovered; and
kizibuku ke kima ya kuzi- a cover is a thing to cover
bikila to kukanga kima or close something.
yankaka.

Victorine

E, yau yina. Nge zaba ina Yes, that's it. Do you know
me bikala? all the rest ('which has re-
mained')?

Sarah

m.băla (ba-) time, occasion
E, mu zabu yau. Kasi mu Yes, I know it. But I wish to
zola kuwa diaka mbala mosi listen again once to see if
samu ya kutala kana mu I can understand it all this
ke zaba yonso ntangu yai. time.

(Recording)

(Repeats the entire passage)

Sarah

Mu lenda zaba yonso malumalu I can understand it all now.
yai.

Melesi mingi na lusadisu ya Thank you very much for your
nge. help.

Victorine

Mambu ve. Tubila munu konso That's all right. Tell me
ntangu nge zona lusadisu. any time you want help.

NARRATIVE

Nge zona zaba inki mutindu bantu ya Nzambi ke sadisaka bantu yango ya bwazi?

Ntete bau ke kumisaka bau bakilistu na ndambu ya kumonisa bau mambu ya Yesu, bau ke sadisaka bau na mambu mingi; kulongisa bau bisalu, kukotisa bana na bau na kalasi...

Na baluzadi ya Leta, Mupe na Misioni ke salaka palasi mosi; kasi na yina ke ya Mupe, Mupe kaka ke sadilaka kuna; yina ya Misioni, Misioni kaka.

Kome Sarah tubaka, bau ke na lezo ya kupesa bansiku na bantu ya maladi. Nge banza mpidina ve?

Na ntangu yai samu ya lusadisusu ya Victorine, Sarah lenda zaba mambu yonso yina bau tubaka na radio. Kana nge mpe zona tuba mpe kuwa Kituba mbote mbote, yufusaka lusadisusu ya bantu yina zaba yau mbote mbote.

VOCABULARY

Conventions of Alphabetization:

The listing of words below is based on the following conventions:

1. Each word is alphabetized by the first letter of the root regardless of the presence or absence of prefixes.
2. If a prefix to the word exists which is not present in some forms of the word or is replaced by a different prefix in another form of the word, the prefix is separated from the root by a hyphen. For example:

mw-ana (ba-) 'child' where the singular is /mwana/, the plural /bana/.

ku-bak-a 'to get' where forms with and without the /ku-/ prefix occur.

3. If a prefix occurs which is not omitted or replaced in other forms of the word, a dot between the prefix and the root records this fact. For example:

lu.ḵalu (ba-) 'train' where the singular is /lukalu/ and the plural is /balukalu/.

The prefixes /lu-/ and /ma-/ are the only ones which commonly occur in this fashion and the reason for considering them prefixes here is that they function as prefixes in related Bantu languages and to consider them part of the root would make difficult a comparison with other forms (in Kituba or in related languages) using the same root.

4. If a word commences with a nasal compound, the nasal element is considered a prefix and the word is alphabetized under the second element of the compound. A dot is used between the nasal and the second element. For example:

m.bǎla (ba-) 'time, occasion' where the singular is /mbǎla/ and the plural is /bambǎla/.

Here again the reason for considering the nasal a prefix is that it facilitates comparison with other words using the same root. For example:

ku-long-a 'to teach' and n.longi (ba-) 'teacher'.

5. Verbal extensions, whether prefixes or suffixes, are separated from the verbal root by dots. For example:

ku-ki.bak.il-a 'to take for oneself' where the root is /bak/ and the word is alphabetized under /b/.

6. The final /a/ of all verb forms is separated from the root by a hyphen. Related noun forms which occur with /a/ or some other vowel finally do not have such vowel separated from the root. For example:

ku-banz-a 'to think, suppose'
 di-banza (ma-) 'thought, idea'
 ku-long-a 'to teach'
 n.longi 'teacher'
 ku-bānd-a 'to begin'
 bānda 'since'

7. Borrowed words, mostly from French, have (Fr.) preceding their English gloss if the word occurs in Kituba with little or no change from its French form and Fr: followed by the French word preceding the English gloss where the Kituba form is substantially changed from the French.

8. Compounds of the listed word with others are indented from the other listings. For example:

ballon (ba-) (Fr.); ball, handball
 kubula ballon to play soccer

9. The symbol /~/ is employed in the meaning 'varies with' to indicate synonyms. For example:

ku-bak-a 'to get'
 ~ku-zw-a q.v.

FORM:

GLOSS:

accident (ba-)	(Fr.); accident
Afelike	Africa
di-ambu (ma-)	matter, affair
Amelike	USA
mw-ana (ba-)	child
Ándele	Fr: André; Andrew
Angelé	Fr: Anglais; English
Angeletele	Fr: Angleterre; England
aré (ba-)	Fr: arrêt; stop
ata	even, though
ata...ata	either...or
ava ~avant	Fr: avant; before
avance (ba-)	(Fr.); advance payment
avant ~ava q.v.	
avió (ba-)	Fr: avion; airplane
awa	here; when, while, as
di-ba (ma-)	palm
bague (ba-)	(Fr.); ring
m.baimbai	later
ku-bak-a	to take, get, obtain

~ku-zw-a q.v.	
kubaka perte	to take a loss
kubaka kiozi	to take cold, get cold
kubaka tiya	to take fire, get hot
ku-ki.bak.il-a	to take for oneself
ki-baka (bi-)	wall
bakala (ba-)	man, husband, male, right direction
m.bala (ba-)	sweet potato
m.băla (ba-)	time, occasion
balacşoire (ba-)	(Fr.); swing
balavo (ba-)	Fr: bravo; hurrah!
ballon (ba-)	(Fr.) handball, soccer
kubula ballon	to play soccer
ku-bal.uk-a	to turn (intr.)
ku-bal.ul-a	to turn (tr.)
Balumbu	(P.N. - street in Leo.)
ku-bămb-a	to patch, mend
di-băndi (ma-)	baldness
ku-bănd-a	to start, begin
bănda	since
~depi q.v.	
banki (ba-)	Fr: banque; bank
ku-banz-a	to think, suppose
di-banza (ma-)	thought, idea
~idée, ngindu q.v.	

m.basi ~m.bazi	tomorrow
ku-basik-a	to get out, go out, come out
~ku-bĩma-a q.v.	
kubasika mutoki	to break out in a sweat
batelĩ (ba-)	Fr: batterie; battery
bau	they, them
bau na bau	to themselves
di-baya (ma-)	board, lumber, wood, signboard
ku-beb-a	to turn bad, spoil (intr.)
ku-beb.is-a	to spoil (tr.), waste
ku-bel-a	to be sick
ku-bel.uk-a	to recover
ku-bel.ul-a	to cure, heal
di-bele (ma-)	breast
Belezike	Fr: Belgique;
ku-bend-a	to pull, attract
di-běnde (bi- ~ba-)	metal, iron
ki-m.beni (bi-)	hatred
benu ~beno	you (pl.)
benu mosi	you yourselves
besoin (ba-)	(Fr.); need, necessity
betu ~beto	we, us
biberón (ba-)	(Fr.); nursing bottle, feeding cup

m.bidika (ba-)	kettle
bidiki (ba-)	Fr: brique; brick
ku-bid.is-a	(see ku-bil-a)
bido ~bidon (ba-)	Fr: bidon; gasoline or oil can or drum
ku-bik-a	to leave, abandon, let, cease, quit
bika	let
bika (mama)!	and how! (to a woman)
bika!	Let be! Don't ask! Stop!
ku-bik.al-a	to stay, remain
ku-bil-a	to boil (intr.)
ku-bid.is-a	to boil (tr.)
m.bila (ba-) ~n.gazi	palm nuts
biló (ba-)	Fr: bureau; office
bilongo (ba-) ~kisi q.v.	medicine
ku-bĩm-a	to come out
~kubasika q.v.	
ku-bĩm.is-a	to withdraw, take out
ku-bimb-a	to taste
~ku-měk-a q.v.	
m.bisi (ba-)	meat, fish
~mbizi	
mbisi ya maza	fish

bisikiti (ba-)	Fr: biscuit; cookie, biscuit
biyé (ba-)	Fr: billet; bill, banknote
~lukaya q.v.	
mu-bisu (mi- bamu-)	rawness
m.bizi (ba-)	
~mbisi q.v.	
ku-bod.is-a	(see ku-bol-a)
ku-bok-a	to shout, cry out, scream
ku-bok.il-a	to address, call (someone or something), invite
M.boka ya Sika	(P.N.) Newtown - Lingala term for new section of Leopoldville
di-boko (ma-)	hand, arm
diboko ya bakala	right hand
diboko ya nkento	left hand
ku-bol-a	to get well, spoil
ku-bod.is-a	to soak, cause to rot
boloko (ba-)	Fr: bloc; jail, prison
m.bolŏko (ba-)	antelope
ku-bolos-é	Fr: brosser; to brush
bŏma (ba-)	fear
m.bombo (ba-)	nose
bon voyage	(Fr.); good trip
ku-bŏng-a	to be in order, be arranged

ku-bong. ĭs-a	to arrange, put in order
m.bongo (ba-)	money
bonso	as
~kome q.v.	
bosi	then, afterwards
bosi mpe	besides
m.bote	good, well; greetings
boussole (ba-)	(Fr.); compass
boyi (ba-)	Eng: boy; houseboy
bubu	today
bubu yai	this very day
di-bũka (ma-)	mortar (implement)
ku-bul-a	to strike, ring (bell), play (instrument), knock (door)
kubula fono	to play the phonograph
kubula maza	to swim
bulamatadi	government
ku-bul. akan-a	to be breakable
bulé (ba-)	Fr: bleu; blue, laundry bluing
di-bulu (ma-)	hole
ki-bulu (bi-)	animal, beast
m.bulu (ba-)	jackal
buludingi (ba-)	Eng: building

m.bũma (ba-)	fruit
ku-bumb-a	to hide, secrete
m.bumba (ba-)	cat
bumbulutele (ba-)	Fr: pomme de terre; potato
ki-m.bundi (bi-)	dress length of cloth
di-bundu (ma-)	denomination, sect, congregation
di-bungu (ma-)	port, wharf
ku-but-a	to give birth
ku-bũt-a	to climb
m.but-a	elder, older brother
m.but-a muntu (ba-)	sir, Mr.
buteye (ba-)	Fr: bouteille; bottle
butiki (ba-)	Fr: boutique; shop
ku-bw-a	to fall down, happen, befall
kubwa na...	to encounter, run into (a place not a person)
kubwa tiya	to become animated, get warm
m.bwaki (ba-)	redness
bwala (ba- ~ma-)	village, town
cendrier (ba-)	(Fr.); ash tray
ku-charg-é	(Fr.); to charge
ku-charg.el-e	to charge for (someone)
chrétien (ba-)	(Fr.); Christian

citrón (ba-)	(Fr.); lemon
congé (ba-)	(Fr.); vacation, leave
cuisinier (ba-)	(Fr.); cook, chef
dalakisio (ba-)	Fr: direction; cross street
dalapó (ba-)	Fr: drapeau; flag
n.dambu (ba-)	side, part, section
dayele	Fr: d'ailleurs; besides
n.dé	then, in that case
ku-def-a ~kudeva	to borrow
ku-def.is-a	to lend
déjà	(Fr.); already
dejeuner (ba-)	(Fr.); breakfast, lunch
n.děke (ba-)	bird
~nuni q.v.	
mu-n.dele (mi-)	white person, European
depi	Fr: depuis; since
dese (ba-)	Fr: dessin; embroidery
desele (ba-)	Fr: dessert; dessert
ku-dev-a	
~kudefa q.v.	
di-dezo (ma-)	bean
ku-di-a	to eat

kudia mfuka	to go into debt
kudia ntangu	to take time, waste time
ma-dia	food (no singular)
diaka	again, still, anymore
ma-didi	(see madidi)
ku-dil-a	to cry
ku-n.dĩm-a	to permit, accept, praise
mú-dinga (mí-)	smoke
n.dinga (ba-)	tongue, language
dit	Fr: dite!; say!
dix	(Fr.); ten
dokotolo (ba-)	Fr: docteur; doctor, physician
n.dombe (ba-)	blackness, Negro
donc	(Fr.); therefore, thus, so
drap (ba-)	(Fr.); sheet
n.dudi (ba-)	bitterness
n.dũku (ba-)	friend, acquaintance
~mpangi, kamaladi q.v.	
n.dumba (ba-)	young woman, maiden, unmarried lady, prostitute
n.dunda (ba-)	vegetable, legume
~matiti q.v.	
dwani (ba-)	Fr: douane; customs
n.dwengoso (ba-)	advice (see also kulwenga)

e	yes
ekonomí (ba-)	(Fr.); saving
mw-elo (mi- ~bami-)	door, doorway
~polote q.v.	
elongi	(see e-longi)
kw-end-a	to go
kwenda na kabine	to go to the toilet
ku-enregistr-é	(Fr.); to record
ki.ese (ba-)	gladness, joy
~esěngo q.v.	
esěngo (ba-)	contentment, happiness
esőbe (ba-)	prairie, savanna, grassland
etage (ba-)	(Fr.); storey, floor
 falá (ba-)	
~falanka q.v.	
falamasí (ba-)	Fr: pharmacie; drug company
falanka (ba-)	Fr: franc
falansé	Fr: français; French
famili (ba-)	Fr: famille; family
fasó (ba-)	Fr: façon; manner, way
~mutindu q.v.	
felé (ba-)	Fr: frein; brake

fenétele (ba-)	Fr: fenêtre; window
fétele (ba-)	Fr: feutre; felt
feti (ba-)	Fr: fête; celebration
fidigó (ba-)	refrigerator
ku-fid.is-a	(see kufila)
ku-fil-a	to send
ku-fid.is-a	to have...sent
ku-fimp-a	to examine
ku-fin.am-a	to approach
finance	(Fr.); finance
m.finda (ba-)	woods, forest
ku-fing-a	to insult
ki-fingu (bi-)	insult
fioti	little, few, a little
fofolo (ba-)	match
fololo (ba-)	flower
fonó (ba-)	(Fr.); phonograph
kubula fono	to play the phonograph
foti (ba-)	Fr: faute; fault
ki-fu (bi-)	habit, custom
fűfu (ba-)	manioc flour (and various staple dishes)
ku-fuk-a	to cover, roof
ku-fuk.am-a	to kneel, prostrate oneself

ku-fuk.am.is-a	to make to kneel
m.fuka (ba-)	debt
kudia mfuka	to go into debt
fulufulu (ba-)	froth
ku-ful.uk-a	to be filled up
ku-ful.us-a	to fill (tr.)
ki-fulu (bi-)	place
fi.ki.fulu (ba-)	little place
m.fulu (ba-)	bed
m.fumu (ba-)	chief
ku-funt-a	to be thrown out, be unable to be sold
ku-fut-a	to pay
ku-fut.il-a	to rent
ku-fut.is-a	to collect, make (someone) pay
ma-futa	(see mafuta)
ku-fw-a	to die, kill
kufwa nsatu ya...	to be hungry (thirsty, etc.) for
kufwa meso	to blind
kufwa kisalu	to disturb ones work, spoil a job
ku-fwand-a	to suffice
fwanda	must, should, have to
m.fwenge (ba-)	civet-like predator

Na-m.fwenge	Mr. Civet
fwete	should, ought to
~fwanda q.v.	
n.gǎingǎi (ba-)	sourness, acidity
gale (ba-)	Fr: gare; station
gale ya lukalu	train station
mu-n.gamba (ba-)	day laborer, unskilled dolt
n.ganda ()	outside
mú-n.ganga (mí-)	physician, doctor
n.ganzi (ba-)	anger
garage (ba-)	(Fr.); repair shop, garage
gató (ba-)	Fr: gateau; cake
n.gazi (ba-)	palm nut
~mbila	
ku-n.gěng-a	to shine
n.gé	you (sg.)
n.gindu (ba-)	thought, idea
~idée, dibanza q.v.	
n.golo (ba-)	strength, hardness
n.goma (ba-)	drum, tomtom
n.gombe (ba-)	cattle, beef, cow
n.gonda (ba-)	month, moon

mu-n.gõngo (mi-)	voice, throat
n.guba (ba-)	peanut
n.gunga (ba-)	bell
n.gũngi (ba-)	mosquito
gudoló (ba-)	Fr: goudron; asphalt
n.gwankazi (ba-)	maternal uncle
heure (ba-)	(Fr.); hour, o'clock
~lele q.v.	
huit	(Fr.); eight
idée (ba-)	(Fr.); idea
~ngindu, dibanza q.v.	
ikwa?	how much? how many?
imbi (ba-)	badness, evil
imbwa (ba-)	dog
impa	(only in /ya impa/ 'new')
impu (ba-)	hat
imvu (ba-)	year
~mvula	
ina	that, that one, which, the, those
~yina q.v.	
ina mpe	there! see there!

inda	length, stature, longness
infirmiele (ba-)	Fr: infirmière; nurse
ingo (ba-)	leopard
inki?	what?
insect (ba-)	(Fr.); insect
insi (ba-)	country, under
inti (ba-)	tree, plant
intu (ba-)	head
inwa (ba-)	mouth
inzo (ba-)	house, home, building
di-(i)so (meso)	eye
~disu	
meso ya ngolo	bold eyed, wide awake, outgoing, extrovert
kuzibula meso	to be smart, keep a sharp look-out, watch out
kufwa meso	to blind
ivwa	nine
iya	four
kw-iz-a	to come
jardin (ba-)	(Fr.); garden
juillet	(Fr.); July
juste	(Fr.); exactly
~kaka q.v.	

kabiné (ba-)	Fr: cabinet; toilet
kwenda na kabine	to go to the toilet
ku-kab.ul-a	to divide
ku-kading-a	to fry
ki-kadingu (bi-)	frying pan
kafé (ba-)	Fr: café; coffee
kaka	only, just, still, etc.
kaka mpila ina	always thus
~juste q.v.	
n.kaka (ba-)	grandparent, ancestor, relative of older generation
[nk'āka]	
ya.n.kaka (ba-)	other, others, some
[nkaka]	
yankaka nkaka	and so forth, etc.
ku-kak.ul-a	to reduce, come down in price
ku-kal.a	(see /ke/, /kele/)
kalaka (ba-)	Fr: clerc; clerk, salesman
Kalala	(P.N.)
kalasi (ba-)	Fr: classe; school, class
kálati (ba-)	Fr: carte; map, chart
kalati ya identité	Fr: carte d'identité; identification
kalesó (ba-)	Fr: caleçon; underdrawers

Kaliná	(P.N.) district in Leo.
kalité	Fr: qualité; quality
lu.kalu (ba-)	train
n.kama (ba-)	hundred
kamaladi (ba-)	Fr: camarade; friend
~mpangi, ndũku q.v.	
kamió	Fr: camion; truck, auto
ku-kamun-a	to press, squeeze
kamwá (ba-)	a bit [of], a little [of]
kana	if, whether, when, or
kana...ve	if not, unless
mu-kanda (mi-)	book, letter
ku-kang-a	to tie, wrap, close, rope up, arrest
ku-kang.il-a	to wrap/tie for...
kukangila (muntu) mutima	to be hard on (someone)
ku-kang.uk-a	to be untied, unwrapped, opened
ku-kang.ul-a	to untie, unwrap, open
~kuzibula q.v.	
kasi	but
~kansi	
kati (ba-)	middle, center
na kati ya	between, among
na kati	inside

katini (ba-)	bucket
Kató	(P.M. a street)
katolike (ba-)	(Fr.); Roman Catholic
~catholique	
~Mupe q.v.	
ku-kat.uk-a	to depart, leave, be from
katuka	from
ku-kat.ul-a	to remove, subtract
katula	less, besides
lu-kaya (ma-)	leaf, sheet, banknote, bill
~biyé q.v.	
n.kazi (ba-)	brother (used by female to her own brothers)
mwana nkazi	sister's child
ngwankazi	maternal uncle
ma.kazu (ba-)	kola nut
ke	to be (see kele)
ke	that (conjunction)
e-kěko (bi-)	carving, statue, sculpture
kele / ke	to be, to exist
keledí (ba-)	Fr: crédit; terms, installments
ma.kelele (ba-)	noise
n-kento (ba-)	woman, wife, female

lu.keto (ba-)	waist
di-ki (ma-)	egg
kiadi	unfortunate, sorry, too bad
kĩdikĩdi (ba-)	naughtiness, bickering
kidiyá (ba-)	Fr: client; customer
kilistu (ba-)	Christian
kiliyá (ba-)	(see kidiya)
kiló (ba-)	weight, kilogram
kisi (ba-)	drug, medicine; fetish
~bilongo q.v.	
ku-kĩt-a	to go down, descend, diminish
ku-kit.ĩs-a	to let out, send down
kukitisa mutima	to relax, cease worrying
ku-kit-a	to trade, stock up
mu-n.kita (mi-)	business, trade
kusala munkita	to carry on business
kiti (ba-)	chair
kitoko (ba-)	beauty
kizámpele (ba-)	Fr: exemple; example
ko ko ko ko...	knock knock (onomatapoetic sound for a knock on the door)
kofitile (ba-)	Fr: confiture; preserves, jam
n.kokila (ba-)	evening

BASIC COURSE

koko (ba-)	rooster, cock
Nakoko	Mr. Rooster
kolodoní (ba-)	Fr: cordonnier; shoemaker
komá?	Fr: comment; how?
koma samu ya?	how about?
komande	Fr: commande; order
ku-komas-é	Fr: commencer; start, begin
ku-komb-a	to sweep
mu-kombi (mi-)	sweeper
kome	Fr: comme; as, like
~bonso q.v.	
kompaní (ba-)	Fr: compagnie; firm, company, corporation
di-n.kondo (ma-)	banana
Kongó	Congo
ki-kongo	the Kikongo language
Kongolé (ba-)	Fr: Congolais; Congolese
konso	every, any
ku-kos-a	to lie, fib, cheat, take advantage of
n.kosi (ba-)	lion
kosúkosu (ba-)	a cough
ku-kot-a	to enter (inter.); be involved in
ku-kot.is-a	to put in, enter (tr.)

ku-kubik-a	to put in order, arrange
n.kufi (ba-)	shortness, littleness
ku-kũk-a	to fit, suit, be able
ki-kuku (bi-)	kitchen
di-kukwa (ma-)	stove
kulele (ba-)	Fr: couleur; color
di-kulu (ma-)	leg, foot
n.kulu ()	oldness, age
kúlube (ba-)	Fr: courbe; curve
kuluntu (ba-)	older sibling
ya kuluntu	older
ku-kum-a	to reach, arrive, become
ku-kum.is-a	to cause to become, make
n.kumbu (ba-)	name, noun; time
kumi (ma-)	ten
kuna	there
kuna na kati	inside there
ku-kun-a	to plant
n.kuni (ba-)	wood, firewood
ki-kunku (bi-)	group
n.kunzu	unripeness, greenness
ku-kut-a	to encounter
ku-kut.an-a	to meet (one another)

BASIC COURSE

di-kutu (ma-)	ear
n.kutu	even, besides, in addition
kwakele (ba-)	Eng: Quaker; oatmeal
kwaku	here
kwandi	fairly, quite
kwanga (ba-)	manioc, bread
di-kwanza (ma-)	scabies, the itch
kwe (ba-)	Fr: coin; corner
ku-kwel-a	to get married
ma.kwela (ba-)	wedding
ku-kwend-a	(see kw-end-a)
n.kwezi	sibling in-law in one's own generation
ku-kwiz-a	(see kw-iz-a)
laissez-passer (ba-)	(Fr.); pass, permit
ku-lal-a	to sleep, lie down
suku ya kulala	bedroom
di-lala (ma-)	orange, citrus fruit
lalemwale (ba-)	Fr: l'armoire; cupboard
ku-lamb-a	to cook
ki-lambi (bi-)	cook, chef
ku-lam.uk-a	to get up (intr.)
ku-lam.us-a	to awake, to arouse

ku-land-a	to follow, pursue
mu-lǎngi (mi-)	bottle
l'après-midi (ba-)	(Fr.); afternoon
di-lata (ma-)	tin, can
ku-la.uk-a	to go crazy
ki-lau (bi-)	crazy one, insane person, foolish one
lau	luck
n.leke (ba-)	youth, youngness
~nleki	
~leke	
lekenzi (ba-)	Fr: le quinze; fifteenth of the month
lele (ba-)	Fr: l'heure; hour
~heure q.v.	
lele (bi-)	cloth
ku-lěmb-a	to get tired
ma-lembe ()	slowness
malembe malembe	slowly, gradually, softly
ki-lěmbo (bi-)	mark, sign
ku-lend-a	to be able to
lendí (kilumbu ya...)	Fr: lundi; Monday
e-lěngi (bi-)	flavor, good taste
~ki-lěngi (bi-)	

lepalasió (ba-)	Fr: reparation; repairs
lepose (ba-)	Fr: réponse; answer
lesanse (ba-)	Fr: l'essence; gasoline
lesole (ba-)	Fr: ressort; spring
letá (ba-)	Fr: l'état; the state, government
letale (ba-)	Fr: retard; lateness
lezelevwale (ba-)	Fr: reservoir; storage tank
lezó (ba-)	Fr: raison; rightness, correctness
líníe (ba-)	Fr: ligne; line
liste (ba-)	(Fr.); list
lítele (ba-)	Fr: litre; liter
livre (ba-)	(Fr.); book
ku-lob-a	to fish
ku-lokut-a	to pick up, gather, collect
ku-long-a	to teach
n.longi (ba-)	teacher, master
ku-long.is-a	to teach
ku-long.uk-a	to learn, study
di-longa (ma-)	dish, plate
di-longi (ma-)	instruction
e-lǒngi (bi-)	face
bi.longo (ba-)	(see bilongo)
ku-los-a	to throw away, waste, reject

ku-los.am-a	to be thrown away, wasted, re- jected
loso	rice
lotele (ba-)	Fr: l'hôtel; hotel
lulu (ba-)	Fr: roue; tire, wheel, circle
ki-lumbu (bi-)	day
lumingu (ba-)	(Port.); week, Sunday
ku-lund-a	to store, keep
ku-lung-a	to suffice, be fit, be enough
lupitalu (ba-)	Fr: l'hôpital; hospital
ku-lut-a	to exceed, surpass
kuluta zona	to prefer, like better
luzadí (ba-)	Fr: lazaret; leprosarium, sani- tarium
ku-lweng-a	to be wise
ku-lweng.is-a	to advise
lwinda (ba-)	cockscorn
ki-ma (bi-)	thing, stuff
Madí	Fr: Marie; Mary
madidi (ba-)	coldness
mafuta (ba-)	oil, fat, grease
magazini (ba-)	Fr: magasin; store, shop
Maligeliti	Fr: Marguerite

maladi (ba-)	Fr: malade; sick, patient
maladi (ba-)	Fr: maladie; sickness, disease
malafu ()	wine, liquor
malu	quick
malumalu	quickly
malumalu yai	now, right away
mama (ba-)	mother, Mrs., Madam, aunt
ku-man-a	to come to an end
ku-man.is-a	to finish (tr.)
mananasi (ba-)	perfume
manga (ba-)	mango
~mangu	
manima	(see nima)
mapasa (ba-)	twin(s)
masini (ba-)	Fr: machine; engine, train
masuwa (ba-)	ship, boat
ku-māt-a	to climb, to get it
matabisi (ba-)	Port: matabiche; gratuity, tip, bonus, thirteenth of a baker's dozen
Matadi	(A port city in the Congo) (see also di-tadi)
meya (ba-)	(Port.); half franc
mayele (ba-)	intelligence, smartness
maza (ba-)	water, river, stream

mazono (ba-)	yesterday
mébele (ba-)	Fr: meuble; furniture
ku-měm-a	to conduct, bring
me	(auxiliary for 'perfect')
~mene	
i-mene	'it is done'
ku-měk-a	to try
melesí (ba-)	Fr: merci; thanks
ku-men-a	to grow
menga (ba-)	blood
menga ya mbote	good luck
ku-mes.ăn-a [na]	to be used [to]
meso	(see di-(i)so)
métele (ba-)	Fr: metre; meter, length of cloth
Meto	(Congolese name - male)
meza (ba-)	(Port.); table
mezile (ba-)	Fr: mesure; size
midí (ba-)	(Fr.); noon
midiki (ba-)	Eng: milk
mikolobi (ba-)	Fr: microbe; germ
mile (ba-)	Fr: mille; thousand
~midi	
Mimí	(Fr.); (girl's nickname)

BASIC COURSE

minda (ba-)	lamp, light
mingi	many, several
miniti (ba-)	Fr: minute; minute
Mísioni (ba-)	Fr: mission; Protestant
missionnaire (ba-)	(Fr.); missionary
miziki (ba-)	Fr: musique; music
mo (ba-)	Fr: mot; word
modĩdi (ba-)	shade, shadow, darkness, obscurity
~molĩli	
molũnge (ba-)	heat, stifling
ku-mon-a	to see
kumona mbote	to recover, get well, be well
ku-mon.ik-a	to appear, seem
ku-mon.is-a	to show
monimá (ba-)	Fr: monument; monument
mongo (ba-)	mountain
fi.mongo mongo	little hill
monté (ba-)	Fr: montagne; mountain
mosi	one; a; a certain; self
mpila mosi	same (as), like, as
motele (ba-)	Fr: moteur; engine
mungwa (ba-)	salt
mu / munu	I, me

Múpe (ba-)	Fr: mon père; Catholic
musielǒlo	(see mu-sielǒlo)
mwamba (ba-)	sauce, gravy, stew
mwayé (ba-)	Fr: moyen; means, way
mwini (ba-)	light, sunlight, daylight, heat of the sun
na	to, for, with, from, by, on, at, etc.
(')	
na	and (see Note 2.6)
na...na	both...and
nana	eight
nani? (ba-)	who? whom?
ku-nat-a	to bring, carry
ku-nen-a	to deficate
nene (ba-)	largeness, greatness
niǎma (ba-)	animal
nianga (ba-)	thatch
nie ()	quiet
nima (ba-)	back
ma-nima	backwards
na manima	afterwards
nimeló (ba-)	Fr: numero; number
nioka (ba-)	snake

BASIC COURSE

ku-niokol-a	to mistreat
ku-nok-a	to fall as rain
nord-est	(Fr.); northeast
nuni (ba-)	bird
~ndeke q.v.	
ku-nw-a	to drink
ku-nwan-a	to fight
ofelé	Fr: au frais; free, without cost
otobisi (ba-)	Fr: autobus; bus
oui	(Fr.); yes
~wi	
ki-ozi (baki- ~bi-)	a cold, a fever
di-m.pa (ma-)	Fr: du pain; bread
m.pakasa (ba-)	buffalo
paké (ba-)	Fr: paquet; package
ku-pak.ũl-a	to rub on, spread
m.paku (ba-)	tax
paladó (ba-)	Fr: pardon; excuse me
palasi (ba-)	Fr: place; place
palasi mosi	together
m.pamba	uselessness, nothingness

mpamba mpamba	for nothing
mpamba ve	because, on account of
m.pangi (ba-)	sibling
lu.pangu (ba-)	lot, yard, garden, enclosure, compound
ku-pang.us-a	to wipe
pantaló (ba-)	Fr: pantalon; trousers
pantúfule (ba-)	Fr: pantoufle; tennis shoe
ku-pǎnz-a	to spread
di-papa (ma-)	sandal
papayi (ma-)	papaya
papié (ba-)	Fr: papier; paper
park (ba-)	(Fr.); park
m.pasi (ba-)	difficulty
passeport (ba-)	(Fr.); passport
passoire (ba-)	(Fr.); sieve
ku-pas.uk-a	to crack (intr.)
ku-pas.ul-a	to split, divide, part (tr.)
m.pata (ba-)	five franc piece
pâtisserie (ba-)	(Fr.); bakery, pastry shop
m.patu (ba-)	plantation, field, farm
m.pe	also, too
~pe	
ku-ped.is-a	(see ku-pel-a)

ku-pel-a	to burn (intr.)
ku-ped.is-a	to ignite, set fire to, light
pelesé	Fr: pressé; rushed, in a hurry
peléseke	Fr: presque; almost, nearly
pélete	Fr: perte; loss
kubaka pelete	to take a loss
ku-pem-a	to breathe, relax, rest
m.pembe ()	whiteness, fairness, blondness
mpembe ya nzau	ivory
pěnepěne [na]	near [to]
penzá	very, extremely
ku-pěp-a	to flap, wave (intr.)
mu-pěpe (mi-)	breeze, wind
permis de conduire	(Fr.); driver's license
ku-pes-a	to give
kupesa maboko	to give aid, help
peteló	Fr: pétrole; kerosene
pětepěte	soft, easy
petétele	Fr: peut-être; perhaps
ku-pez-é	Fr: peser; to weigh
ku-pez.is-a	to have...weigh(ed)
m.pidina	(see m.pila)
pidipidi (ba-)	pepper

pidisale (ba-)	Fr: pilchard; pilchard fish
Piele	Fr: Pierre; Peter
m.pila	like; manner, way
mpidina	thus (mpila + yina)
mpila mosi	same
m.pimpa (ba-)	night, darkness
pneu (ba-)	(Fr.); tire
po (ba-)	pot
ku-pod.is-a	(see ku-pöl-a)
podisi (ba-)	Fr: police; policeman
ku-pöl-a	to get wet
ku-pöd.is-a	to soak, wet
Polo	Fr: Paul
pólote	Fr: porte; door
ku-pön-a	to choose
pont	(Fr.); bridge
pósita (ba-)	Fr: post; mail; location
posita ya leta (ba-)	State office
posita ya mikanda (ba-)	Postoffice
potopoto ()	confusion, disorder, mud
presque	(Fr.); almost
Prince Baudouin	(Name of Street in Léo)
programme (ba-)	(Fr.); schedule, program

propre	(Fr.); clean
protestant	(Fr.); Protestant
púdele	Fr: poudre; powder
m.punda (ba-)	horse, donkey, mule
punition (ba-)	(Fr.); punishment
ku-pul.ŭl-a	to wipe, dust
ku-pus-a	to push
pusupusu (ba-)	push cart, baby carriage
m.pusu (ba-)	palmetto, palm fiber
m.puta (ba-)	sore, lesion, wound
M.putu	Europe (white man's country)
putŭlu (ba-)	dust
Putuluké (ba-)	Portuguese
pwelěle	uncovered, open
radio (ba-)	(Fr.); radio
restaurant (ba-)	(Fr.); restaurant
rideau (ba-)	(Fr.); curtain
sabala	(Port.); Saturday, sabbath
ku-sab.uk-a	to cross (intr.)
sabuni (ba-)	soap
ki-sadi (bi-)	(see ku-sal-a)

ku-sad.is-a	(see ku-sal-a)
lu.sad.is-u	(see ku-sal-a)
n.safu (ba-)	(a tropical black-skinned fruit)
ku-sakan-a	to play
sakasaka	manioc leaves
sakosi (ba-)	Fr: sacoché; handbag
ku-sal-a	to do, work
kusala maza	to make water, urinate
ki-sadi (bi-)	worker
ku-sad.is-a	to help
lu.sad.isu (ba-)	aid, help, assistance
~lusadusu	
ku-sal.asan-a	to work together
ki-salu (bi-)	work, job
salele (ba-)	Fr: salaire; salary
saleté (ba-)	(Fr.); soiled, dirty
saló	Fr: salon; large room
ku-samb.il-a	to worship
lu.sambu (ba-)	prayer, blessing
sambanu	six
n.sambodia	seven
~n.samwadi	
lu.sambu	(see ku-samb.il-a)

mu-n.sambu (mi-)	salted fish
n.sambwadi	seven
~n.sambodia	
samó (ba-)	Fr: chameau; camel
n.sampatu (ba-)	shoe
samu	because
samu'na	because of, on account of
samu ya	in order to
sanduku (ba-)	box
ku-sang-a	to mix
ku-sang.an-a	to get mixed up together
ku-sang.is-a	to mix, cause to be mixed
n.sanga	sister (term used by male of his own sister)
ki-sangala (bi-)	demijohn
n.sangu (ba-)	news
di-sano (ma-)	game
sans	(Fr.); without
ku-sans-a	to raise, bring up, care for
sánteles (ba-)	Fr: centre; center
ki-sanu (bi-)	comb
~ki-sanunu (bi-)	
n.sanu (ba-)	sponge
sanzé (ba-)	Fr: échange; change

mu-săpi (mi-)	finger, toe
di-sapu (ma-)	fable, story
Ki-n.sasa	Leopoldville
~Kinshasa	
n.satu (ba-)	hunger, desire
kufwa nsatu ya	to be hungry / desirous of
ku-sěk-a	to laugh
ku-sek.ĭs-a	to make laugh
sekeletele (ba-)	Fr: secretaire; secretary
semeki (ba-)	sibling in-law of own generation
~nkwezi	
sengele (ba-)	Eng: singlet; undershirt
e-sěngo	joy, happiness
ki-sengwa (bi-)	steel, tool
sentile (ba-)	Fr: ceinture; belt
ku-senz.il-a	to watch, look after
mu-sielőlo (bami- ~bamu-)	slipperiness
sieste (ba-)	(Fr.); nap, siesta
sigaleti (ba-)	Fr: cigarette
sika (bi-)	place
sika mosi	together
sikalié (ba-)	Fr: escalier; stairs
ki-sikiti (bi- ~babi-)	Fr: biscuit; pastry, biscuit
sikoti (ba-)	Fr: chicote; whip

n.siku (ba-)	rule, law
silitú	Fr: surtout; especially
ku-simb-a	to touch
simé (ba-)	Fr: cement; concrete
simisi (ba-)	Fr: chemise; shirt
simitiele (ba-)	Fr: cimetière; cemetery
n.singa (ba-)	cord, rope, thread
singu (ba-)	neck
ki-sivu (bi-)	dry season (winter)
six	(Fr.); six
sizó (ba-)	Fr: ciseaux; scissors
di-so (meso)	(see di-(i)so)
ku-sob-a	to change, differ
ku-sob.is-a	to change (tr.), exchange
sodá (ba-)	Fr: soldat; soldier
sofele (ba-)	Fr: chaufferu; driver
Sofí	Fr: Sophie
ku-sok.us-a	to tease
ku-sol-a	to choose
di-sǒlo (ma-)	(see kusǒlǔla)
ku-sol.ǔl-a	to talk, converse
di-sǒlo (ma-)	conversation, discussion, chat
ku-sol.ul-a	to find

n.soma (ba-)	fork
n.soni (ba-)	shyness, reticence
ku-sonik-a	to write
ku-sŏp-a	to pour
ku-sos-a	to look for
soseti (ba-)	Fr: chaussette; socks
souvenir (ba-)	(Fr.); souvenir
ku-sub-a	to urinate
suka (ba-)	morning
suka suka	early in the morning
n.suka (ba-)	end
sukadi (ba-)	sugar, sweetness
n.suki (ba-)	hair
di-suku (ma-)	room
suku ya kulala	bedroom
ku-suk.uk-a	to be cleaned, washed
ku-suk.ul-a	to clean, wash
ku-suk.ud.is-a	to help someone clean, make someone clean
ku-sumb-a	to buy
ku-sung-a	to aim
ku-sung.am-a	to be straight, go straight
ku-sung.am.an-a	to remember

ku-sung.ik-a	to straighten
n.sunga (ba-)	smell, odor
n.sungi (ba-)	season
ku-sung.ik-a	(see ku-sung-a)
mu-sŭni (mi-)	flesh
supu (ba-)	Fr: soupe; soup, stock, juice
n.susu (ba-)	chicken, hen, rooster
ku-sw.am-a	to hide (oneself) (intr.)
ku-sw.ek-a	to hide (something) (tr.)
tabaka (ba-)	Fr: tabac; tobacco
di-tadi (ma-)	rock, stone
tadié	(see talie)
ku-tad.il-a	(see ku-tal-a)
tadila	about, concerning
takisí (ba-)	Fr: taxi
ku-tal-a	to look at, behold, look after
ku-tad.il-a	to look at for (someone), check
talatala (ma-)	glass; spectacles; mirror
talié (ba-)	Fr: atelier; shop, factory
~tadié	
n.talu (ba-)	price, value, number, figure

n.tama	far, long ago
ki-tambala (bi-)	kerchief
Ki-n.tambu	(a district in Léo)
ku-tamb.ul-a	to walk
	to accept
ku-tamb.us-a	to drive
kutambusa (muntu) intu	to make (a person) dizzy
ku-tampon-é	Fr: tamponner; to run down, run into
ku-tănd-a	to spread, set (table), make (bed)
ku-tang-a	to read, count
n.tangu (ba-)	time, sun, clock; when
tanki (ba-)	tank
tanu	five
tata (ba-)	father, mister, sir, paternal relative
tata ya bakala	paternal uncle
tata ya nkento	paternal aunt
ma-tata	troubles (no singular)
ku-tat.am.an-a	to continue
ku-tat.ik-a	to bite
tatu	three
tayelee (ba-)	Fr: tailleur; tailor

BASIC COURSE

ku-ted.im.is-a	(see ku-tel.am-a)
ku-tek-a	to sell
kuteka maza	to fetch water
mu-teki (mi- ~bami-)	seller
ku-tel.am-a	to get up, stand, be standing, stop, remain
	to start
ku-ted.im.is-a	to make (one) get up, keep standing, stop (one)
ku-telephon-é	(Fr.); to telephone
ku-teng.am-a	to be crooked
n.tete	first
ntete...ve	not yet
ti (ba-)	Fr: thé; tea
ti	that (conjunction)
ti /tii/	until, to
tieleka (ba-)	truth
tiké (ba-)	Fr: ticket
tiké deké	Fr: ticket de quai; platform pass
tiliwale (ba-)	Fr: tiroire; drawer
ku-tim-a	to dig
ku-tim.is-a	to make dig, help dig
mu-tima (mi- ~bami-)	heart
ki-timba (bi-)	pipe (for smoking)

kitimba ya sigaleti	cigarette holder
ku-tim.uk-a	to fly, jump
ku-tin-a	to flee, escape, avoid fear
n.tina (ba-)	meaning, sense
ku-tind-a	to send
mu-tindu (mi-)	variety, fashion, kind, sort
mutindu na mutindu [ya]	all kinds [of]
n.tinu (ba-)	speed, hurry
di-titi (ma-)	herb, vegetation, grass, legume, vegetable
tiya (ba-)	fire, power, heat
to	or
ku-tob.uk-a	to be pierced, punctured
ku-tők-a	to perspire
	to boil (intr.)
mu-tők-i (mi- ~bami-)	perspiration
di-toko (ma- ~bama-)	youth, young man
ki-toko	(see kitoko)
tólosi (ba-)	Fr: torche; flashlight
tomate (ba-)	(Fr.); tomato
~tomato	
ku-tomb.uk-a	to rise, go up
ku-tomb.ul-a	to raise

ku-ki.tomb.ud.il-a [madia]	to serve oneself [food]
ku-tom.is-a	to beautify, decorate
totale (ba-)	(Fr.); sum total
n.toto (ba-)	ground, soil, earth
~toto	
touriste (ba-)	(Fr.); tourist
Ki-tuba	The Kituba language
ku-tub-a	to speak, say
yau tuba ke	that means that
ku-tub.an-a	to talk together
mu-tubi (ba-)	spokesman, speaker, announcer
ku-tub.il-a	to tell
tuberculose	(Fr.); tuberculosis
ku-tul-a	to put down, place, put
kutula maza	to water
kutula mutima	to hope; rely on, depend on
ku-tung-a	to construct, build
ku-tung.w-a	to be built
ki-tunga (bi-)	basket
n.tũnga (ba-)	needle, hypodermic syringe
di-tungulu (ma-)	onion
ku-tut-a	to pound, crush
n.twala (ba-)	front

na ntwala ya	in front of
twaleteti (ba-)	Fr: toilette; grooming
ki-uvu (bi-)	question (see ku-yuf.us-a)
valise (ba-)	(Fr.); suitcase
vana	there (on)
ve	no; not
lu.ve (ba-)	permission
vela (ba-)	Fr: verre; glass, tumbler
velandá (ba-)	Fr: véranda; porch
veló (ba-)	Fr: vélo; bicycle
vers	(Fr.); toward
verte	(Fr.); green
ku-vib.id.il-a	to be patient
m.vimba ()	entire, whole
ku-ving.il-a	to wait, await
voyage (ba-)	(Fr.); trip
m.vula (ba-)	rain, year
~imvu	
ku-vum.in-a	to respect, be polite
ki-vumu (bi-)	stomach, abdomen, pregnancy
ku-vund-a	to rest (intr.)

ku-vund.is-a	to rest (tr.)
ku-vut.uk-a	to come back, go back, return (intr.)
ku-vut.uk.is-a	to come back
ku-vut.ul-a	to return; answer
m.vutu (ba-)	result, answer
ki-vuvu (bi-)	hope
ku-vwam-a	to get rich
m.vwama (ba-)	rich one
ku-vwand-a	to be, sit, be doing
vwanda na nge	pay no attention
ku-vwat-a	to wear
vwatile (ba-)	Fr: voiture; car
ma-m.vwemvwe	cheapness (no singular)
~má-m.vwemvwe	
ku-w-a	to hear, listen, sense, under- stand
kuwa nsunga	to smell (tr.)
ku-w.am-a	to be heard
wapi	where
	No, not at all
wěnze (ba-)	small market, village market
wi	Fr: oui; yes
~oui	

wikende (ba-)	Eng: weekend
ku-wom-a	to press, iron
wonga (ba-)	fear
kumona wonga	to fear, experience fear
ya	of (relative particle)
ya	it (see yau)
yai	this, these
~yayi	
yai nde	here then
ku-yămb-a	to greet, welcome
yandi	he, she; him, her
yangó (ba-)	the one(s) referred to, that, those
yankaka	(see ya.n.kaka)
yau	it
~ya	
yau ina	for that reason, therefore
yau yai	here it [is]
Yesu	Fr: Jésus; Jesus
ku-yib-a	to steal, cheat
mu-yibi (mi-)	thief
ku-yimb-a	to sing
ku-yimb.il-a	to sing (for)

mu-yimbu (mi-)	song
yina (ba-)	that, that one, which, the, those
~ina	
ku-yob.il-a	to get washed, clean; to swim
ku-yob.is-a	to wash (tr.)
ku-yok-a	to burn
ku-yok.am-a	to get burned (see Note 10.1 p. 220)
ku-ki.yok-a	to burn oneself
ku-yok.w-a	to be burned (see Note 10.1 p. 220)
Yolo Sud	(A section of Léo)
yonso	all
ku-yonzun-a	to strip of leaves
ku-yuf.ul-a	to ask, request
ku-yuf.us-a	to ask, query
yulu	(see zulu)
ku-yum-a	to get dry
ku-yum.is-a	to dry
Za	Fr: Jean; John
ku-zab-a	to know, understand
ku-zab.is-a	to inform
n.zadi (ba-)	river
ku-zak.am.is-a	to cause to tremble, cause to be shaken

n.zalu (ba-)	spoon
N.zambi (ba-)	God, god
ki.zámpele (ba-)	(see kizámpele)
zandu (ba-)	market
di-n.zānza (ma-)	can, tin
n.zau (ba-)	elephant
mpembe ya nzau	ivory
ku-zaul-a	to run, flee
ku-zeng-a	to cut, cross
kuzenga [mambu]	to decide [matters]
ku-zeng.am-a	to be cut
ku-zeng.ul.uk-a	to twist and turn
n.zenguluka (ba-)	curve, bend
n.zenza (ba-)	guest, stranger, foreigner
ku-zib.ik-a	to be covered
ku-zib.uk-a	to be uncovered, opened
ki-zibuku (bi-)	lid, cover
ku-zib.ul-a	to open
kuzibula meso	to look sharp, watch out
zielo (ba-)	sand
n.zila (ba-)	way, path, street, means, opening
Zile	Fr: Jules

ku-zimb.al-a	to get lost, disappear
ku-zimb.an-a	to make a mistake, get mixed up
ku-zimb.is-a	to confuse (with), forget
ku-zing-a	to live, live long, last
lu.zingu (ba-)	life
n.zĩnzi (ba-)	fly
ku-zit-a	to carry weight (intr.), be heavy
ku-zit.is-a	to respect, give weight to
lu.zitu (ba-)	worth, value, importance, respect, weight
n.zo	Oh!, so!, aha!
zoba ()	stupidity
ku-zol-a	to want, like, love
~ku-zon-a	
lu.zolo (ba-)	will, desire, motivation; love
zole	two
zole zole	two each
lu.zolo (ba-)	(see ku-zol-a)
ku-zon-a	(see ku-zol-a)
Zozefu	Fr: Joseph
zulu (ba-)	heaven, sky, up
~yulu	
na zulu	above, up, on top

na zulu ya	on top of, on
na zulu ya ina	in addition to that
na zulu zulu	high up
n.zungu (ba-)	pan, pot
n.zutu (ba-)	body
kũ-zw-a	to get, obtain, earn, locate
ku-zw.ǎm-a	to be gotten, be afflicted by

Final typing by Miss Anne Lush